

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO DUPL



3 1761 00361171 2



# Charles the Gate.

---

Early English Text Society.

Extra Series. No. XXXVII.

1881.

BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 53 MOHRENSTRASSE.  
NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.  
PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.



Early English Text Society  
[Publications.] Extra Series

THE No. 36237

ENGLISH CHARLEMAGNE ROMANCES.

PART III. — IV

The Lyf of the Noble and Crysten Prynce,

Charles the Grete,

TRANSLATED FROM THE FRENCH BY WILLIAM CAXTON  
AND PRINTED BY HIM 1485.

EDITED NOW FOR THE FIRST TIME, FROM THE UNIQUE COPY  
IN THE BRITISH MUSEUM,

with Introduction, Notes, and Glossary,

.BY

SIDNEY J. H. HERRTAGE, B.A.,

EDITOR OF "GESTA ROMANORUM," "SIR PERUMBRAS," ETC.

LONDON:

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY,  
BY N. TRÜBNER & CO., 57 & 59, LUDGATE HILL.

MDCCCLXXXI.

38074  
7/10/96

PR

1119

E5

no. 36-37

Extra Series,

XXXVII.

---

RUNGAY : CLAY AND TAYLOR, THE CHAUCER PRESS.

## INTRODUCTION.

THE present volume, completing Part III. of the English Charlemagne Romance series, requires but little introduction. I have already referred to it in my edition of *Sir Ferumbras*, Introd. pp. viii, ix. It contains the whole life of Charlemagne, with a brief sketch of the early kings of France, and includes all the incidents narrated in *Sir Ferumbras*, *The Sowdone of Babyloyn*, *Roland and Vernagu*, and the *Song of Roland*.

Caxton's "Lyf of the Noble and Crysten Prynce, Charles the Grete" survives only in the unique copy preserved in the British Museum (Press Mark c. 10, b. 9). It is a folio volume, containing 96 leaves, the signatures running from A ij to M viij, and is perfect, but without title-page. The colophon tells us that the "werke was fynysshed in the reducyng of hit in to Englysshe the xvij day of Juyn, the second yere of kyng Rychard the thyrd, and the yere of our lord MCCCCLXXXV, and enprynted the fyrst day of decembre the same of our lord, & the fyrst yere of kyng Harry the seuenth."

The type is that classed by Mr. Blades as 4\*. The pages have two columns, each containing 39 lines, and each line measuring 2½ inches. There are neither folios nor catchwords. The initial wood-cut letters are 3 lines deep.

In 1743 the volume was sold by R. Harley to Osborne the bookseller, the price not mentioned. In 1773 it became the property of J. Ratcliffe at a cost of £13, and in 1776 it was sold by him to George III for £4. 4. 0.

As Caxton himself tells us, the work here reprinted is a translation of the French prose romance of *Fierabras*, itself a compilation

partly from the *Speculum Historiale* of Vincent de Beauvais, and partly from the old French romance of Fierabras. The exploits of Charlemagne were related in numerous histories and romances, both in French and Latin, in prose and in verse, as early as the 12th and 13th centuries. From the envoy of the anonymous author of the original French version we learn how Henry Bolomyer, a canon of Lausanne, induced him to gather together into one connected narrative these disjointed fragments. A comparison of his work with that of Vincent of Beauvais shows clearly that his researches were by no means confined to the *Speculum Historiale*. I have already given a short account of the original French work.<sup>1</sup> One version in the Grenville Library, 10531, is doubly unique, being not only the only copy of that particular version known to be in existence, but also the only production of the press of Symon du Jardin, at Geneva, which has come down to us. Brunet had heard of it, but doubted its existence (*Suppl.* II. p. 231). It is undated and without signatures, pagination, or illustrations.

A second version of the original French is also preserved in the same library, No. 10532. It also is a folio volume of 65 leaves, signatures running from A j to L v. On L v b is a woodcut similar to that at the end of the copy already described. This also is unique, and has the following colophon: "Cy finist Fierabras imprime a lyon lan de grace mil qualtre cens quatre vingtz et seize. Le xx iour de novembre." There are numerous woodcuts throughout the work, evidently copied from the same source as those in the Royal *Fierabras* described below, but much coarser and plainer. They are also frequently reversed, and, as in the royal copy, the same woodcut is at times made to serve for two or more incidents of a similar character.

In the library of the late Mr. Huth is a version, undated, in folio, black letter, with woodcuts, and the colophon: "Cy finist Fierabras. Imprime a lyon par maistre Guillaume le roy. Le cincquiesme Jour du moys de Juilliet. Deo gracias." It contains 108 leaves, and is the copy described by Brunet. It appears to have belonged originally

<sup>1</sup> Introd. to *Sir Ferumbras*, pp. vi, vii.

to the library of the Academy at Lyons. In the same library is a version in German containing 53 leaves, of which another copy is in the British Museum.<sup>1</sup>

The copy of the French *Fierabras* which I have used for comparison with the English translation, is that preserved in the Royal Library (Press mark, C. 6, b. 12). It is a folio volume of 115 leaves, without title-page. Woodcuts are freely introduced. On the back of sign. A i. is a large one representing Fierabras on horseback, and another on O 5 representing Charlemagne on his throne, and surrounded by his douzeperes. The preface begins on A ij, the index on A ij b, and the text on A vj. The colophon runs: "Cy finist Fierabras. Imprime a genesue Par maistre Loys Garbin bourgeois de la diete cite. Lan mil cccc. lxxxij. et Le xij iour de moys de Mais. Deo gracias. Amen." The woodcuts are in many cases most comical: perhaps the most ludicrous are those which are intended to represent Floripas killing Britamont, and Richard swimming the torrent of Flagot. In one in which the sacred relics are shown, only three nails appear, and in two others the Saracens are represented as bombarding the tower of Aigremont with cannons.

In a few instances the same cut is employed to represent two incidents of a similar character. Thus that representing Oliver before Balan is also used for Guy before the Sultan.

In his translation, Caxton has followed his original so closely and even slavishly, that at times it is difficult, if not impossible, to understand his meaning without a reference to the language of the original. Frequently he has used the very words of the French author, and still more frequently he has merely given them an English dress. Caxton probably is responsible for the introduction of more French words into our language than any other writer.

In his epilogue Caxton tells us that he undertook the rendering into English of this *Lyf of Charles the Grete* at the instigation of "a good and synguler frend, Maister wylliam daubeney, one of the tresirers of the Iewellys of the noble and moost crysten kyng, our naturel and souerayn lord late of noble memorye kyng Edward the fourth." I have endeavoured to identify this Sir William Daubeney,

<sup>1</sup> See *Sir Ferumbras*, Introd. p. vii.

and to ascertain the nature of the duties pertaining to his office as keeper of the jewels. As to the latter—

The copy of the *Liber Niger Domus Regis Anglie*, believed to be that of Edward IV. in the Harleian MS 642, has the following section on leaf 49, &c. on the Keeper of the Jewels, his clerk, yoman, groom, chariot, &c.

### Office of Jewelhouse

hath an Architector callid Clarke of the Kinges or keeper of Joyalx, or Theasaurer of the Chambre: this officer taketh bui Indenture betwixt him and the Kinge, all that he findes in his office of gold, siluer, pretious stones, and the markes of euery thinge. Alsoe he receaueth the yearely guiftes by Record of the Chamberlaine. Item he receaueth by Indenture of the Theasaurer of England, And by ouersight of the Chamberlaine sitting in the Kingis Chambre or in the hall with a person of like seruice, And for his Chambre at night dimidium cheate loafe, one quart wyne, one gallon of ale; And for winter Liurey, one perche de wax, one candle wax, two candels paris, one dimidium tallwood, and present in Court vij<sup>d</sup>. ob. [*leaf 49 back*]. In Checkerrolle and cloathing with howsold for winter and sommer, or of the Countinghouse xl: s. : his Liurey is as Knightes, and if he be sicke, he taketh in eating daies like the Squires for the bodie when they bin lett blood or sicke, &c. Also in this offise is a clarke vnder him in the hall eatinge, taking for his liurey at night, dimidium gallon ale, one candle paris, dimidium tallwood, shide and cloathing by the Countinghouse, or yerely twentie shillinges. And if he be sike, he taketh for all day one loafe of bread, one messe of gret meate, dimidium gallon ale. And for this office a yoman eating in the hall with yomen of Chambre, taking for his wages in the Countinghouse, if he be present, allowed by the Checkerrolle, threepence; And cloathing with the housold winter and summer for chances and all other part, or eightene shillinges, besides his reward of the Jewelhouse for sure and diligent keeping of the Kinges Joalxe yerely &c. And if he be sicke, he taketh such Liurey as doth the Clerke. Also in this office a groome eating dayly in the office, taking for his liurey one loafe, one messe of grete meate, dimidium gallon ale: And he setteth in the Liuries [*leaf 50*]. For this office in season, one candle wax, two candles paris, one tallwood dimidium, And Rushes and litter for this office all the yeare of the Sergeant Vsher of hall and Chambre. Also this groome fetting nightly for this office one gallon of ale: he helpeth to trusse and beare to the Charriott, and awaiteth therupon the safeguard; and the yoman also to attend vpon this carriage. And this office hath also lodgeing in the Countrie towne for all these horses and seruantes



suffisauntly by the herbergier. And the chiefe of this office to haue into this Court two waiters, and the Clerke one honest seruant. The remenant goo to theire lodgeing in the Countrey. And the yoman and groome haue one seruant. And for this office is assigned a Charriott with seauen horses and all there apparell, horse-meate, shooeing, and the yomen and groomis wagis therfore, foundyn of the charge of Thesaurer of housold to carrie the stuff of the Kinges in this office, and none other mans, by the ouersight of the Controller, betwixt the Thesaurer of housold, and this officer, be many interchaunges of siluer vessell, hoole and brooke, receaued or deliuered by officers by Indentures &c. As it will appeare in [leaf 50, back] The Accompt of housold. And as for othir thinges touching this office, behold in the title *De Oblationibus*<sup>1</sup> Regis capitulid before. all thinges of this office inward or outward, cometh and goeth by the knowledge of the Kinge, and by the Chamberlaines Record. Also if any Knight or Squire presume to weare the Kinges liuerey, but if he come ther by authoritie, or ellys by record in this office./

The maister  
two seruants,  
the Clerke  
one seruant.

A Charriot  
with seauen  
horses.

Thanks to the kindness of Mr. Selby of H.M. Record Office and Mr. Furnivall, I have been enabled to identify Sir W. Daubeney, and to give some interesting particulars relating to him. We first meet with his name in 1480-1, when he was appointed Searcher in the Port of London.<sup>2</sup> The substance of the Patent Roll is as follows :

<sup>1</sup> Vide de hoc antea : folio. 15. b. [On Gifts by the King in charity, &c.]

<sup>2</sup> The following note is derived from a bundle of Searchers' Accounts for the period :—

[*Ancient Miscellanea*. (Exch. Q. R.) Searchers' Accounts. Bundle 692. J. P. R. 2110.]

1—6 } London.—Account by John Lyn who was appointed by  
Hen. VII } letters patent dated 22 Sept. 1 Hen. VII. Searcher in the  
port of London, to wit, from 22 Sept. / to Mich. 6 Hen.  
VII., William Dawbeney late Searcher. / membrane.

This Account extending over five years and 8 days gives the sum received as *nil*.

This record states the duties to be—"ad explorandum per se in propria persona sua, et non per substitutum, omnes naves et batellas extra regnum Anglie transeuntes, et ad idem regnum venientes in portubus et locis predictis [*i. e.* in portu Civitatis Londonie], et ad scrutinium faciendum de omnibus navibus et batellis hujusmodi, et de personis de quibus sinistra suspicio haberi poterit, quod lane, pelles lanute, coria, panni, aut mercimonia custumabilia non cokettata nec custumata in eisdem navibus, aut aurum vel argentum in pecunia numerata, aut masa vel plata seu focalia carcata seu posita fuerunt ; vel si alique persone bullas litteras instrumenta vel processus vel aliqua alia Regi vel suditis Regis prejudicialia infra vel extra regnum Regis predictum, detuleri contra proclamaciones et inhibiciones ex parte Regis inde factas, Habendum et occupandum officium predictum quamdiu Regi placuerit, una cum medietate forisfacture predictae."

9 Novr, 20 Edw. IV, 1480. Memb. 21. Appointment of Wm. Daubeney as Searcher in the Port of London & other places adjoining the same, with the usual fees & emoluments, & also the half of all forfeit, was seized to the King's use. His substitute or substitutes may act for him.

About the same time in a "Roll of Accounts, Michaelmas, 20 Edw. IV," there is an entry that John Barker of London, Goldsmith, had received 100*l* from *William Daubeney* in part payment of 80 butts of malmsey purchased by him for the use of the King's army.<sup>1</sup>

In 1483-4 he was re-appointed to the office of Searcher of the Port to Richard III. In the Patent Roll his previous appointment to the same office under Edward V. is referred to, and he is further described as Clerk of the Jewels. In the Calr. of the Patent Rolls, Ric. III. Appx. to 9th Report of Deputy Keeper of Records, p. 34, the following particulars relating to Sir W. Daubeney are given :

1 Ric. III., p. 2, 1483-4. Membrane 20 (4) 16 Dec. Appointment of *William Daubeney*, clerk of the jewels, as searcher in the port of London, with a grant of half of all the forfeitures, in as full a manner as William Merston, esq. enjoyed the same : which office the said *William Daubeney* fills by virtue of a patent of Edward V. the bastard [entry 39], *ib.* p. 39, Membrane 7 (19).

11 Mar. Release to *William Daubeney* (or Dabeney), searcher in the port of London, of all arrears of accounts, &c. to 6 March last [entry 133].

*ib.* p. 42, Membrane 2 (24).

8 April. Appointment of John Wode, knt, Treasurer of England, Robert Brakenbury, Constable of the Tower of London, Master William Lacy, Master *William Dawbeney*, and Master *Robert Rydon*, as Commissaries General in the office of the Admiralty in England. . .

*ib.* p. 67, Memb. 17 (9). 1 Ric. III, p. 4, 1483-4.

24 April. Grant to William Dawbeney, clerk of the jewels to Edward IV., of an annuity of 10*l*. out of a farm in Watford (Northampton), (2) by the hands of Eustace of Burneby and Matill his wife, to hold the same until the gift, for life, of an office of 20*l* yearly value ; further grant in survivorship to the

<sup>1</sup> Exchequer Issue Roll, Hen. III. to Edw. VI, ed. F. Devon, Appendix, p. 500.



said *William Dawbeney* and Joan his wife of an annuity of 20 marks, the former patents of 22 June, 21 Edw. IV. (p. 2, m. 12), and 1 May,<sup>1</sup> 21 Edw. IV. (p. 1, m. 6), granting to them the said annuities, having been surrendered.

An order under the Privy Seal of Henry VII. in 1485 to the Treasurer and Chamberlaine of his Exchequer orders them to allow to his "beloved cousin John, arl of Oxenford," the sums of 100 marks and 100£ out of his purchase-money of 800 marks for the manors of the late Wm. Alyngton during his son's minority, and the marriage of this son: This, because the Earl had paid 100 marks to Rich. Gardynere, alderman of London, "for so moche money by the said Richard Gardynere late lent unto Richard, duc of Gloucester, late, in dede and not of righte, kind of England, upon pledge of a salt of gold with a cover. . . the which salt . . . was delivered unto the said Richard Gardynere by one, *William Daubeney, knight, keeper of the juels with the foresaid pretended king* . . . and also the summe of c. ti. parcell of xxiiij<sup>o</sup>. ti by the said late pretended king borrowed of the maire and aldermen of our said citie of London . . . and for suertie and contentaciom of the said xxiiij<sup>o</sup>. ti. the said late pretended king laide in plege to the said maire and aldermen a coronalle gold garnished with many other grete and riche juelx, as by a bille endented betwix the said maire and aldremen; on that one partie, and the foresaid William Daubeney, then keper of juelx of the said pretended king on that othre partie thero made, more plainly doth appere."<sup>2</sup>

In Sept. 1484 we find the following orders: "Parcelles of clothing [&c.] to be delivered by the said bishop to the said erle [of Desmond]. . . . Item, a nother lettre direct to Mr. *William Dawbeney*, clerk of the kinges juelles, to delivere unto the said bisshop for the said erle of Dissemound, a coler of gold of xx<sup>ti</sup> oz., xxx<sup>ti</sup> ti.—Letters and Papers t. Rich. III. & Hen. VI, ed. Gairdner, Rolls Series, 1861, p. 713.

There is no William Daubeney's will of Caxton's time at the Probate Office, but the following items culled from various sources appear to refer to Caxton's friend, and his family:

Dame Joan Dawbeney, wife of Sir Wm. Dawbeney, was buried at the Augustine Friars Church, Broadstreet Ward, London, [no date given].<sup>3</sup> John, son and heir of Sir Giles Dawbeney, is buried in the same church.

<sup>1</sup> 1 March: in the patent roll of 21 Edw. IV.

<sup>2</sup> *Memorials Illustrative of the Reign of Henry VII.*, p. 214. (Rolls Series.)

<sup>3</sup> Stowe's *Survey of London*, 1633, p. 186, col. 2.

Sir Wm. Stanley, William Dawbeney late of London, gentleman, & others were attainted of treason for rebelling against Henry VII. Act of Attainder in the *Rolls of Parliament*, vol. 6, p. 503.

Mr. Walter Rye says that this may be the same man as Sir William, because, in an official document like the above, the title of Knight conferred by the usurper, Rich. III, would probably not be acknowledged. (But compare the order under the Privy Seal in 1485, on the preceding page.)

Mr. Rye also thinks our Wm. D. was connected with the Norfolk Dawbeney. In Blomfield's *Norfolk*, Wm. Dawbeney, of North Burlingham, after 1428 bought a property which his grandson Thomas sold in 1528.

The Series of English Charlemagne Romances will be completed by the issue next year of the romances of *Roland and Vernagu* and *Sir Otuel*, from the Auchinleck MS., and the curious poem of *Rauf Coilzear* from the unique printed copy.

SIDNEY J. HERRTAGE.

*Mill Hill, N.W., October 1881.*

The Lyf of the Noble and Crysten Prynce,  
Charles the Grete.

---

[CAXTON'S INTRODUCTION.]

- <sup>1</sup> **S** Aynt Poul, doctour of veryte, sayth to vs that al  
thynges that ben reduced by wrytyng ben wryton  
to our doctryne, And Boece maketh mencion that the  
4 helthe of euery persone procedeth dyuerceley. Thenne  
sythe it is soo that the cristen feyth is affermed and  
corrobered by the doctours of holy chyrche, Neuertheles  
the thynges passed dyuersley reduced to remembraunce  
8 engendre in vs correction of vnlaful lyf. For the  
werkes of the auncient and olde peple ben for to gyue  
to vs ensauple to lyue in good & vertuous operacions  
digne & worthy of helth, in folowyng the good and  
12 eschewyng the euyl. And also in recountyng of hie  
hystories the comune vnderstandyng is better content  
to the ymagnacion local than to symple auctoryte to  
which it is submysed. I saye this gladly, For oftymes  
16 I haue been excyted of the venerable man messire henry  
bolomyer, chanonne of lausanne, for to reduce for his  
playsyr somme hystories as wel in latyn & in romaunce  
as in other facion wryton, that is to say of the ryght  
20 puyssaunt, vertuous, and noble charles the grete, kyng  
of fraunce and emperour of Rome, Sone of the grete  
Pepyn: And of his prynces & barons, As Rolland,  
Olyuer, and other, touchyng<sup>2</sup> somme werkes haultayne  
24 doon & commysed by their grete strength & ryght  
ardaunt courage, to the exaltacyon of the crysten fayth

Since, as St Paul  
says, "all scrip-  
tures are written  
for our learning,"

and the lives of  
the ancients give  
us an example  
how to live,

I have, at the per-  
suasion of the  
venerable Canon  
Henry Bolomyer,

translated this  
history of  
Charlemagne and  
his douzeperes

<sup>1</sup> sign. A ij.

<sup>2</sup> col. 2.

to the best of my  
ability, chiefly

from the *Specu-  
lum Historiale*.

As I have before  
printed the Lives  
of Arthur, and of

Godfrey of  
Boulogne,

I now print this  
that all may be  
able to read it in  
our mother-  
tongue.

and to the confusyon of the hethen sarazyns and mys-  
creaunts, whiche is a werk wel contemplatyf for to lyue  
wel. And bycause the sayd henry Bolomyer hath seen  
of thys mater and the hystories dysioyned wythoute 4  
ordre, therefore at his request, after the capacitye of my  
lytel entendement, And after thystories and mater that  
I haue founden, I haue ordeyned this book folowyng.  
And it myght soo haue ben that yf I had ben more 8  
largely enformed and al playn I had better made it, For  
I haue not sayd ony matere, but I haue therof ben  
enformed, Fyrst by an autentyke book named myrroure  
hystorial, as by the canonnes and somme other bookes 12  
whiche make mencyon of the werke folowyng. And  
by cause I may haue a lytel parte of honourable founde-  
ment I shal touche of the first cristen kyng of fraunce.  
For the moste parte of this book is made to thonour of 16  
the frenssh men and for prouffyte of euery man, and  
after the desyre of the redar and herer there shalle be  
founden in the table all playne the mater of whyche  
the persone shal haue desyre to here or rede wythoute 20  
grete ate[n]dacyon, by <sup>1</sup>the playsyr of god, to whome I  
submytte al myn entente to write no thyng that ought  
to be blamed ne but that it be to the helthe & sauacion  
of euery persone.

24

**T**Henne for as moche I late had fynysshed in en-  
prynte the book of the noble & victoryous kyng  
Arthur, fyrst of the thre moost noble & worthy of crysten  
kynges, and also tofore had reduced into englysshe the 28  
noble hystorie & lyf of Godefroy of boloyne kyng of  
Iherusalem, last of the said iij worthy, Somme persones  
of noble estate and degree haue desyred me to reduce  
thystorie and lyf of the noble and crysten prynce 32  
Charles the grete, kyng of fraunce<sup>2</sup> & emperour of Rome,  
the second of the thre worthy, to thende that thystories,  
actes, & lyues may be had in our maternal tongue, lyke  
as they be in latyn or in frensshe. For the moost

<sup>1</sup> A ij, back.

<sup>2</sup> *Ed.* frauce.

- quantyte of the people vnderstonde not latyn ne frensshe  
 here in this noble royaume of england. And for to  
 satysfye the desyre & requeste of my good<sup>er</sup> synguler  
 4 lordes & specyal maysters and<sup>er</sup> frendes I haue enprysed<sup>er</sup>  
 and<sup>er</sup> concluded in my self to reduce this sayd<sup>er</sup> book in to  
 our englysshe, as all alonge and<sup>er</sup> playnely ye may rede,  
 here, and<sup>er</sup> see in thys book <sup>1</sup>here folowyng, besechyng  
 8 al them that shal fynde faute in the same to correcte and<sup>er</sup>  
 amende it, And also to pardone me of the rude & symple  
 reducyng<sup>er</sup>. and<sup>er</sup> though so be there be no gaye termes,  
 ne subtyl ne newe eloquence, yet I hope that it shal be  
 12 vnderstonden, & to that entente I haue specyally  
 reduced<sup>er</sup> it after the symple connyng<sup>er</sup> that god hath lente  
 to me, wherof I humbly & wyth al my herte thanke  
 hym, & also am bounden to praye for my fader and<sup>er</sup>  
 16 moders soules that in my youthe sette me to scole, by  
 whyche, by the suffraunce of god, I gete my lyuyng<sup>er</sup>  
 hope truly. And<sup>er</sup> that I may so do & contynue I byseche  
 hym to graunte me of his grace, and<sup>er</sup> so to laboure and<sup>er</sup>  
 20 occupye my self vertuously that I may come out of dette  
 & dedely synne, that after this lyf I may come to hys  
 blysse in heuen. AMEN.
- 24 ¶ <sup>2</sup>Here begynnen the chapytres & tytles of this  
 book folowyng<sup>er</sup> nombred for to fynde the more lyghtly  
 the mater therin comprised.
- ¶ Here begynneth the first book whyche conteyneth  
 28 thre partyes by the chapytres folowyng declared.
- ¶ The fyrst partye of the fyrst book conteyneth v  
 chapytres & speketh of the begynnyng<sup>er</sup> of fraunce and<sup>er</sup>  
 of kyng<sup>er</sup> Cloys.
- 32 Of the kynges of fraunce paynyns vnto kyng<sup>er</sup> cloys  
 the first crysten kyng<sup>er</sup>: capitulo primo  
 How kyng<sup>er</sup> cloys beyng a paynym had<sup>er</sup> to wyf  
 clotildis doughter of the kyng of bourgoyne & meruayl-  
 lously: capitulo ij

And I ask all my  
readers to pardon  
any imperfections  
in the work,

which I have done  
after my simple  
learning,

for which I bless  
my father and  
mother, who sent  
me to school.

The contents of  
this book.

Of book I.

Pt I contains v  
chapters.

Of the first kings  
of France.

Of King Cloys.

<sup>1</sup> col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> A iij.



Of the conversion  
of Cloys by his  
wife,

How the kyng was admonested of the quene clotildis  
affectuouſly that he ſhould byleue in the criſten fayth &  
other maters : ca. iiij

How kyng Clois was vyctorious on his enemyes by- 4  
cauſe he byleued in Iheſu Cryſt : ca. iiij

and of his  
baptiſm.

How the kyng was baptysed by ſaynt remyge, & in  
his bapteſme was brought by myracle the holy ampulle  
by an aungel fro heuen wyth whyche all kynges of 8  
fraunce ben enoynted at Raynes : capitulo. v.

Pt II contains v  
chapters.

¶ The ſecond partye of the book conteyneth v  
chapytres & ſpeketh fyrſt of kyng<sup>1</sup> pepyn & of Charle-  
mayn hys ſone. 12

Of King Pepin.

How Pepyn by hys prudence<sup>1</sup> was choſen kyng of  
frau[n]ce whan the lygne of Cloys faylled in ſucceſſion :  
capitulo primo

How Charles was  
made Emperour of  
Rome.

Of kyng Charles whyche made many conſtytucyous 16  
wyth the pope Adryan and how he was made emperour  
of Rome : ca. ij

Of his figure,

Of the corpulence of kyng charles and of the manere  
of his lyuyng : capitulo iiij 20

children,

To whome the kyng<sup>1</sup> Charles & his chyldren ſones  
& doughters were dedyed : capitulo iiij

and purſuits.

Of the ſtudy of kyng Charles, & hys lyuyng<sup>1</sup> and  
charytable werkes, and other maters : ca. v 24

Pt III contains  
iii chapters.

¶ The thyrde partye of the fyrſt book conteyneth iiij  
chapytres, & telleth how by deuyne reuelacyon Charles  
delyuerd the holy londe from the hondes of the hethen  
and myſcreauntes, and conteyneth thre chapytres. 28

How Charles  
helped the  
Patriarch of  
Jerusalem,

How the patryarcke of Iherusalem ſente to charles  
that he ſhould gyue to hym ſocours after that he was  
caſte oute by the turkes : capitulo primo

How Charles with a grete compagne went for to 32  
conquere the holy londe & other maters : ca. ij

and brought home  
the holy relics.

Of the relyques whyche themperour Charles brought  
fro conſtantlynoble & fro the holy londe, & of myracles  
there doon : [ca.] iiij

¶ Here begynneth the ij book whyche conteyneth Book II contain-  
ing iii parts.  
thre partyes by chapytres *ensyewyng* declared.

¶ The first partye of the second <sup>1</sup>book conteyneth Pt I contains xvj  
chapters.  
4 xvj chapytres and speketh of the bataylle bytwene  
Olyuer and Fyerabras, a meruayllous gyaunt.

¶ How in a place named Mormyonde Charles  
ensyewed his warre ayenst the paynims, after a lytel of  
8 the prologe : ca. primo

Of fyerabras how he came to exerceyte charles : Of Fierabras  
[Ferumbras].  
capitulo ij

How Rychard of Normondye sayd to themperour  
12 what maner man was Fyerabras : capitulo iij

The answer of Rolland to themperour ouer sodeynly : Dispute between  
ca. iiij

How kyng charles & Rolland ben reprysed by Charles and Ro-  
land.  
16 thauctour & excused somewhat vpon the debate afor-  
sayd : capitulo v

How Olyuer was dysposed to fight ayenst fyerabras How Oliver,  
against the wish  
of his father,  
undertook to fight  
with Fierabras.  
notwythstandyng that he was hurt : [ca.] vj

20 How Olyuer was requyred by hys fader that he  
shold not fyzt with the gaunt, but for al that he went  
forth : capitulo vij

How Olyuer spake fyrst to fyerabras, whych set no  
24 thyng by hym, with other desputacions. viij

How after many dysputacions olyuer ayded fyerabras  
to arme hym, and of the ix meruayllus swerdes, & how  
Olyuer named hym self by his propre name : [ca.] ix

28 How Olyuer & fyerabras began to fyght, and of the Of the fight,  
prayer of Charles for Olyuer, and other maters : capitulo x

How Olyuer made hys prayer <sup>2</sup>to god whan he felte  
hym hurte : Capitulo xj

32 How after a grete bataylle Olyuer gate the bame & and of the bottles  
of holy balm.  
dranke at his ease, & how he dyd whan his hors was  
slayn : capitulo xiij

How fyerabras & olyuer fouzt togyder on fote mer-

<sup>1</sup> A iij, bk.

<sup>2</sup> col. 2.

uayllously, & the prayer that charles maad for Olyuer :  
capitulo xiiij

How Oliver over-  
came Fierabras,

How at this bataylle fyerabras was vaynquysshed  
by Olyuer after that he had recouerd one of the swerdes 4  
of Fyerabras. [ca.] xiiij

How Fyerabras beyng<sup>t</sup> vaynquysshed byleued<sup>d</sup> in god,  
and how he was borne by Olyuer, & how Olyuer was  
assayled of the sarasyns & tormented : ca. xv 8

but was himself  
taken by the  
Saracens.

How Olyuer was taken & hys eyen blynfeld<sup>d</sup> pye-  
tously, which coude not be socoured by the frensshe  
men : capitulo xvj

Pt II contains  
xviij chapters.

¶ The second<sup>d</sup> partye of the ij book conteyneth xviij 12  
chapytres, & speketh of the torment of the barons of  
fraunce & how they that were not taken went for to  
speke to ballant thadmyral.

¶ How fyerabras was founde by Charles and after 16  
baptysed & heled of his woundes : ca. j

How Oliver was  
throwen into  
prison,

How Olyuer and hys felowes were presented to ballant  
thadmyral and cruelly passyoned<sup>d</sup> by pryson : capitulo ij

Of the pryson where the frensshe men were lodged 20  
and how they were vysyted<sup>d</sup> by fayr Florypes, <sup>1</sup>doughter  
of thadmyral, & of the beaulte of hyr : capitulo<sup>2</sup> iiij

and after released  
by Floripas.

How the frensshe men were had<sup>d</sup> oute of pryson and  
vysyted by the fayr floripes, & of the beaute of hyr 24  
chambre : capitulo iiij

Of the messengers  
sent by Charles  
and Balan.

How kyng charles sent to ballant thadmyral vij  
peres of fraunce, whyche wold<sup>d</sup> not gladly haue goon  
thyder : capitulo v 28

How thadmyral sent xv kynges sarasyns to charles  
to haue ageyn Fyerabras, the whyche were recounted<sup>d</sup> by  
the peres of fraunce & put to deth : ca. vj

Of the Bridge of  
Mantrible.

Of the meruayllous brydge of mantryble, of the 32  
tribute that must be there payed<sup>d</sup> for the passage, & how  
with fayr wordes the frensshe men passed<sup>d</sup> ouer. [ca.] vij

How the barons cam & spake to thadmyral, and  
what message they made to hym : capitulo viij

<sup>1</sup> A iiii.

<sup>2</sup> Ed. tapitulo.



- How by the moyen of Floripes al the frensshemen  
were sauēd & lodged to-gyder & knowen by her, &  
resonned & of the reliques shewed to them, & other  
4 maters : capitulo ix  
How lucafer, neuewe of thadmyral, vyolently entred  
in to the chambre & after was slayne by duc naymes in  
blowyng<sup>t</sup> of the cole : capitulo x  
8 How by the counceyl of floripes the frenssh men  
dyslodged thadmyral fro his paleys strongly by grete  
bataylle, & how by enchaument a gyrdel was taken  
<sup>1</sup>fro his doughter : capitulo xj  
12 How the barons were assyeged<sup>t</sup> in that toure with  
floripes and her maydens whiche suffred grete hungre,  
& how the goddes were by them confounded : ca. xij  
How the peres of fraunce came oute of the toure, &  
16 what grete batayll they made in which they mette &  
recountred xx sommyers with vytaylle : capitulo xiiij  
How guy of burgoyne was taken with the sarasyns,  
beten vylaynously & examyned of ballant thadmyral,  
20 & the complayntes that floripes made for hym, & other  
maters : capitulo xiiij  
How the paynems had purposed<sup>t</sup> to haue hanged guy  
of burgoyne, seyng<sup>t</sup> the crysten men, whyche socoured<sup>t</sup>  
24 hym puyssantly. [ca.] xv  
How the peres of fraunce tofore sayd<sup>t</sup> were purueyed<sup>t</sup>  
of vytayl, & after restored, & after assyeged, & fougt  
with the paynems xvj  
28 How the toure was brente & a quarter fyl down by  
enchaument, & how the frenssh men were in grete  
peryl of deth & restored by assault that they made vpon  
the paynems : capitulo xvij  
32 Here begynneth the thyrde parte of the second book  
the which conteyneth xvj chapytres & speketh how the  
barons of fraunce<sup>2</sup> made to them socours, and the pay-  
nems confused & destroyed.

How Floripas  
saved the French  
knights.

Of the death of  
Lucifer,

and the capture of  
the castle of  
Aigremont,

which was be-  
sieged by Balan.

Of the capture of  
Guy,

and his rescue.

Of the burning of  
the tower by  
Balan.

Pt III contains  
xvj chapters.

Of the mocyon of the peres of fraunce for to sende

<sup>1</sup> col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> *Ed.* frauce.

How the French  
determined to  
send Richard to  
Charles for help.

and shewe <sup>1</sup>theyr affayres vnto kyng Charles, & how  
rychard of Normondye was ordeyned for to goo to hym:  
capitulo primo

Of the death of  
Clarion.

How after that Rychard was departed the kyng<sup>4</sup> 4  
claryon, the ryght puyssaunt kyng, rode after hym, the  
whiche was slayn by the sayd rychard valyauntly, &  
other maters: capitulo ij

How the hors of rychard cam & retorned through 8  
thexcersyte of thadmyral & was seen & knowen of the  
peres of fraunce, in so moche that they supposed he had  
ben deed, & how the brydge of mantryble was kept:  
ca. ij 12

How Richard  
passed the river  
Flagot,

How rychard of Normandye passed the ryuer of  
flagot by myracle by the meane of a whyte herte:  
capitulo iiij

How Charles was in purpoos for to haue retorned 16  
wythoute goyng ony ferther, by the counceyl of the  
traytre ganellon & other his felowes: ca. v

and reached  
Charles.

How after the complaynte of Charles rychard of  
normandye came to hym, which recounted the grete 20  
necessytees of the peres of fraunce & in what fere they  
were in: capitulo vj

How the French  
army passed the  
bridge of Man-  
trible.

How by the moyen & counceyl of rychard of Nor-  
mandye with iiij other barons the stronge brydge of 24  
mantryble was wonne, not wythoute payne, & what  
manere man was galafre: ca. vij

How by force of mortalyte & of batayll Charles entred  
into man<sup>2</sup>tryble after that Galafre was deed, not-with- 28  
standyng that alorge the traytre was contrarye to hym,  
& many other maters. [ca.] viij

Of Amyot  
the giantess.

How amyot the geantesse wyth an huge grete sythe  
dyd gretely hyr deuoyr ayenst the cristen men, & how 32  
hyr ij sones were baptysed, & of ballant thadmyral  
whan he knewe the tydynges: ca. ix

How the peres of fraunce were assayled more

<sup>1</sup> A iiij, bk.

<sup>2</sup> col. 2.

strongely than euer they were, and how the toure was  
quasi smyten down to the erthe & after recomforted by  
the holy relyques by them adoured, and other maters :

Of the fortunes  
of the knights  
besieged by  
Balan,

4 capitulo x

How the frenssh men in the toure had tydynges of  
the hoost of Charles & thadmyral also, and how Ganel-  
lon bare hym meruayllously whan he was sent forth

and how they saw  
Charles coming  
to their aid.

8 allone & what he dyd : [ca.] xj

How charles themperour ordeyned x bataylles, &  
how they recountred the bataylles of puyssaunce of  
Ballant thadmyral, where as themperour dyd meruaylles,

12 & other maters : ca. xij

How in this bataylle folowyng Sortybrant the kyng  
was slayn by Reyner fader of Olyner, and how after-  
ward thadmyral dyd meruaylles and grete ennoye to the

How Reyner slew  
Sortibrant.

16 frensshe men : capitulo xij

How the peres of fraunce that were in the toure cam  
oute whan they sawe thoost of Charles, & how thad-  
myral was taken and holden prysoner : ca. xiiij

Of the capture of  
Baian,

20 'How ballant thadmyral for all the admonycion that  
was made to hym he wold not be baptysed but was  
slayn, & Floripes hys doughter was baptysed & after  
wedded to guy of burgoyne, & guy crowned kyng &

and his death,  
and of the baptism  
and marriage of  
Floripas.

24 she quene of that contre : capitulo xv

How Florypes gaf the reliques to themperour, & how  
they were assayed & proued by myracle, & of the  
retournyng of charles & the ende of this book : ca. xvj

28 ¶ Here begynneth the iij book whiche conteyneth  
ij partyes by the chapytres folowyng declared.

Book III contains  
ij parts.

¶ The first partye of the iij book conteyneth xiiij  
chapytres & speketh of the warres in spayne & of two

Pt I contains xij  
chapters.

32 grete geantes.

How saynt Iames appyered to Charles, & how by  
the moyen & by the conduyte of the sterres he went in  
to Galice, & what citees he there subdued : ca. primo

How at the bid-  
ding of St James  
Charles invaded  
Spain,

Of cytees gotten in spayne by Charles, & how somme  
of theym were by hym cursed: capitulo ij

Of a grete ydolle whyche was in a cyte that myght  
not be beten down, and of the sygnes & condycyons 4  
therof: capitulo iij

and of the church  
which he built to  
the saint,

Of the chyrche of saynt Iames in Galyce, & of other  
chyrrches that he dyd there do founde: [ca.] iij

How after that Aygolant the geaunt had taken 8  
spayne & destroyed & put to deth the crysten men  
Charles recouerð it, & other maters: capitulo v

How Aigoland  
challenged  
Charles,

<sup>1</sup>How aygolant sent to Charles that he shold feably  
come to hym with lytel peple to make Iuste warre, & 12  
how Charles in habyte dissimyled spake to hym, &  
other maters: capitulo vj

How charles accompanied with moche peple retorned  
to the place forsaide & took the cite of agenne, & other 16  
maters: capitulo vij

Of the vertuous operacions that charles dyd whan  
he was retorned in to fraunce, & what barons he had in  
his companye, and of theyr puyssaunce: capitulo viij 20

by whom he was  
vanquished,

Of the tryewes of charles & of aygolant & of the  
deth of his peple, & wherfore aygolant was not bap-  
tysed: ca. ix ¶ Of the deth of aygolant & of his peple,  
& how moche people of the cristen men were dede by 24  
concupyscence of money, & the crysten founden dede  
by myracle: ca. x ¶ Of ferragus the meruayllous geant,  
how he bare awaye the barons of fraunce with out  
daunger, & how afterward rolland fouzt ayenst hym: 28  
ca. xj

Of Ferragus the  
giant,

and his duel with  
Roland,

How on the morne rolland and ferragus foughten  
to-gyder, and of their desputyng of their fayth, and by  
what meane Ferragus was slayn by rolland: ca. xij 32

How Charles went to cordube where as the kyng of  
that place & of cibylle abode hym, & of their destruc-  
tyon: ca. xij



- How the chirche of saint James was halowed & sacred by turpin tharchebisshop, & thother chirches <sup>1</sup>of spayne subgettes to the same, & of y<sup>e</sup> pryncypal 4 chyrches : [ca.] xiiij
- ¶ The second<sup>e</sup> partye of the iij book conteyneth x chapytres & speketh of the trayson doon and made by Ganellon & of the deth of the peres of fraunce. Pt II contains x chapters.
- 8 How the trayson was comprysed by Ganellon of the deth of the crysten men, & how ganellon is repreued by thauctour : ca. j
- Of the deth of kyng marsuryus, and how Rolland<sup>e</sup> 12 was hurte wyth foure speres mortally after that al his peple were slayn and deed : capitulo ij
- How Rolland<sup>e</sup> deyed<sup>e</sup> moche holyly after many maters & orysones made, and prayed to god moche deuoutely, 16 and of the complaynte made vpon hys swerde durandal : capitulo ij
- Of the vysion of the deth of rolland<sup>e</sup> shewed to tharchebysshop Turpyn, & of the sorowe of charles, & 20 how he complayned hym pyteously, & other maters. iiij
- How olyuer was founden slayn, and of the deth of the sarasyns, & of the deth of ganellon whyche was hydous : capitulo v
- 24 How after the thynges aforesayd Charles gaf thankynges and preysynges to god and to Saynt Denys : And of the constitucions that he made in fraunce : capitulo vj
- 28 How Charles wente into Almayn where as he deyed<sup>e</sup> holyly, <sup>2</sup>and of his deth shewed to tharchebysshop Turpyn, and of his buryeng Imperyally : ca. vij
- Of the recapitulacion of al this werke, and of hys 32 deth at acon, & of his sepulture : capitulo viij
- Thexeusacyon of thauctour. [ca.] ix
- Thenuoye of thauctour : ca. x

¶ Explicit

<sup>1</sup> A v, bk.<sup>2</sup> col. 2.

[Of the kynges of fraunce paynynms vnto kyng'  
cloys the first cristen kyng: capitulo  
primo]

Of the colonisa-  
tion of France  
by Francus, a

companion of  
Æneas,

and of the kings  
of France after  
him.

<sup>1</sup> **A**S it is redde in thystories of the troians 4  
After the destructyon of the noble cyte of  
Troye there was a kyng<sup>i</sup> moche noble named<sup>k</sup>  
francus, the whyche was felowe of Eneas, which,  
whan he departed fro Troye came in to the regyon of 8  
fraunce & began to regne in grete prosperyte: & for  
the felycyte of his name he dyd compose & do edyfy a  
cyte whiche he named<sup>k</sup> fraunce, & so folowyn<sup>g</sup> all the  
regyon was called fraunce: & after, whan fraunce was 12  
enhau<sup>n</sup>ced & reduced to mageste ryal Priamus was the  
fyrst that regned vpon the frensshe men v yere. The  
second was marcurius xxxiij yere; The iij pharamundus  
regned xj yere; The iiij clodyus xiiij yere; The v 16  
Meroneus x yere; The vj hildericus xxvij. yere, & the  
vij was Clodoneus, the fyrst crysten kyng<sup>i</sup> whyche  
regned<sup>k</sup> vpon the frensshe men after thyncarnacion of  
our lord cccclxxxiiij yere, of whome I entende to make 20  
a litel mencyon vpon hys merueyllous conuersacyon.

¶ How the kyng clodoneus paynym had' to  
wyf the noble doughter of the kynge of  
burgoyne: capitulo ij 24

Of Guldengus,  
King of Bur-  
gundy, and his  
four sons.

**I**N that tyme was kyng<sup>i</sup> of the burgoybons guy-  
dengus, the whiche had<sup>k</sup> iiij sones al of good  
aege, that is to wete, Agabondus, the ij <sup>2</sup>godo-  
gesylus, the iiij. Hyspericus, & the fourth Godamarus. 28  
The fyrst agabondus replenysshed of al inyqyte  
put to deth by swerd his broder hispericus and<sup>k</sup> after

<sup>1</sup> A vj.

<sup>2</sup> col. 2.

- henge his wyf, & put a stone aboute hyr necke & drowned hyr. This hyspericus had two fayre doughters, the eldest was named throne whom agabondus her vncle  
 4 bannysshed fro hys contrey & sent hir forth in habyte dyssymyled. The younger of these ij dougters was named clotildis, whom he reteyned for hir beaute wyth hym in his hous. duryng<sup>1</sup> thys the kyng clodoneus, or  
 8 Cloys in freysshe, beyng a paynym whyche byleued with his subgettes but vpon ydolles, oftymes for hys affayres sent his messagers in to burgoyne. clotyldys this fayr mayde was ofte seen of the messagers of the kyng  
 12 Cloys & by-holden affectuously, and for hir grete beaulte & dyscrecyon the sayd messagers notyfyed it to the kyng cloys, and whan thys kyng Cloys was ynough informed of the grete beaute & wysdom of this mayde,  
 16 whyche was crysten, he was moche curyous to sende his herawdes vnto agabondus vncle of thys doughter for to haue hyr to maryage. Duryng<sup>1</sup> those dayes the kyng<sup>1</sup> Cloys had a subtyl man wyth hym named  
 20 aurelyanus, which by comaundement of hys lord wente<sup>1</sup> to the place where as was thys mayde & put hym self in habyte moche poure and dyssymyled, & left his good<sup>1</sup> habytes with his felowes in a wode & went moche  
 24 holyly tofore the moder chyrche of that place the day of a grete feste, & set hym self in the myddes of the poure peple for to receyue almesse lyke as other dyden. whan thoffyce was accomplysshed this mayde Clotildis,  
 28 like as she was accustomed, atte departyng<sup>1</sup> fro the chyrche began to gyue almesse to the poure peple, & whan she came to Aurelianus she gaf to hym in his honde a pyece of golde, & anone he as glad & wel  
 32 contente kyssed<sup>1</sup> hyr honde. whan this lady was in hyr chambre she began to thynke on that poure man that had kyssed<sup>1</sup> hyr honde & sent for to seche hym by hyr seruaunt. whan he wyst it he cam to hir moche

Of Clotildis,  
daughter of  
Hyspericus,  
and of her great  
beauty.

Cloys sends  
Aurelian in dis-  
guise to see  
Clotildis.

He presents him-  
self before her to  
receive alms.

She sends for him,

<sup>1</sup> A vj, back.

and asks him  
who he is,  
and his object in  
coming.

Aurelianus tells her,  
and presents the  
ring of Cloys.

Clotildis says she  
cannot marry a  
pagan.

Next year Cloys  
demands Clotildis  
to wife from Aga-  
bondus,

who at first re-  
fuses, but after-  
wards consents.

Cloys and Clo-  
tildis are married.

Joyously and bare in his honde the rynge of kyng cloys  
& humbly behaued hym tofore hyr. ¶ The mayde  
began to say to hym; "saye to me wherfore dyssymyl-  
est thou thy self lyke to the poure people." Aurelyanus 4  
answerd: "Madame, knowe ye for trouthe that I am  
a messenger of the noble kyng<sup>i</sup> cloys kyng<sup>i</sup> of Fraunce,  
whiche hath sente me to you, & beyng<sup>i</sup> enformed of  
your beaute & wysdom desyreth you to be hys wyf & 8  
for to be quene," & forthwith he <sup>1</sup>presented to hir the  
rynge of kyng cloys the whyche she took & put it in to  
the tresour of agabondus hir vncle, & sayd to the mes-  
sager that he shold<sup>e</sup> recomaunde hyr to the kyng in 12  
tellyng to hym that it was not leeful to a paynym to  
haue to his wyf a crysten woman. Neuertheles she  
prayed hym that of al this he shold<sup>e</sup> say noo worde, &  
that she wold<sup>e</sup> not doo but as the kyng<sup>i</sup> wold<sup>e</sup>. & vpon 16  
this poynt aurelianus came and shewed al to the kyng,  
wherevpon the kyng cloys the yere folowyng<sup>i</sup> sent ageyn  
his messenger aurelianus to agabondus vncle of Clotildis  
for to haue hyr to his wyf. whan Agabondus knewe 20  
thentencyon of kyng cloys he answerd to the messenger:  
"Say hardyly to the kyng<sup>i</sup> thy lord that he hath lytel  
to do in desyryng<sup>i</sup> to haue my nyce to wyf:" but the  
bourgoynons wyse counseyllours, redoubtyng the puy- 24  
saunce of kyng Cloys, by good<sup>e</sup> counceyl whan they had  
wel serched the tresour of Agabondus their kyng &  
founde the rynge of kyng cloys which clotildis had  
layed therin, wherein was grauen & portrayed his ymage, 28  
wente & concluded to performe the wylle of kyng clois:  
& vpon this agabondus ful of yre delyuerd Clotildis to  
aurelianus & he brougt hir with his peple with grete  
loye to kyng cloys which had grete <sup>2</sup>playsyr to see 32  
thys fayr mayde. And forthwyth with al solemnnyte  
after the maner royal he espoused<sup>e</sup> hir after the custome  
of his lawe.

<sup>1</sup> col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> A vij.



¶ How kyng' Cloys was admonested' by the  
 quene clotildis affectuously that he shold'  
 byleue in the crysten fayth, and' other  
 4 maters : capitulo iij

**T**He fyrst nyght after the espousaylles atte houre  
 that the kyng' and the quene shold slepe to-  
 gyder, Clotylidis enbraced wyth the loue of god  
 8 by grete knowlege of Ihesus our lord went and said  
 to the kyng' : "My right dere lord, I requyre the  
 that it please the to graunte to me a lytel demaunde  
 byfore or I entre in to thy bedde wyth the." The  
 12 kyng sayd : "demaunde what thou wylt For I am  
 wel contente." Clotylidis thenne sayd to hym : "Fyrst,  
 I demaunde, requyre, and admoneste the that thou wylt  
 byleue in god of heuen Fader almyghty, whyche made  
 16 heuen and erthe & that hath created the. And in  
 Ihesu Cryst his glorious sone, kyng' of alle kynges,  
 which by his passyon hath redemed the. And in the  
 holy ghoost, confirmatour and Illumynatour of al good  
 20 werkes, procedyng' fro the fader & fro the sone, the  
 foresayd Trynyte in one onely essen[ce], to whome  
 ought to be gy<sup>1</sup>uen al honour and all lawde & byleue.  
 Byleue ye in this holy byleue and mageste and leue  
 24 the ydolles made wyth mannes honde, a folysse thyng  
 and vayn, and thynke for to restore the holy chyrches  
 whyche thou hast brente. Secondly, I requyre the  
 that thou wylt demaunde my parte and poreyon of the  
 28 goodes of my fader and of my moder of agabondus myn  
 vncle whom he dyd put to deth falsely and wythoute  
 occasyon, but the vengeance I leue to god." whan she  
 had said this the kyng answerd : ¶ "Thou hast  
 32 demaunded me a poynte & passage which is to me ouer  
 strait & hard to graunte, that is that I shold forsake  
 my goddes by whome I gouern me, for to adoure one

Clotildis makes  
 two requests of  
 Cloys.

First, that he will  
 become a  
 Christian

and forsake his  
 false gods.

Secondly, that he  
 will demand her  
 dowry from Aga-  
 bondus.

Cloy's begs to ask something else, .

but she repeats her first request.

Cloy's sends Aurelian to demand his wife's property.

Agabondus in a rage refuses to give it up,

but by the advice of his counsellors gives way.

Clotildis has a son, who is baptised,

but dies shortly after.

Cloy's says it would not have died had it not been baptised.

only god of whome thou hast spoken to me. demaunde of me som other thyng & with good hert I shal doo it." Clotildis ansuerd : "as moche as is possyble to me to requyre I supplye & byseche the that thou 4 wilt adoure the god of heuen maker of al, to whome onely is due al honour." the kyng made none other ansuer but sente anone Aurelyen his factour to agabondus for to haue the goodes longyng to the quene 8 Clotildis, & whan Aurelyen had doon his message Agabondus, replenysshed with grete Ire, ansuerd to the messenger that he shold as soone haue alle his royame as ony thyng of hym. For which cause Aurelyen said 12 to hym : "the kyng cloy's my maister comaundeth the by me that thou make an answer vpon my demaunde or ellys he shalle be euyl contente." Thenne the bourgoynons helden a counceyl and sayd to agabondus their 16 kyng : "Sir kyng, gyue to your nyece of your goodes as reason wyl for it is ryght, And we knowe wel that so ought ye to doo and to take playsyr to haue good alyaunces with clois the kyng and wyth all the frensshe 20 peple, to thende that they renne not on vs. For the people is boystous & furious and, that werse is, wythout mynde of god " And vpon this poynte Agabondus, constrayned to the counceyl of the bourgoynons hys 24 peple, sente a grete partye of his tresour to Aurelyen the messenger of kyng Cloy's. In a litel tyme after the kyng cloy's in vysityng his royame The quene clotyldis was anon grete with chylde, and sone after was delyuerd 28 of a sone whome she dyd do baptyse, And contynuelly requyred the kyng that he wold byleue as to-fore is sayd, but he in no wyse wold here her ne do therafter. And whan the chylde was baptysed anone it exsperd 32 & dyed, wherof the kyng was euyl contente and sayd to the quene : "yf thou haddest gyuen hym and dedyed hym to my goddes he were now alyue." The

quene answerd: "for this thyng I am noo thyng per-  
 turbled in my courage, but I rendre & gyue thankynges  
 to god my creatour by cause he hath me so dygne  
 4 and worthy that it hath plesed hym to take in to his  
 royalme of heuen the fyrst fruyt of my wombe." After,  
 the yere folowyng she had ageyn another sone named  
 lodomyrus, the whyche whan he was baptysed bycame  
 8 anone so seke that it was supposed he shold deye.  
 And whan the kyng sawe it languyshe he beyng euyl  
 contente said to the quene: "and now,"<sup>1</sup> sayd he,  
 "it shal none otherwyse be of this chylde but as it was  
 12 of that other his broder, by-cause ayenst myn entente  
 thou doost thy wylle in baptysyng them." Thenne the  
 quene for the fere of the kyng prayed to god deuoutely  
 for the helthe of hyr chylde, And anone he was  
 16 guarlysshed and hool.

A second son  
 also falls ill after  
 baptism,

but through the  
 queen's prayers  
 recovers.

¶ How the kyng' Cloys was vycoryous of hys  
 enemyes by cause he byleued' in Ihesu  
 Cryste: Capitulo iiij

20 **K**Yng Cloys after certeyn tyme began to make  
 warre mortal ayenst the Almayns, And so  
 perseueryng the <sup>2</sup>allemayns had vycorye on  
 the frensshe men in suche wyse that they were ouer-  
 24 throwen & slayn. Therne whan aurelyen sawe the  
 dystruccion of the kynges peple he began to beholde  
 the kyng hys lord & sayd to hym: "Syr kyng, ye see  
 tofore your eyen the mortal destruccion of your peple,  
 28 I requyre you that ye byleue in god. almyghty whych  
 hath made heuen & erthe, I mene hym whome my lady  
 the quene adoureth, precheth, and byleueth on."  
 Whan the kyng had herde aurelyen thus speken in  
 32 grete affectyon he began to lyfte his eyen vnto heuen  
 and wepte moche largely, and wyth grete pyte thus

Clois attacks the  
 Germans,

but is defeated  
 with heavy loss.

Aurelian calls  
 on the king to be  
 converted,

<sup>1</sup> Ed. how.

<sup>2</sup> A viij.

and the king  
yields to his  
entreaties.

Clois having  
acknowledged  
himself a  
Christian prays  
to God for aid.

He gains a victory  
over the Germans.

sayd: "O Ihesu cryst, sone of the veray god almyghty,  
on whom my wyf by-leueth and wyth al hyr hert  
precheth & notyfyeth hym to gyue remedye to them  
that ben in trybulacyons, I byseche the of ayde and 4  
socour that I may be vycoryous of myn enemyes by  
experyence presently. I byleue<sup>1</sup> on the, and in thy  
name I shalle baptyse me. I haue demaunded my  
goddess for to helpe me but they haue doon no thyng 8  
for me, And I say they be of noo value ne of noo  
comforte whan they may not helpe them that requyre  
them. Wherefore to the as veray god and lord I requyre  
the that I may be delyuerd by thy hye puyssaunce fro 12  
myn aduer<sup>2</sup>saries." he thus sayeng wyth an hyghe  
voys The allemayns his enemyes vanquysshed & mur-  
dred began to flee in suche wyse that theyr kyng  
was deed, wherefore they that abode yelded them to 16  
kyng cloyis and bycamen his subgettes and sette al that  
contreye vnder hys obayssaunce & puyssaunce payeng  
yerely trybute. Thenne after this vycory by the  
puyssaunce of god obteyned he came in to fraunce And 20  
recounted alle to the quene hys wyf, how by Inuocacion  
dyuyne and by thayde of god almyghty he had obteyned  
vycorye.

¶ How the kyng' was baptysed' by saynt 24  
Remyge, & in hys baptesme by myracle  
was brouzt the holy ampulle by an aungel  
fro heuen wherof euer after all the kynges  
of Fraunce been enoynted' in theyr conse- 28  
cracyon atte cyte of Raynes: capitulo v.

Clotildis sends  
for Remigins  
to baptise Clois.

**A**fter that the quene had herde the kynge whyche  
was conuerted vnto the crysten fayth for the  
vycorye whych he had obteyned she had grete 32  
Ioye And Incontynent sent after saynt Remyge bysshop

<sup>1</sup> *Ed.* byleueue.

<sup>2</sup> *col.* ij.



of raynes, a moche holy man, whiche came to hyr for  
to preche to the kyng<sup>1</sup> his saluacyon & the manere of  
the crysten fayth. & whan he was comen, after that  
4 <sup>1</sup>he had wel enformed the kyng, began strongly to  
excyte the peple of fraunce to byleue in Ihesu Cryst,  
And the peple gaynsayed it not. For in knowyng<sup>1</sup> the  
error of thyddolles they began al to byleue in god &  
8 say: "Syr kyng<sup>1</sup> glorious, it is best that ye forsake  
thyddolles and adoure the god<sup>1</sup> Immortal whome the  
quene adoureth and preyseth & so for to do all we be  
contente." Incontynent al this was shewed<sup>1</sup> to saynt  
12 Remyge, wherof he was moche Ioyous, and cam to them  
dilygently as a good<sup>1</sup> herdman that taketh grete payne  
to kepe the sheep fro his aduersarye; and grete playsyr  
ought he to haue to come thyder, For his comyng<sup>1</sup> and<sup>1</sup>  
16 hys prechyng<sup>1</sup> dyd<sup>1</sup> soo grete prouffyte that it made the  
peple to be regenerate after thordynaunce of holy bap-  
tesme, wythoute whych no man may entre in to heuen.  
wherfore the necessaryte of the saluacion of thys kyng<sup>1</sup>  
20 enlumyned of grace, dysposed<sup>1</sup> to byleue, conioyned to  
good<sup>1</sup> entencyon maad<sup>1</sup> affectuously saynt Remyge to  
come, for he thought wel whan the kyng<sup>1</sup> was baptysed<sup>1</sup>  
and byleued<sup>1</sup> in Ihesu cryst and his commaundements  
24 that al the peple subgette to hym shold<sup>1</sup> do the same  
wyse. And whan saynt remyge was comen and had<sup>1</sup>  
commyned with the kyng touchyng<sup>1</sup> his salua<sup>2</sup>-cyon  
[he] began to ordeyne the place for to baptysen hym  
28 honourably, and dyd<sup>1</sup> do<sup>3</sup> paynte the hystories after  
somme poyntes of our crysten fayth moche rychely and  
repayred<sup>1</sup> the places ryght delicyously. ¶ And on that  
other he dyd<sup>1</sup> do ordeyne & founde chirches autentykly,  
32 & compose baptызatoryes & frentes conuenably. whan  
al this was done <sup>4</sup>y<sup>e</sup> kyng was al redy to receyue the

The bishop comes,  
and by his  
preaching  
converts the  
whole French  
nation,

who urge the  
king to forsake  
idolatry.

St. Remigius  
makes prepara-  
tions for the  
baptism of Clois.

<sup>1</sup> A viij, back.

<sup>2</sup> col. 2.

<sup>3</sup> Ed. to.

<sup>4</sup> The words between the asterisks are repeated in the original with slight alterations, as follow: And theene the kyng was al redy to receyue the holy sacrament of baptesme

He delivers an  
exhortation to  
the king.

Remigius  
declares the  
articles of the  
Christian faith.

Clois and all his  
subjects are  
baptised.

A dove brings  
from heaven a  
vessel containing  
chrism.

holy sacrament of baptesme, to whome the frende of  
god saynt remyge began to say by faconde manere.  
¶ "Syr kyng', it is tyme that ye ought wyth pure en-  
tencyon to forsake the false goddes to whome tofore 4  
this tyme ye haue gyuen fayth,\* whyche ben ful of al  
vanyte and do no thyng but excersite of dampnacyon.  
And ye ought to byleue wyth ryzt humble hert in one  
onely god almyghty, the fader, the sone, & the holy 8  
ghoost, one onely & pure essence, whyche hath created  
heuen and erthe, to whome one onely ouzt to gyue  
fayth and creaunce: and in Ihesu cryst his sone,  
whyche for the sauacyon of humayn creature <sup>1</sup>wold 12  
take humanyte couenable for to repayre thynobedyence  
of our fyrst fader Adam. And that was conceyued in  
the bely of the Virgyn marie by the werk of the holy  
ghoost: whyche after was sette on the crosse and took 16  
deth dolorously for to redeme vs, was buryed and roos  
fro deth to lyf, and after ascended in to heuen, and  
sytteth vpon the ryght honde of the fader, and fro  
thens shal come and Iudge the lyuyng' and deed. 20  
¶ Also ye shal byleue in holy chyrche, our catholyque  
moder, & her ordonnayre." and whan saynt Remyge  
had ynough enformed the kyng' and the peple of our  
fayth and byleue he baptysed them in the name of the 24  
fader & of the sone & of the holy ghoost. And whan  
he came to enoyntyng' after the custome of the holy  
cresme whyche noo man brought, Incontynent by the  
plesyr of god and demonstraunce myraculous, they alle 28  
stondyng',<sup>2</sup> sodeynlye came down descendyng fro heuen  
a douue shynnyng, whiche bare in hyr becke an holy  
ampull and lefte it in the same place where the holy  
cresme was, wherwyth the kyng' cloys was fyrst 32

[*printed* taptesme], To whom Saynt Remyge began by fayr  
manere: "Syr Kyng, it is tyme that 3e ought of pure Inten-  
cion to forsake the goddes to whome here afore tyme 3e haue  
byleued on."

<sup>1</sup> B j.

<sup>2</sup> *Ed.* stondyng'.

enoynted in grete deuocyon by Saynt Remyge; whyche Ampull is presently at Raynes, of whyche holy cresse that is therein the kynges of fraunce <sup>1</sup>onelye been  
 4 enoynted ones in theyr consecracyon. ¶ In that tyme were baptysed the systers of the sayd kyng and thre thousand men of hys excersyte, and so after all the peple of fraunce in grete Ioye and exaltacion of glorie.

with which all  
 kings of France  
 since have been  
 consecrated.

8 ¶ The second' partye of the first book conteyneth fyue chapytres, and' speketh of the begynnynge of kyng' Pepyn And' Charle- mayn hys sone.

12 ¶ How Pepyn by his prudence was chosen kyng' of Fraunce when the lygnage of kyng cloys faylled' in successyon: ca. j

16 **T**He book precedent maketh mencyon of kyng' Cloys the fyrst crysten kynge of the lordes of Fraunce of whome the lygnage succeeded from heyre to heyres vnto the foure and twenty kyng, which was the kyng' Pepyn of another lygnage. And the

20 Kynge whyche was the xxij after the kyng Cloys and of his lignage was named hildricus, the which <sup>2</sup>kyng' deuoute & contemplatyf wythoute cure to excersyse thoffyce royal of a kynge put hym self in relygyon for

After the death of  
 Clois Hildricus  
 becomes king,

24 to lede a solytarye lyf. ¶ In that tyme was Pepyn moche valyaunt of hys persone and moche noble prynce.

but gives up  
 the throne to  
 become a monk.

And by cause that alle the kynges of fraunce haue succeeded of thys sayd Pepyn, and in especial charlemayn  
 28 his sone vpon whome this werke is comprysed, I wyl here begynne to treate the mater the whyche I entende superfycially to speke of, And lyke as the book whyche is called myrrour hystoryal compryseth. That Pepyn

32 the prynce on a tyme sente hys messagers to Rome to the Pope Zacharye for to haue answer vpon a demaunde, That is to wete, "whether is he more worthy to be a

Pepin's demand  
 of Pope Zachary,

<sup>1</sup> col. ij.

<sup>2</sup> B j, back.

and the Pope's  
answer.

The duties and  
qualities of a  
king.

He should not  
keep too many  
horses or  
servants,

nor keep bad  
company.

He should be a  
good husband,  
fond of learning,  
just,

and, above all,  
religious.

kyng or to be said a kyng whiche fo[r] pees and<sup>t</sup> parfyght  
vnyon taketh on hym grete payne & trauaylle, or ellys  
he that retcheth of noo thyng and<sup>t</sup> is abandonned and<sup>t</sup>  
gyuen to all slouth and<sup>t</sup> is onely contente to haue the 4  
name onely of kyng<sup>i</sup>?” Whan the pope had<sup>t</sup> herde thys  
demaunde he remaunded to Pepyn that he by ryght  
reason and<sup>t</sup> veray equitye ought to be called a kyng that  
gouerneth and<sup>t</sup> ruleth hys fayt for the comyn wele & 8  
contynueth it. For whyche ansuer & demaunde the  
Frensshe men by counceyl<sup>1</sup> <sup>2</sup>approued<sup>t</sup> consydered  
theyr kyng<sup>i</sup> hyldrycus professed<sup>t</sup> in a monasterye in lyf  
solytarye and<sup>t</sup> contemplatyf, (And that not wythstond- 12  
yng<sup>i</sup> ought not to be ony thyng ayenst them that lyuen  
solytaryly,) how wel a kyng<sup>i</sup> ought not to be solytarye,  
For suche as is the Kyng<sup>i</sup> suche is the Royame. ¶ For  
salamon sayth, yf the kyng<sup>i</sup> be neclygent the peple 16  
wote not what to doo, And blessyd is the londe that  
hath a prynce noble. Alle the frensshe men beyng<sup>i</sup>  
wel enformed<sup>t</sup> of the condycions apperteynyng<sup>i</sup> to a  
kyng<sup>e</sup> after an auctour that sayth thus : ¶ “The Prynce 20  
whan he is ordeyned<sup>t</sup> ought not to haue horses super-  
fluous ne make his peple more subgette than they ought  
to be, and<sup>t</sup> ought not to take .but seruauntes propyre<sup>3</sup>  
and<sup>t</sup> necessarye wythoute superfluyte, and<sup>t</sup> not to nour- 24  
ysshe ouer many houndes ne other beestes vnprouffyt-  
able but take them in mesure. ¶ And he shold<sup>t</sup> eschewe  
multyplycacyon of mynstrellys, Tabouryns, commyn  
wymmen, lecherous men. ¶ And he shold<sup>t</sup> not cor- 28  
rupte hys subgettes by euyl example. He shold<sup>t</sup> not  
breke hys espousaylles, he shold<sup>t</sup> gladly rede in bookes  
& shold<sup>t</sup> haue by hym peple wel lettered, And shold<sup>t</sup>  
Iuge wythoute fauour. ¶ And tofore al thynges <sup>4</sup>he 32  
shold<sup>t</sup> adoure & serue god<sup>t</sup>: he shold<sup>t</sup> not gladly take  
yestes, & ought not gladly to chaunge hys offycers.”

<sup>1</sup> *Ed.* ceunceyl.

<sup>2</sup> col. 2.

<sup>3</sup> *Ed.* propyre.

<sup>4</sup> B ij.



- Alle thys thyng wel seen emonge them for the conseruacion of the people emonge the myscreauntes which were at that tyme, [they] wente and chosen for to be
- 4 kyng of Fraunce the noble Pepyn, and fro that tyme forthon the lygnage of kyng cloyes regned nomore vpon the frensse men. And he was consecrate by saynt Boniface, And by thauctoryte apostolyque & by Saynt
- 8 Stephen Pope with his ij sones Charlemayn & charles<sup>1</sup> the grete was confermed and approued and ordeyned all the kynges of fraunce in grete benedyction to succede fro lygnage to lygnage moost nexte. And the said
- 12 pope gaf his maledyction to al them that were opposaunts and ayenst these thynges aforesayd. ¶ Thenne after this noble kyng Pepyn made grete warre to the englysshe men. And after the guyse Romayn he
- 16 ordeyned the seruyce in the chyrches of fraunce and many other maters meruayllous wherof thonour is attrubuted by good ryght to hym by vycторыe obteyned, and was buryed in the chyrche of Saynt Denys in Fraunce.
- 20 And lefte hys heyres hys two sones afore sayd whome he had gotten on the noble quene berte, doughter<sup>2</sup> of the grete Herclyn Cezar, of whome the lignage of romayns of germayns and of the grekes haue had curren-
- 24 currence. wherfore by good ryght in tyme folowyng the kyng Charles was chosen and maad Emperour of Rome. And the sayd kyng Pepyn regned xvij yere in prosperyte dygne of saluacyon, and after that the broder
- 28 of the sayd Charles had regned in his partye of the royame ij yere he deyed, And thenne after alle the gouvernement hoolly of the royame of fraunce abode to the sayd charles as here-after shalle be more playnly
- 32 shewed.

Pepin is chosen king by the French,

and consecrated by St. Boniface.

He makes war against the English.

At his death he leaves two sons,

between whom his kingdom is divided.

On the death of his brother Charlemagne becomes sole king.

¶ Of kyng Charles after that he had maad many constytucyons wyth the Pope Adryan,

<sup>1</sup> *Ed. repeats* and charles.

<sup>2</sup> col. 2.

& how he was emperour of Rome: capitulo ij

**T**His noble Charlemayn, otherwyse called Charles the grete, the whiche for the gretenes of hys body, puyssaunce, and operacions virtuouses by merite is called grete as I haue sayd, whyche after the deth of hys brother was<sup>1</sup> onely kyng of Fraunce. A lytel whyle after that the Pope <sup>2</sup>adryan regned & 8 dyd grete dyligence to strengthe & corobere the crysten fayth in annullyng the heresydes and constytutyng ymages for representacyon of sayntes in chyrches. And to many other labours merytoryes adioyned in the 12 seruyce of god & of holy chyrche The kyng charles ayenst the myscreauntes taryed not to confounde them but had vycторыe of them in dyuers<sup>3</sup> maners, & the pope adryan, whyche was wel enformed that thys Charles 16 was a stronge pyler of the chyrche and protectour of the fayth, sente for hym that he shold come to Rome. And whan he came to paye there he taryed & sette hys syege and soiourned a lytel tyme, And after wyth 20 a fewe of hys people departed & came to rome. And there he was receyued affectuously and vysyted many places deuoutelye. And after whan he retorned he took paye, And whan he had all doon his playsyr 24 he retorned to Rome. And wyth the Pope adryan he assembled many bysshoppes and abbottes [to] the nombre of an hondred & liij where they ordeyned many constytucyons vpon the fayt of the vnyuersal chyrche. 28 And in that synode for the grete holynes of charles The pope and al thassystentes gaf hym power for to ordeyne bisshoppes & archebisshops <sup>4</sup>in al his contrees and prouynces. And al them that so shal be ordeyned he 32 shal conferme and the rebellys that shal gaynsaye them he shal curse and theyr goodes be confysked. This

His labours in the service of the church.

At the invitation of Pope Adrian Charles visits Rome.

He lays siege to Padua,

and takes it.

A general Council is held at Rome.

<sup>1</sup> *Ed.* he was.

<sup>2</sup> B ij, back.

<sup>3</sup> *Ed.* dyners.

<sup>4</sup> col. 2.

noble charles wyth hys two sones, that one named  
 Pepyn & that other lowys, And the xij pyeres of  
 fraunce, whyche al had promysed fydelite one to that  
 4 other for to Ieoparde theyr lyf for the crysten fayth.

In that tyme many mortal warres duryng<sup>i</sup> the lyf of  
 kyng<sup>i</sup> Pepyn & of charles and<sup>r</sup> after that the royaume  
 of lombardye was destroyed and delyuer<sup>d</sup> of the mys-  
 8 creauntes, And<sup>r</sup> maad<sup>r</sup> pees not wythoute grete trauayll  
 for to come from fraunce in to lombardye by cause of  
 the daungerous countre. whan alle thys was termyned<sup>r</sup>  
 to hys playsyr he reduced<sup>r</sup> alle ytalye vnder the trybute

12 of the royaume of Fraunce. In suche wyse that whan  
 ytalye was thus destroyed he went to Rome for to  
 gyue thankynges and<sup>r</sup> laude to god<sup>d</sup> moche deuoutelye  
 for vycторыe that he had<sup>r</sup> and<sup>r</sup> for excusyon doon vpon  
 16 the enemyes of the fayth. And<sup>r</sup> there with the pope  
 Adryan he maad<sup>r</sup> many constytucyons whyche by ryzt  
 equitye ought wel to be obserued<sup>r</sup>. And after he beyng<sup>r</sup>  
 thus in Rome vycторыous hys sone Pepyn was ordeyned

20 & consecrate kyng<sup>i</sup> of the ytalyens, And<sup>r</sup> hys sone  
 lowys was ordeyned<sup>r</sup> and<sup>r</sup> consecrate kyng<sup>i</sup> vpon guyan.  
 thys doon the Romayns whyche of grete ancyaunte were  
 of grete apporte after that the emperour was by them

24 put to deth Constantyn his sone wold haue regned<sup>r</sup> for  
 themperour, whyche was not wel in the fauour of the  
 senatours and<sup>r</sup> other Romayns; the whyche beyng in this  
 poynte, after that they had<sup>r</sup> taken delyberacyon of grete

28 councyl, seeyng<sup>r</sup> the grete valure and<sup>r</sup> noblesse of kyng<sup>i</sup>  
 Charles, whyche was so parfygth in alle noblesse  
 hardynesse, prudence, & other vertues as I shalle touche  
 hereafter alle playne, that by consente of eueryche he

32 was chosen emperour of Rome wyth grete loange &  
 exaltacyon of Ioye Innumerable, And<sup>r</sup> by the honde  
 of Pope Leo he was crowned<sup>r</sup> emperour with alle  
 honoures that myght be comprysed<sup>r</sup>. And al wyth one

After many  
 bloody wars he  
 reduces Italy  
 under his power.

His son Pepin is  
 consecrated king  
 of Italy; and his  
 second son Louis  
 king of Guienne.

Charles is chosen  
 Emperor of  
 Rome.

voys gaf to hym laude and honour, And called hym  
Cezar & August by a symylytude of valure in contem-  
placyon of grete playsyr that they had maad hym kyng<sup>1</sup>  
of ytalyens. 4

¶ Of the corpulence of kyng Charles, and' of  
the maner of hys lyung': capitulo iiij

Of the good  
works of Charles  
during his reign  
of 33 years.

<sup>1</sup> C Harlemayn Kynge of Fraunce after that he was  
Emperour he dyd many meruayllous werkes and 8  
regned emperour thyrtene yere, And had thenne  
regned vpon the frensshe men xxxiiij yere. And in  
the cont[r]ye of Rome he edyfyed many cytees and  
restored good townes & many other thynges whyche 12  
may not well be recounted by cause of his merueyllous  
werkes. Neuertheles for to knowe what man he was  
his werkes wytnessen: as moche as toucheth thexcercyte  
of hys persone Turpy n the holy man archebyssshop of 16  
Raynes whych lyued that tyme and was oft tymes in the  
companye of kyng Charles sayth that he was a man  
wel faryng' of hys body & grete of persone and had hys  
syght and regarde fyers & malycious. ¶ The lengthe 20  
of hys persone conteyned eyght feet after the mesure  
of his feet, which were merueyllously long; fatte, and  
massyf was he of his sholdres and raynes wythoute  
hauyng the bely otherwise than wel a poynte. The 24  
armes and thy es he had ample and large: he was a  
subtyl knyght & ryght wyse actyf and moche fyers, and  
of alle hys membres he was of ryght grete strengthe.  
he had the face deduyte in lengthe and hys berde was 28  
a foot longe: <sup>2</sup>he had hys nose reysed vpon a roundnes:  
A fayr regarde and countenaunce had thys man: he had  
the face of a large fote brode; he had the eyen like a  
lyon sparklyng lyke a cole by furyous regarde, his 32  
wynbrowes grete. Assone as he byhelde a man in  
angre eche man had of hym fere and drede in openyng'

According to  
Turpin

Charles was  
more than 8 feet  
high, stout,  
broad-shouldered,

and large of limb,

with a beard a  
foot long.

His face was  
long and fair:  
his eyes bright  
and sparkling.

<sup>1</sup> col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> B ij, back.



- his eyen. The gyrdle of whyche he was gyrde was viij  
fote longe wyth-oute that that henge doun fro the bokle  
to the pendaunt. whan he took hys repaast he was  
4 contente wyth lytel brede, but as touchyng the pytaunçe  
he ete at his repaast a quarter of moton, or ij hennes,  
or a grete ghoos, or a grete pestel of porke, or a pecok,  
or a crane, or an hare all hool : he dranke wyn sobrelly  
8 wyth a lytel water therin. Of hys strengthe is not a  
lytel thyng to speke of, For he wold smyte a knyght  
armed wyth one stroke of a swerde and cleue hym from  
the coppe of the hede doun to the sadel. And yf he  
12 had bytwene hys handes iiij hors shoen wyth outh  
ouermoche prouyng hys myght he wold ryzt them outh  
and breke them in pyeces. And more ouer wyth one  
hande he wold take a knyght al armed and lyfte hym  
16 vp to the heyght of hys breste lyghtly. And he had  
in hym thre thynges moche honourable : Fyrst, in  
yestes ye<sup>1</sup>uyng he was ryght large, lyke vnto Tytus  
themperour sone of Vaspasianus, which was so prodygal  
20 that it was not possyble to hym to gyue that whyche  
he promysed. And whan it was demaunded why he  
promysed thyng that he myght not gyue, forthwyth  
he answerd that a persone ought not departe fro a prynce  
24 desolate ne heuy, nor with-oute to obteyne somme  
thyng. Secondly, Charles was so sure in Iugement  
that no man coude reprehende hym, and also he was  
pyetous & mercyful vnto cristen men after the qualyte  
28 of the persone & the occasyon of the trespaas. And,  
thyrdly, in his wordes he was moche wel aduyse<sup>d</sup> :  
whan he spake he thought strongely on that he sayd &  
whan one spake to hym he remembred the manere for  
32 to compryse thentencyon of the spekar.

His waist was  
8 feet round.

At his dinner he  
could eat a  
quarter of  
mutton, or a  
goose, or a  
peacock, or a  
hare.

His strength  
was wonderfui.

He could lift an  
armed knight  
with one hand.

He was liberal to  
all,

just and merciful,

and careful in his  
language.

<sup>1</sup> col. 2.



¶ To what thyng kyng Charles hys sone and  
 hys doughters were Instructe and' taughte  
 to doo : capitulo iiij

**D**Ame bertrode moder of Charles ful of grete sey- 4  
 ence in grete prosperyte of lyf and in honour  
 wexed olde and fynysshed hyr dayes, and  
 ordeyned bookes for to excersyse the artes lyberalle.  
 ¶ Of <sup>1</sup>whome fyrst charles took gladly payne for to 8  
 estudy, And in the tyme of Infancye he maad scyence  
 to be taught to hys sones and doughters, and after whan  
 they knewe their byleue he made them to studye in the  
 seuen artes lyberal. And whan the sones were of age 12  
 for to ryde on horsback after the guyse of Fraunce he  
 made them to bere armes and to Iuste for texcersyse  
 the warre whan it shold be nede, and whan they dyd  
 not that he made them to hunte al maner wylde beestes 16  
 and dyd them to do other esbatements longyng to  
 chyualry contynuely. After this he made his doughters  
 to spynne & sowe and to occupye them in other  
 honourable werkes to thende that by ydlenes and 20  
 slouth & faute of occupacyon they shold not haue  
 occasyon to falle in thougt dysordynate for to haue  
 Inclynacyon to synne and vyce. and whan he was not  
 occupied in maters of charge and weyghty he wold 24  
 employe his tyme in wrytyng somme newe thyng to  
 thende that he wold not be ydle, accordyng to the  
 pystle of saynt poule, whiche admonesteth vs to do  
 alwaye somme good, by cause þat our enemye the fende 28  
 holde vs not in ydlenes for to folowe his entencyon  
 dampnable. And he dyd do make in his palays in  
 Acon in Almayn a <sup>2</sup>chyrche of our lady comprysed of  
 meruayllous beaute & moche rychely ordeyned, and 32  
 wrought, and in grete honour enhaunced in sygne of a  
 parfyght crysten man. For after that one loueth the

Charles had his  
 sons taught  
 religion, science,

jousting,  
 the art of war,  
 and hunting.

His daughters  
 were taught to  
 spin and sew,  
 and other suitable  
 accomplishments.

Charles was never  
 idle, but fond of  
 study.

He built at Acon  
 a splendid church  
 to our Lady.

<sup>1</sup> B iiij.

<sup>2</sup> col. 2.

lord and that is gyuen to hym the werkes desirous to  
meue other to doo to the lord lyke as hym self and in  
lyke wyse shold perseuere in the amplyfycacyon of hys  
4 contreye that sythe the deth of hys fader Pepyn he  
doubled by puyssaunce in the royaume of fraunce.

¶ Of the studye of kyng charles, of hys lyuyng',  
of hys charytable werkes, and' other ma-

8      ters : capitulo      v.

A fter that Charles was Instructe in gramayre & other scyences morall & speculatyf, alwaye he continned in them: And by ardaunt desyre frequented the bookes composed vpon the crysten fayth for to be protectour and defendour of the chyrche, the whyche he vysyted on mornynge and on euenes & in the nyght oftymes. and at good festes he faylled not to doo gretely hys deuoyr in sacrificys & oblacions: And also gaf largely almesse for the loue of god, and was alway redy to socour the poure people in the largest wyse. For he socoured not onely the poure folke of his owne contreye with his hauoyr & goodes but in many other places beyonde the see he sente golde & syluer and vytayll after the necessitye of the place: as in surrye, in egypt, in affrique, in Iherusalem, & other contreyes: as he that sayd: "golde and syluer is not myn." To euery man he desyred amytye and pees. Of body he was moche ample & boystous of stature well apparysaunt, the coppe of hys heed rounde, the heeres in grete reuerence, & the vysage Ioyous. he had the voys clere & of grete force, & at his souper he ete not for the moost parte sauf rosted veneson, whyche aboue alle other flesshe he loued and vsed at his souper. Always he loued redars for to rede cronycles or other thynges contemplatyues, as he that wold as wel fede the soule whiche is perpetuel of spirytuel fode, for to

Of the religious habits of Charles.

his alms-giving,

both at home and abroad.

He was large of body, and of a pleasing countenance.

He loved to hear books read,

<sup>1</sup> B iiij, back.

especially the  
*De Civitate Dei*  
by Augustine.

He sent  
commissioners to  
study and report  
on the state of his  
kingdoms, and  
the government  
and laws of other  
countries.

Aaron, king of  
Persia, sends him  
as a present an  
elephant,

mayntene it in vnyon of grace toward god his maker,  
as of refeeccion of the body for to conserue the lyf,  
And emonge al other bookes he delytet strongly in  
the bookes of saint austyn, especyally in that whyche 4  
is named de ciuitate dei. & he dranke not ouer ofte,  
For at souper he dranke not but thre tymes. In somer  
tyme gladly after mydday he wold ete a lytel fruyt &  
drynke ones & wold goo reste hym al naked in his 8  
bedde two <sup>1</sup>or thre houres. In the nyght he brake his  
slepe foure or v tymes and walked in hys chambre.  
Thus Charles perseuerd<sup>2</sup> in felicyte ryal and emperyal,  
& sente oueral thorough hys empyre hys messagers and 12  
grete counceyllours<sup>3</sup> for to vysyte hys prouynces and  
good townes, for to be enformed of the gouernours of  
them for to do to eueriche Iustyce and reson; and  
made many constytucyons & lawes accordyng to the 16  
places, and commaunded them to be obserued and  
kepte vpon grete payne. Semblably the sayd Charles  
sente thorough al the world for to knowe ouer al the  
gouernement, That is to wete, for to knowe the mer- 20  
uayllous faytes that were doon in the world, And also  
for to lerne the lyf of sayntes of whom the festes were  
halowed and made of them bookes for tabyde in eternal  
memorye. & euery day he dyd doo put in wrytyng that 24  
whyche he dyd, In suche maner that after the wrytyng  
that he thenne fonde Were founde more than thre  
hondred festes of sayntes one tyme of the yere, wherfor  
he excersycyng his spyrituel werkes he was byloued & 28  
dere reputed of euery body. In that tyme Aaron the  
kyng of perce for the magnyfycence of charles sente to  
hym an Olyphaunt merueyllously grete for a synguler  
yefte and many other thynges precyouses. ¶ Thys 32  
Charles for hys grete holynesse and noblesse was in  
suche renomnee of honour and of vertues. On a tyme

<sup>1</sup> col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> *Ed.* preseuerd.

<sup>3</sup> *Ed.* counceyllours.

<sup>4</sup> B v.

aaron the kyng<sup>1</sup> of Perse sente to hym emonge other  
 yestes the bodyes of saynt Cypryan and of saynt  
 speratus and the heed of saynt Panthaleon marters in  
 4 to Fraunce.

and the relics of  
 several saints.

¶ The thyrd<sup>1</sup> parte of the fyrst book conteyn-  
 eth thre chapytres, and<sup>1</sup> speketh how by  
 reuelacion deuyne Charles delyuerd<sup>1</sup> the  
 8 holy londe fro the honde of the paynymys.

¶ How the patryarke of Iherusalem sente to  
 Charles for socours after that he was de-  
 iecte and<sup>1</sup> caste oute of the Turkes: capi-  
 12 tulo primo.

**I**T is redde that in the tyme that charles was em-  
 perour of rome the patryarke of Iherusalem was soo  
 oppressyd<sup>1</sup> of the paynymys by mortall warre that  
 16 vnnethe he myght saue hym self. And thus whan he  
 knewe nomore what to do He had<sup>1</sup> in remembraunce the  
 noble charles and<sup>1</sup> he beyng<sup>1</sup> enformed<sup>1</sup> of hys holynes,  
 for socour he sente to hym the keyes of the holy sepul-  
 20 cre of our lord Ihesu Cryst of Caluarye and of the  
<sup>1</sup>cyte, And wyth that he sente to hym the standart of  
 the fayth as to the pyler of crystente and<sup>1</sup> defendour of  
 holy chyrche. After thys the patryarke came to con-  
 24 stantynoble vnto themperour constantyn and<sup>1</sup> to hys  
 sone Leo & brought wyth hym Iohan of naples preste  
 and<sup>1</sup> another whyche named<sup>1</sup> hym self Dauyd archeprest,  
 whome themperour Constantyn sent incontynent to  
 28 charles, And wyth them tweyne he ordeyned<sup>1</sup> for to goo  
 wyth them two other whyche were named<sup>1</sup> ysaac and<sup>1</sup>  
 Samuel, & delyuerd to them a lettre wryton with his  
 owne hande for to bere to charles. And the sayd Con-  
 32 stantyn had<sup>1</sup> wryton in one parte of the lettre thus:

The patriarch of  
 Jerusalem, being  
 hard pressed by  
 the Saracens,

appeals to Charles  
 for help.

Constantine  
 writes a letter to  
 Charles,

“On a nyght me semed that I sawe tofore my bedde a telling him that



he has been ordered in a vision to call on him for help against the Saracens,

and recounting the vision which had appeared to him.

He sends the letter by messengers.

Charles is greatly affected by the letter, which he orders to be published abroad.

yonge woman moche fayre stondyng<sup>1</sup> ryght vp, whyche touched me softly and sayd to me with swete wordes : ‘ Constantyn, whan thou knewest thaffayre & doying of the paynymys whyche holden the holy londe by grete 4 affectyon, thou hast prayed god for to haue helpe. lo ! what thou shalte doo. Pouchace that thou mayst haue wyth the charles the grete kyng<sup>1</sup> of the gallyens, which is protectour of holy crystente and defendour of holy 8 chyrche.’ And after the same lady shewed me a knyght armed in al his body and spores on hys heles, & had<sup>1</sup> hys shelde rede, gyrd wyth hys swerde, & had his sleue of purple, & helde a spere moche grete, And 12 the heed of yron whyche was on hye caste in to the ayer grete flambes of fyre : & he helde in his honde a bacynet al of golde shynnyng and he was auncient, wyth a longe berde, ryght fayre of vysage and longe of body : 16 he had eyen shynnyng as ij sterres, and hys heerys began to wexe whyte, and after was wryton : ‘ O thou August that neuer refusest the comandements of god, enioye the in Ihesu Cryst, & in thy mynde alwaye yelde to hym 20 thankynges : be enclosed in Iustyce lyke as thou hast be reclaimed in honour. Ihesu Cryste gyue the grace to perseuere<sup>2</sup> and kepe alwaye the commandements, of god as thou oughtest to doo formerly.’” And as it is 24 wryton themperour Constantyn in hys tyme had deieted the paynymys oute of Iherusalem seuen tymes, wherfore whan he myȝt nomore he sente his messagers to kyng Charles Whyche at that tyme was at parys. And whan 28 the messagers had presented the letters and he had seen them he began to wepe moche greuously in contemplacyon of pyte of the holy sepulcre of our lord so holden of the paynymys. After this he sente for tharche- 32 bysshop Turpyn and maad hym to preche<sup>3</sup> openlye the pyteous tydynges whyche were thenne presentlye comen,

<sup>1</sup> B v, back.

<sup>2</sup> Ed. preseuere.  
<sup>3</sup> col. 2.



the whyche wel herde and vnderstood the peple alle  
generally were enclyned to goo thyder

¶ How Charles with a grete companye wente  
4 for to conquere the holy lande, and many  
other maters : capitulo ij

8 **A**fter that thys whyche I haue tofore sayd was  
publysshed The kynge dyd do make an edyct  
and dyd do crye it thorough out al the contreye,  
that euery man that myzt bere armes shold be redy for  
to goo wyth hym ayenst the paynymys, and he that wold  
not come shold be bounde for a good somme of money  
12 for to hyre souldyours that shold goo. Thys doon was  
neuer seen tofore in so lytel tyme so moche peple  
assembled as thenne were founden. And whan they  
were al departed in the name of god, full of one grete  
16 fayth in grete hope to obteyne vycorye vnder the con-  
duyte of Charlemayn capitayne of the fayth. And  
whan they had ryden a grete longe waye they came in  
to a grete wode of buscage in whyche they myght not  
20 passe vnnethe in two dayes, and yet wyth grete payne,  
and Charles thought to passe it in <sup>1</sup>one daye : wherfore  
he & his hoost entred wythin the sayd wood which was  
ful of dyuers wilde beestes, as Gryffons, beres, lyons,  
24 Tygres, and other beestes. whan they were thus in that  
grete wode and the nyght came on they were al  
abashed & troubled wythout knowyng whych waye  
they shold holde, And Charles commaunded that they  
28 shold loke yf they myght see or knowe any habytacyon,  
but they were ferre fro ony and oute of their ryght  
waye, and by force were dryuen to dyspose them to  
slepe in that estate. And whan they were al in reste  
32 the kyng charles beyng in his dormytorye, trustyng of  
the ayde of our lord in grete deuocyon began to say the  
psalter, And whan he came to the poynte that he shold

He orders all  
who can bear  
arms to assemble.

An enormous  
army comes  
together, and  
they start for  
the Holy Land.

They lose their  
way in a forest.

Charles prays to  
God for uelp.

<sup>1</sup> B vj.

A bird comes and  
tells him his  
prayer is heard,

and afterwards  
guides them to  
the right road.

Charles clears the  
country of  
Saracens,

and prepares to  
return home.

The Emperor  
collects a large  
number of valu-  
able presents for  
him,

say the vers folowyng "Deduc me domine in semita  
mandatorum tuorum, quia ipsam volui," he sayeng thys  
there came a byrde to his ere in the presence of eueriche  
that were about hym whyche sayd wyth an hye voys: 4  
"kyng, thyn oryson is herde." Thenne alle they that  
were presente were moche troubled. and notwythstond-  
yng<sup>1</sup> al thys the kyng contynued to say the psalter  
vnto "Educ me de custodia animam meam," & all thus 8  
whyle he sayd the byrd began more strongly to crye  
and say ¶ "O frensshe man, what sayest thou? <sup>1</sup>O  
frensshe man, what sayest thou?" And after that the  
Kyng<sup>1</sup> and hys companye wente and folowed the byrde 12  
whyche conduyted them vnto the ryght waye whyche  
they had lost the day tofore, & somme of the pylgryms  
sayd that after in the same contreye were suche byrdes  
so doying. But whan charles & hys grete puyssaunce 16  
were nyghe theyr euemyes they were moche troubled  
of theyr comyng<sup>1</sup> & the crysten lordes were gretely  
reioysed of theyr comyng<sup>1</sup>. For wythoute cessyng<sup>1</sup> he  
rested not tyl that he had recouerd the contreye of 20  
crysten men and expelled alle the paynymys whyche  
moch redounded to hym grete honour & vycторыe.  
And in retournyng<sup>1</sup> he demaunded of thempour of  
Constantynoble lycence to departe & of the other patry- 24  
arkes & archepreestes. And thempour helde hym an  
hole day, And for remuneracyon the sayd emperour for  
thonour of kyng charles on the morne tofore the yates  
of the cyte dyd do ordeyne many bestes of dyuers maners 28  
& dyuers colours, & grete quantyte of gold and syluer  
and of precious stones, to thende that he shold take it  
for somme rewarde for the grete good that he had doon  
in theyr contreye. But assone as charles knewe therof 32  
he took counceyll of hys people what he ought to <sup>2</sup>doe  
in takyng<sup>1</sup> of the precyous & ryche yestes or to retourne  
in to fraunce wythout takyng of ony thyng<sup>1</sup>, And there

<sup>1</sup> col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> B vj, back.

vpon his barons counceilled hym that he shold take no  
 thyng for hys laboure, For he had doon no thyng but  
 for the loue of god onely : And he beyng wel content  
 4 of thys ansuer commaunded that noo persone vpon grete  
 payne shold take noo thyng of the Iewellys aforesayd.

but Charles re-  
 fuses to accept  
 any of them.

¶ Of the relyques that themperour charles  
 brought fro constantynoble and' fro the  
 8 holy londe, and' of the myracles that were  
 doon : capitulo iij

12 **W**Han themperour of constantynople and the  
 patryarke of Iherusalem knewe that charles  
 wold take no thyng of the good aforesayd,  
 he was admonested that he shold take somewhat of them,  
 & whan he was thus constrayned he bysought them that  
 for the loue of god myght be gyuen vnto hym somewhat  
 16 of the relyques of our lord and of hys holy passyon.  
 Whan thys was demaunded It was commaunded to fast  
 euery man thre dayes for to be the more enclyned to  
 deuocyon and for to vysyte the holy reliques, and in  
 20 especyall were ordeyned xij persones by grace whych  
 shold<sup>1</sup> treatate & see the relyques. Whan it came to  
 the thyrde day the noble Charles by grete contryceyon  
 confessyd hym to tharchebyssshop Turpyn. After  
 24 that moche reuerently they beganne to synge the  
 letanye wyth somme psalmes of the psalter. And  
 there was the prelate of naples named danyel, whyche  
 in grete reuerence opened the coffre wherin was the  
 28 precyous crowne of Ihesu Cryst and there sprange oute  
 of the same so grete an odour that all they that were  
 presente thought to be in paradys. Thenne charles ful  
 of hool and very creauce of fayth kneled down to the  
 32 grounde and stratched hym on therthe, & moche  
 strongly prayed our lord that for the glorye of hys

He asks, instead,  
 for some relies of  
 Our Lord.

The Emperor  
 gives him the  
 sacred crown of  
 thorns.

<sup>1</sup> col. 2.

A delicious odour  
issues from the  
crown.

Charles deposits  
the thorns and  
flowers in a coffer,

where they are  
turned into  
manna, and  
now are preserved  
at St. Denys.

Three hundred  
and one sick  
persons are healed  
by the scent of  
the holy relics.

One who had been  
blind, deaf, and  
dumb for over 24  
years.

name presently wold<sup>1</sup> renewe the myracles of hys holy  
passyon and gloryous resurrexyon.<sup>1</sup> & assone as he had  
prayed in a moment the crowne began to florysshe, &  
a meruayllous swete odour yssued out of the floures, 4  
soo ryȝt delycyous that eche man supposed that hys  
vestementes & clothyng had comen oute of heuen.  
¶ Thenne after thys daniel took a sharpe knyf kuttyng  
wel purifyed to cutte the said crowne and in cuttyng 8  
alwaye more & more the sayd crowne flourysshed and  
the odour smellyd the more habundantly. And of the  
2 floures charles put a parte in a reposytorye, and in a  
lytel coffre he put the thornes of the crowne, and wept 12  
so habundantlye that whan he wende to haue gyuen to  
tharchebysshop Ebroin the floures he wythdrewe hys  
honde & supposed that the sayd Ebroin<sup>3</sup> had holden  
them in hys honde, & they were in the ayer houng by 16  
myracle & abode there by themself the space of a grete  
houre. And after whan he had gyuen in kepyng the  
sayd thornes to the sayd Ebroin he sawe the coffret in  
thayer whyche was full of floures whyche abode there by 20  
them self, whiche sone after were conuerted in to manna  
and in that manere they ben at Saynt Denys in fraunce.  
And it hath be the oppynyon of many that thys was of  
the manna that god sente in to deserte to hys people. 24  
Thenne were there shewed myracles For al seek people  
that were there present were heled of al theyr maladyes  
by the odour of the floures aforesayd, and the peple  
that entred in to the chirche by grete vyolence of presse 28  
of peple cryed verytably that day was a day of helthe  
& resurrection, for by the sauour of tho mellyfluous  
floures alle the cytee was purifyed and replenysshed of  
grace: for thre hondred & one seek man by compte 32  
were heled & guarissed of their maladyes. 4 Emonge

al other ther was one seek of xxiiij yere & thre  
monethes, whyche was blynde, deaf, & dōmbe, but at

<sup>1</sup> *Ed.* resurrexyon.

<sup>2</sup> B vij.

<sup>3</sup> *Ed.* Ebrom.

<sup>4</sup> col. 2.



moment<sup>1</sup> whan the thorne was drawen fro the crowne  
 he took hys syght, and whan it was layed in ageyn he  
 recouuerd his heeryng, And in florysshyng of it he  
 4 was restored to his speche. ¶ After thys the sayd  
 daniel took a nayll of which the precyous body of our  
 lord in his passyon had be perced and in grete reuerence  
 was put for a relyque in alabastre, & in takyng oute of  
 8 it a chylde was heled, whiche of hys lyfte syde was  
 drye and Impotent fro his byrthe & he ranne hastelye  
 to the chyrche and cryed at the houre of none and said  
 that he beyng in an extasye was heled and guarlyssed  
 12 and tolde the manere. ¶ Also there was gyuen to the  
 kyng Charles a pyece of the holy crosse and the holy  
 sudarye, and therewith the smocke of our lady & the  
 clothe wherin our lord was wrapped, and also the arme  
 16 of saynt Symeon ; and al reuerently in precyous pyxes  
 & caasses he henge them aboute hys necke. and in  
 passyng by a castel there was a chylde newe dede  
 whom kyng charles touched with the reliques that he  
 20 bare & anone the chylde was reysed to lyf. And whan  
 he came to Acon in Almayne, <sup>2</sup>whyche is a moche fayr  
 cytee where as kyng charles had made his paleys moche  
 fayr & ryche and a ryght deuoute chapel in thonour of  
 24 our lady, wherin hym self is buryed. There atte laste  
 were guarlyssed & heled blynde men and seek men of  
 the feures wythoute nombre & xij demonyaks, viij  
 lazars of the palesey, xv of myshapen, xv crokebacked,  
 28 lij of the fallyng sekene, lxv of the gowte, many of  
 them of the same place & many of other maladyes.  
 And it was ordeyned that in the moneth of Iul at  
 Acon in the cyte that al peple myght come & see the  
 32 forsaid relyques which kyng charles had brought fro  
 Iherusalem and constantynoble. And more ouer was  
 establyssed that one day of the weke of the fastyng of  
 ymbre dayes and in the moneth of Iul shold be made

and a child,  
 a cripple from  
 his birth,  
 are healed by  
 the relics.

The Emperor  
 gives Charles a  
 piece of the cross,

and the holy  
 napkin and other  
 relics,

with which he  
 performs numer-  
 ous miracles.

They are  
 deposited at Acon,  
 where they are  
 shown.

<sup>1</sup> Ed. meuyng.

<sup>2</sup> B vij, back.



this demo[n]straunce and notyfycacyon. And in thys constytucion was Pope Leo Tharchebysshop Turpyn Achylleus bysshop of alexandrye And Theophyle of anthyocke & many other bisshoppes & abbottes, whyche 4 werk was moche vertuous & ful of helthe.

¶ Here begynneth the ij book of thys present werke, whyche conteyneth thre partyes by chapytres folowyng' declared'. 8

¶ 'The fyrst partye of the second book conteyneth xvj chapytres and' speketh of the batayll doon by Olyuer & Fyerabras a meruayllous geaunte. 12

¶ How in a place which was called' mormy-onde charles abode folowyng' the warre aeynst the paynems, after a lytel prologue.

¶ The fyrst chapytre. 16

I Haue spoken tofore in the fyrst book superfyecally of the first kyng of fraunce baptysed, in descendyng' after my purpoos vnto Kynge charles of whome may not wel be recounted the valyaunce of hym and of 20 hys barons, whych were named & called pyeres of fraunce. Of whome & of their behauyng' I shal make mencion after that I shal mowe conceyue by trouthe, but thys that I haue tofore wryton I haue taken it oute 24 of an autentyke book named "myrroure hystoryal" and in auneyent cronycles, And haue onelye translated them oute of latyn in to frensshe. And the mater folowyng whyche shal be the second book is of a 28 Romaunce maad of thauneyent facyon wythoute grete ordynaunce in frensshe wherof I haue been encyted for to reduce in prose by chapytres ordeyned. which book after somme 2 and moost comunely is called "Fyera-bras," by cause that thys Fyerabras was so meruayllous a geaunte as I shal make meneyon whyche was van-

All the first book has been translated from the *Speculum Historiale*;

the second book I have translated from an old Romance, called 'Fierabras,'

<sup>1</sup> col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> B viij.

- guysshed by Olyuer, And at the laste baptysed &  
 was after a saynt in heuen. And in effect it speketh  
 of that bataylle and of the relyques conquered whiche  
 4 had ben taken of rome and were in the puyssaunce  
 of the admyrall whyche was fader of fyerabras. wher-  
 fore in thys book folowyng I ne entende but onely  
 to reduce thauncyent ryme in to prose & to deuyde the  
 8 mater by chapytres in the best ordynaunce that I shal  
 conne, wythoute to adiouste ony thyng that I haue  
 not founde in the book competent, & in lyke wyse as I  
 shal fynde I shal reduce. And thys book is applyed to  
 12 thonour of Olyuer one partye, Not-wythstondyng that  
 there ben many other maters. For I suppose that of  
 eueriche of the barons pryncypal of themperour Charles  
 whyche ben sayd comynly in nombre xij or xiiij, and  
 16 pyeres of Fraunce, whyche were capytaynes of thexcer-  
 cyte and moche stronge and valyaunte of theyr persones,  
 & were grete lordes and noble. But of the lordes  
 valyaunte capytaynes were more than xiiij after that I  
 20 fynde. Fyrst there was rolland, Erle of Cenonia, sone  
 of myllon <sup>1</sup>erle and of dame berthe propre syster of  
 kyng Charles: After hym was Olyuer Erle, sone of  
 Reyner of gennes, which Reyner was also at thexcersyte  
 24 of kyng charles: After hym Rychard of Normandy,  
 Garyn duck of Lorayn, Geffroy lord of bourdeloys,  
 Hoel Erle of Nautes, Ogyer the danois, kyng of  
 denmarke, Lambert prynce of bruxellys, Naymes Duk  
 28 of bauer, Thiery duc of ardanne, Basyn of beneuoys,  
 Guy of bourgoyne, Caudeboy kyng of Fryse, Ganellon  
 whych dyd the treson at the ende of the iij book at  
 rounchyuale, Sampson duk of bourgoyne: Also there  
 32 was Ryol du mauns, Alory, & guyllermet the scot and  
 many other that were subgettes to Charles. And not-  
 wythstondyng that they were not alwaye with hym  
 They that I haue tofore named were alwaye redy for to

and have only  
reduced the  
ancient rime into  
prose,

without adding  
anything.

The Peers of  
France, though  
commonly said to  
be 12 or 13,

were more than  
that number.

They were  
Roland,

Oliver,

Richard,

Garin, Geoffrey,

Howel, Ogier,

Lambert,  
Naymes,

Thiery, Basin,

Ganelon,

Sampson,

Raoul, Aloris,  
and Guyllermet.

doo his commaundement. And the moost parte of them that I haue tofore named were wyth hym contynuelly.

¶ Of Fyerabras how he came to excyte thexcersyte of Charles : capitulo [j] 4

Fierabras, son of Balan, was a mighty giant. (50)

He was king of Alexandria, (53) Babylon, Russia, and Jerusalem. (66)

This Fierabras rides furiously up to the camp of Charles, (76)

wishing to find some Christian to fight with him.

**T**He admyral of spayne named ballan, a paynym moche grete & puyssaunt of body and of peple, had a sone <sup>1</sup> named Fyerabras the moost meruaylous geaunt that euer was seen borne of moder, for of 8 the gretenes & hugenes of hys body and also of his strengthe to hym was none like. the whyche was kyng<sup>2</sup> of Alexandrye & helde vnder hym the contree of babylone vnto the rede see, and he was lord of roussye, 12 & of coulloygne, & more ouer vnder hym was Iherusalem, & reteyned the holy sepulcre of our lord Ihesu Cryst : & by hys grete puyssaunce entred on a tyme in to Rome where he dyd moche euyl & bare away the 16 holy crowne of our lord & the holy naylles & other relyques ynoughe, Of whome thys book shal in thende recounthe how they were recouerd. And he was called Fyerabras of alexandrye, whyche after that many warres 20 & bataylles were maad in Mormyonde bytwene the paynims and thexcersyte of Charles Thys fyerabras moche dyssolute came rydyng by grete furour for to fynde somme cristen man for to fyght ayenst hym ; & 24 came vnto the lyces of Kynge Charles moche furyous and eschauffed as he shold fyght al armed and wel fournysshed of wepen, & was ryght euyl contente that he fonde no persone to whome he myght fyght, & nygh 28 vnto the lyces he went to beholde the armes of themperour charles <sup>2</sup> whyche were of the aygle shynnyng, And he sware by Mahomet his god & by his myzt that he wold neuer departe tyll he had foughten & 32 made batayll to somme crysten man. And he seeyng

<sup>1</sup> B viij, back.

<sup>2</sup> col. 2.

- that no man cam to hym began to crye with an hye  
 voys : " O kyng of Parys, coward withoute hardynesse,  
 sende to Iuste ayenst me somme of thy barons of  
 4 fraunce the moost stronge & the moste hardy, as He challenges  
Roland or  
Oliver, (96)  
 Rolland, olyuer, Thyerry, or ogyer the danoyis ; &  
 swere to the by my god Mahon that I shal not refuse  
 vnto the nombre of vj or vij that they shal be receyued  
 8 of me. and yf thou make to me reffuse of thys that I  
 of the demaunde I promyse the that tofore or it be nyzt  
 thou shalt of me be assaylled & dyscomfyted & I shal  
 smyte of thy heed as meschaunt withoute ony fayllyngi ;  
 12 and after I shal lede with me Rolland & Olyuer vnhappy,  
 meschaunt, & caytyfs. For oultragiously & folylly as euyll  
 and olde thou hast enprysed to come in to thys contreye  
 wherfro thou shalt haue cause hastily to departe." These He takes off his  
arms and lies  
down under a  
tree, (90)  
 16 wordes or semblable spoken Fyerabras wente hym vnto  
 the shadowe of a tree and laye there & dysarmed hym  
 of the armes of whyche he was cladde, and bonde his  
 hors vnto a tree. and whan he was thus at his ease he  
 20 began to crye <sup>1</sup>with an hye voys : " o charlemayn,  
 kyng of Parys, where art thou now whome I haue  
 thys day so ofte called wythoute more lenger delaye  
 sende to Iuste ayenst me rolland or Olyuer, of whom  
 24 thou makest so grete counte and been so valyaunte, or  
 ogyer the danoyis whom I haue herde preysed. And yf  
 perauenture one of them dare not come allone hardyly  
 late come the two or thre or foure of the moost valyaunt-  
 28 est and that they be courageous hardy and wel armed.  
 And yf the four dare not come late come fyue, For  
 vnto the nombre of vj of the moost valyauntest of thyn  
 excersyte I shal not refuse. And I thynke not to  
 32 retorne tyl they be confused and destroyed by me. for  
 be ye sure that it shal neuer be to me reproche that I  
 be fugytyf for ony frensshe man lyuyng. I haue here  
 tofore put to deth by the valyaunce of my persone ten He declares he has  
already slain ten  
kings in single  
combat. (108)



kynges of grete puyssaunce, and that they coude not  
resyste ageynst my strengthe in no wyse.

¶ How Richard' of Normandye sayd' to  
Charles what maner man Fyerabras was : 4  
ca. iij

Charles enquires  
who the strange  
knight is. (115)

As soon as fyerabras had fynysshed hys wordes the  
Emperour Charles whyche <sup>1</sup>wel had herde hym  
meruaylled moche of hys langage, And demaunded 8  
Rychard of Normandye what was that Turke that so had  
cryed wyth soo hye a voys vpon the valyaunce of hys  
persone. For kyng Charles sayd : "I haue wel herke-  
ned what he hath said that he shal not fayle to fyght 12  
ayenst vj of the moost valyauntest of myn excersyte."  
To whome Rychard Duke of normandye ansuerd : "Syr  
kyng, thys is a man meruayllous ryche and one of the  
strengest borne of moder : And he is a sarasyn of so 16  
grete fyerste that he ne preysyth kyng ne erle ne none  
other persone of the world."

Richard tells  
him. (120)

Charles swears  
that one of his  
knights shall  
accept the  
challenge, (127)

¶ Whan Charles vnderstood hym he began to clawe  
his heed, And sware by Saynt Denys of fraunce that 20  
he shold not ete ne neuer drynke tyl one of the pyeres  
of fraunce shold goo Iuste ageynst hym, And demaunded  
of Rychard of Normandye how thys Paynym was  
named. ¶ Rychard answerd : "syr Emperour, this 24  
paynym nameth hym self Fyerabras, which is moche to  
redoubte and hath done moche harme to<sup>2</sup> crysten men.  
He hath slayn the Pope, hanged abbottes, monkes, and  
nonnes, and hath defuled chyrches. ¶ And he hath 28  
robbed & taken awaye the holy crowne of our lord and  
many other relyques <sup>3</sup>for whome ye take grete payne.  
And he holdeth Iherusalem in grete subjectyon And  
the holy sepulcre wherin god was buryed." Wherupon 32  
Charles ansuerd : "of thys that thou hast sayd to me I

<sup>1</sup> col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> Ed. or.

<sup>3</sup> C j, back.



am more angry than I was, but knowe thou for certayn  
 I shalle neuer haue Ioye tyll that my desyre be accom-  
 plysshed and that he be vaynquysshed." And of that  
 4 fayt al the frensshe men were commoeued and troubled  
 And ther was not one that presented hym for to goo to  
 hym. And whan charles sawe that noo persone was of  
 courage for to goo and fyght agenst thys geaunt Fyera-  
 8 bras He sayd to Rolland: "My dere neuewe, I praye  
 that thou dyspose the for tassaylle thys turke & that  
 thou doo there thy deuoyr."

and that he will  
 never rest till  
 some one does  
 so, (129)

Charles asks  
 Roland to accept  
 the challenge,  
 (143)

¶ Of the answer of Roulland to the Emperour  
 12 sodeynlye and' what it was: capitulo iiij

**W**Han themperour Charles had spoken thus cur-  
 toysly vnto his neuewe Rolland, Folyly & wyth-  
 oute reason Rolland answerd hym thus: "Fayr  
 16 vncl, speke neuer to me therof, For I had leuer that ye  
 were confused and dysmembred than I shold take  
 ar-<sup>1</sup>mes or hors for to Iuste lyke as ye say. For on the  
 last day that we were so nyghe taken of the paynymys,  
 20 that is to say of moo than fyfty thousand, we yonge  
 knyghtes bare the burthen and suffred many mortal  
 strokes, of whych olyuer my felowe is quasi hurt vnto  
 the deth. For yf ye had not be socoured of vs the hole  
 24 destructyon had been of vs and thende: & whan we  
 repayred and were in our lodgys for to take reste at  
 euen, whan ye were wel dronken ye maad auaunte  
 openlye that the olde and auneyent knyghtes whyche  
 28 ye had brouzt wyth you for to ayde vs had moche better  
 borne them in the fayt of armes and had more stronge  
 bataylle than the yonge knyghtes. ¶ And euery man  
 knoweth wel how I was that euenyng assembled and  
 32 very of trauaylle that I took in that day. And by my  
 faders soule that was euyll sayd of you. ¶ And now it  
 shal be knowen how the olde & auneyent knyghtes shal

but Roland re-  
 fuses, (145)

reminding Charles  
 that he had  
 sneered at him  
 and his com-  
 panions the pre-  
 vious night. (148)

Charles in a rage  
strikes him in  
the face with his  
gauntlet. (166)

Roland draws his  
sword (168)  
on his uncle.

Charles orders  
him to be  
seized, (176)

but no one dares  
to approach  
him. (181)

bere them, for by god whyche ought to haue al in his  
subiectyon there is noo yonge man in my companye that  
euer shal be in my fauour and loue yf he take vpon hym  
to Iuste ageynst the Paynym." Also sone as Roulland 4  
had spoken that worde Themperour hys vnclē hauyng  
moche Indignacion therat <sup>1</sup> smote hym thwarte the vysage  
wyth hys ryght gauntelet<sup>2</sup> that hys nose breste a blood  
habundauntly of the stroke. Thenne Roulland in a 8  
grete furey sette honde on hys swerde whan he sawe  
hys blood, and had smeton hys vnclē yf he had not be  
lette by them that were presente. And whan Charles  
sawe thentencyon of Roulland he was meruayllously 12  
abashed & sayd: "O god of heuen, who wold haue  
thought that I shold haue had vylonye of Rolland my  
neuew whyche been knytte to-gyder in one fayth ayenst  
our aduersaryes? And he cometh rennyng<sup>3</sup> agenst me 16  
wyth affectyon mortal—He that is moost nexte of my  
blood and lignage that here is present, And that more  
sonner shold socoure me than any other! ¶ Now I  
beseche God that on the crosse suffred<sup>3</sup> passyon that this 20  
day he be punysshed as he is worthy." And this said  
in a grete furour he comaunded the frensshe men &  
sayd to them anone: "take ye hym, for I shal neuer  
ete tyl he be delyuerd to deth." Whan the frensshe 24  
men vnderstood the commaundem<sup>e</sup>nt of Charles for to  
haue accomplysshed it that one loked vpon that other  
for to see who wold sette fyrst honde vpon hym. And  
whan Roulland sawe the fayt he withdrewe hym a litel 28  
a-parte <sup>3</sup> wyth hys swerde in hys honde, cryeng<sup>3</sup> with an  
hyghe voys and sayeng<sup>3</sup> to theym: "yf ye be wyse holde  
you styll, For I make a-vowe to god that yf ony of you  
moeue to come to me I shal make of hys heed two 32  
partes." wherfore there was not one that durst ne that  
was soo hardy to meue ageynst hym in malyce but were  
ryght sory & euyll contente of theyr debate. and there

<sup>1</sup> C ij.

<sup>2</sup> Ed. ganntetet.

<sup>3</sup> col. 2.

vpon the noble Ogier came swetelye to Roulland and sayd to hym : "Syr Roulland, me semeth ye doo not wel for to angre thus your vncl the emperour, whom  
 4 by reason ye ought aboue alle other to loue and defende & also supporte." Roulland answerd, whyche thenne was refrayned of hys Ire : "Syr Ogier, I promyse you for a lytel fayt I was determyned to a grete outrage  
 8 wythoute aduys and enclyned, wherof now I am sory and me repenteth."

Ogier interposes and settles the quarrel. (182)

¶ How the kyng charles and' Roulland' been  
 repreued' by the auctour and' somewhat  
 12 excused' vpon the debate aforesayd' : ca. v

V Pon the debate of themperour and' Rolland' hys  
 neuewe I wyll a lytyl tarye, and speke fyrst to  
 1 the kyng' Charles, whyche haste be Instructe  
 16 syth thyn Infancye in alle scyences ful of maners digne  
 of commemoracyon : whiche knewest the constaunce of  
 the auneyents and the mutabylyte of the yonge peple.  
 why saydest thou on the euene that the auneyent and  
 20 olde knyghtes in the warre of that day had borne them  
 better than the yonge knyghtes? And thou knewest wele  
 that Olyuer was gretely hurte by hys valyaunce, in  
 suche wyse that he kepeth hys bedde. And also Rol-  
 24 land' thy neuewe had borne the grete burthen of the  
 bataylle. And yf he had spoken folily thou oughtest  
 to haue supported hys fyrst moeuyng' whiche is not in  
 the puyssaunce of a man. yf thou haddest taken aduys  
 28 at the word that sayth : "Vindictam differ donec per-  
 transeat furor : That is to say thou oughtest to dylate  
 thy vengeaunce tyll the furour be passed, Thou sholdest  
 not haue smyton Rolland, Sythe whan he sayd euyl it  
 32 was wythout aduys of grete dycrescyon. thou smotest  
 hym semblably, wythout aduys he drewe hys swerde

The author's reproof of Roland and Charles.

Charles ought to have remembered the noble deeds of Roland, and his youth,

and should have restrained his anger, even under provocation.

ayenst the, And though thou haddest not smeton hym  
 thou myghtest well haue reprehended hym of his offence.  
 Thou oughtest to remembre ecclesiastes whyche sayth :  
 "Nichil agas in operibus iniurie:" whan <sup>1</sup>a man re- 4  
 ceyueth wronge & Iniurye it is not good that he doo  
 that whyche he may doo. And also it is whan a per-  
 sone hath wel doon hys deuoyr, And of hym of whome  
 he ought to haue hys thanke and preysyng<sup>r</sup> is blamed, 8  
 of soo moche the more is he euyll contente and wrothe.  
 For hys fayt is reputed for nought. In lyke wyse was  
 it of Rolland whyche thought more to haue be alowed  
 & preysed for the grete deuoyr that he dyd than to here 12  
 that the Emperour sayd that tholde knyghtes had doon  
 better than the yonge. but now I wyl retorne to the, O  
 Rolland, whiche hast been so noble. Fro whens cometh  
 in the suche audacyte to speke ageynst thyn vncl 16  
 whyche hath allwaye doon so wel to the that hys werkes  
 been worthy to be remembred? To hym which is  
 emperour Kynge of Fraunce and lord of so grete cremeur,  
 and to thyn vncl as taken debate and ansuerd out- 20  
 rageously was it not reason that thou oughtest to suffre  
 hym, and he not the? yf he smote the wyth hys gaunte-  
 let by maner of correctyon oughtest thou to drawe thy  
 swerde to hym? Thou hast not in remembraunce the 24  
 obeyssaunce of ysaac whyche he had to hys fader: thou  
 were not aduysed of thys that thappostle saith: "ye  
 yonge men <sup>2</sup>kepe your courage And put not the furour  
 therof in exersite." yf the Emperour for hys dysporte 28  
 preysed thauncyent knyghtes yet sayd he not that thou  
 haddest not doon wel. ¶ And Saynt Poule sayth in  
 hys epystle, that a man shold not repreue hym that is  
 more aunycient than hym self, but a man ought to en- 32  
 tretene and supporte hym as his fader. but the dede is  
 suche that a persone reputeth not an Iniurye to hym  
 sayd to be lytel ne yf he be hurte that he be pacyent:

Roland ought to  
 have remembered  
 the respect he  
 owed to his uncle,

according to the  
 words of St. Paul:  
 'Rebuke not an  
 elder, but entreat  
 him as a father.'

<sup>1</sup> col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> C iij.



wherfore it is good to thynke tofore or he speke it, And gladly to doo ne say thyng but yf it be good.

¶ How Olyuer was dysposed to fyght agenst

4 Fyerabras, notwythstondyng that he was hurt, after many wordes : capitulo vj

8 **M**Oche wroth was Charles wyth Rolland hys neuewe And sayd to hys Peres of Fraunce :  
 “ Lordes, O how I am in dyuers thoughtes of my neuewe Rolland, whyche wold haue Iniuryed my persone, To whome I had more affyaunce than to ony man lyuyng! I wote neuer whome I ought to loue, ne  
 12 whome I ought to hate. And yet further<sup>1</sup>more I haue noo man now present for to Iuste ageynst thys Paynym that hath chalenged me.” ¶ Thenne aroos vp tofore hym Naymes the Duc of bauyers whych sayd to the  
 16 kyng : “ Syr Emperour, I praye you & requyre that ye leue these wordes noyouses. Alle shal be wel And another shal goo Iuste ageynst the sarasyn.” But neuertheles the kyng was in grete thought, For there was  
 20 none that wold goo ne take it on hym. ¶ Incontynente the tydynges of the debate of charles and Rolland were brought to Olyuer, whyche was in another place seek in hys bedde. And also how Fyerabras was comen  
 24 And that there was no persone present wyth the kyng for to Iuste ayenst hym. And hereupon the noble erle Olyuer, replenysshed wyth a noble courage and wyth an ardaunt desyre for to playse the kyng, whan he had  
 28 herde these tydynges aroos oute of hys bedde and began for to scratche an<sup>d</sup> strayne hys armes and to fele yf it were possyble to hym to bere armes.

Charles appeals to his knights to settle who shall accept the challenge. (190)

Naymes tries to cheer him. (196)

Oliver hears how none can be found to accept the challenge. (206)

He calls for his arms. (210)

And he thus dooyng his woundes began newly to  
 32 opene that the blood sprange oute of the dystresse.  
 ¶ And not wythstondyng alle that as he that sette not moche therby

His wounds break out afresh.



and his esquire  
remonstrates with  
him, (220)  
but in vain.

Oliver insists,

and Garin helps  
him to arm, (234)

and brings him  
his horse, (240)

Oliver mounts,  
(241)

takes his arms,

For the grete loue and desyre <sup>1</sup>that he had to the kyng [he] dyd do bynde hys woundes the beste wyse he myght and after sayd to garin his squyer that he shold brynge hym hys armes, For he wold arme hym 4 for to goo Iust ayenst the saresyn. To whome garyn sayd: "syr Olyuer, in thonour of god take pyte of your owne persone. For me thynketh ye wil willynggly slee your self." Olyuer sayd to hym: "do my commaunde- 8 ment no man ought to tarye to seche hys honour and auauncement and renomnee. And wyth good ryght I may employe my self for to serue my prynce and syn- guler lord, and sythe that I see that noo frensshe man 12 auaunceth hym I shall not faylle at the poynte, for the comyn prouerbe sayth: 'At nede a man knoweth hys frende.' Now anone brynge to me myn armes wyth- oute more taryeng!" And so Olyuer dyd doo arme 16 hym by the sayd Garyn hys squyer, whiche sette on his legge harnays, hys hawberke, hys helme, and hys har- nays necessarye. And whan he was alle furnysshed he took hys swerde named hauteclere, the whyche swerde 20 he moche loued.

After brought he hym hys hors the moost specyall that he loued whyche was named Ferraunt despaygne. And whan he was brought tofore hym alle sadled <sup>2</sup>and 24 brydled The Ioly and gentyl Olyuer sprange in to the sadle wythoute settinge foot in the styrop, and sette hys shelde at hys ease and in hys honde a myghty spere & sharpe whych garyn took to hym. And after 28 smote the hors wyth the sporres so harde that in the leepyng he maad hys hors to bowe vnder hym. It was a good syght to see Olyuer on horsback wyth a moche fyers countenance. And they that were presente by- 32 sought Ihesu Cryst our redemar that he shold take hym in hys kepyng. For in that day he shold fyght ageynst the moost stronge and moost fyers paynym that euer

<sup>1</sup> C iij, back.

<sup>2</sup> col. 2.

was born of moder or euer was in thys world, That is  
 Fyerabras of Alexandrye, sone of the admyral Ballant  
 of spayne, of whome we shalle see by the playsyr of  
 4 god the termynacyon after. ¶ He beyng thus on  
 horsback in grete poynt vpon hys vysage and vpon his  
 body he maad the sygne of the crosse in the name of  
 Ihesus and commaunded hym self to the wyll of god,  
 8 whyche that day shold be to hym in comferte and ayde  
 after hys good entencyon. And of euery man he was  
 byseen and knowen that he had hys hert hole in hys  
 body for to do grete feat of armes: & so rode forth  
 12 vnto the lyces of <sup>1</sup>themperour Charles with whom was  
 the Duc naymes, guyllam de scot, Gerard de mondy-  
 dyer, and Ogier the danoy, wyth other barons of  
 fraunce<sup>2</sup>: & emonge alle other there was Rolland moche  
 16 sorouful of the wordes that he had ayenst his vncle the  
 kyng, for gladly he wold haue doo the bataylle yf he  
 had not wythsayed it tofore the kyng whan he was  
 requyred. Thus Olyuer beyng seen tofore Charles was  
 20 moche alowed & preysed of one and other & moche  
 affectuously byholden. And the said olyuer put down  
 his helme and byhelde the lodgyce of the kyng, And  
 reuerently came & salewed hym, and after sayd to hym:  
 24 "Noble emperour, puyssaunt, redoubted, and my syn-  
 guler lord, I beseche you to here me ye know wel that  
 there ben iij yeres past that I haue been in your  
 seruyce and haue had of you no rewarde ne wages. I  
 28 you supplye with al myn herte that now ye wyll rewarde  
 me wyth a yefte that I shal desyre." To whom the  
 kyng ansuerd: "Olyuer, noble erle, I assure to you by  
 my fayth that I shal do it wyth a good wyll. And  
 32 assone as we shall be in fraunce there is neyther cyte,  
 borugh, ne castel that ye wyl haue ne none other thyng  
 that to me is possyble & faysyble that shal be denyed  
 to you." "Syr kyng," said <sup>3</sup>Olyuer, "I am not comen

commends him-  
 self to God, (256).

and rides  
 to Charles's  
 tent. (257)

Roland regrets  
 his refusal of the  
 challenge. (260)

Oliver salutes  
 the king,

reminds him of  
 his long and  
 faithful services,  
 (268)

<sup>1</sup> C iijj.

<sup>2</sup> *Ed.* Freunce.

<sup>3</sup> col. 2.

and demands to be allowed to accept the challenge of Fierabras. (237)

Charles remonstrates with him. (232)

Charles positively refuses his permission to Oliver,

but Ganellon insists that,

according to the law, Oliver must fight Fierabras.

Charles is obliged to consent,

to you for to demaunde suche thyng. But I demaunde and requyre of you the bataylle ayenste the paynym so oute of mesure. And at thys houre I graunte to you alle my goodes and seruyces & for this yeste to be quyte 4 of them." whan the frensshe men had herde Olyuer they were all abasshed of hys prowesse & eche of them lokod on other and said emonge them: "A! saynt marie, what hath Olyuer founden, whyche is hurt quasi 8 to deth & wyl now goo to fyght and bataylle?" "O Olyuer," answerd charles, "thou hast loste thy wytte, For thou knowest wel that wyth a spere heed square and sharpe thou hast be hurte and wounded mortally 12 and now thou wylt abandonne thy self to a gretter daunger mortall. beware! Retorne, and take thy reste. For truste well that for noo thyng I shal suffre the to do that fayte sythen that thou arte not presently in 16 helthe of thy body." Vpon thys poynte aroos ganellon and Andrewe the traytres that dyd the trayson as the laste book shall make mencyon.

¶ And Ganellon sayd: "Syr Kyng, ye haue or- 20 deygned in Fraunce that it, whyche by ij of vs is Iuged, ought to be holden, and so is it that we ij Iuge & ordeyne that Olyuer shalle goo and doo <sup>1</sup>the bataylle." wherfore the kyng ful of maltalente, wyth coloure 24 chaunged, answerd: "Ganellon, thou arte of euyl dysposycyon wythoute spekyng that whyche is honourable. Sythe it so is he shal doo the bataylle & it may none otherwyse be but that he be dede. But I swere to the 28 my trouth that yf he be taken or put to deth al the gold of the world shal not saue the but that thou shalt dye a vylaynous deth & I shal destroye thy lygnage." "Syr Emperour," sayd Ganellon, "god and our lady 32 kepe me;" & after the traytre sayd to hym self secretly: "God forbede that euer Olyuer retorne but that he haue hys heed smyton of." and whan themperour sawe that

<sup>1</sup> C iiij, back.

he myght not gaynsaye but that olyuer shold<sup>d</sup> goo and  
 doo the bataylle ayenst Fyerabras he sayd: "I praye and gives Oliver  
his glove.  
 god<sup>d</sup> of the fyrmamente gyue the grace to do wel & that  
 4 thou mayst retorne wyth Ioye," And took hys ryght  
 gloue and threwe it to Olyuer, the which he receyued<sup>d</sup>  
 wyth grete desyre & wylle in thankyng<sup>t</sup> hym ryght  
 humbly and takyng leue of al moche swetely.

8 ¶ How Olyuer was requyred<sup>d</sup> by his fader  
 reyner that he shold not fyght wyth the  
 geaunt, but for al that he went forth:  
 ca. vij

12 <sup>1</sup> **W**Han that Olyuer was lycenced<sup>d</sup> for to goo do  
 hys bataylle and was redy to departe, Reyner  
 of genes hys fader came to the kyng and by  
 grete compassyon kneled down at hys feet and sayd: Reyner appeals to  
Charles not to  
allow Oliver to  
fight,  
 16 "Syr kyng, I crye you mercy haue pyte of my sone  
 and me. I say as for me ye wyl al dyscomforte me  
 whan I see that my sone gooth to perdycon seeyng  
 the daunger that hys persone is in. I say also that ye  
 20 take pyte of his presumptuous yongthe, of hys desyre  
 ouer couetous, and of hys body wounded<sup>d</sup> daungerously.  
 ye knowe wel that a man that is hurte so sore and that  
 hath loste of hys blood<sup>d</sup> may not wel endure bataylle."

24 But Reyner loste hys payne, For the kyng had gyuen but in vain.  
 to hym hys gloue in sygne of lycence, And not-wyth-  
 stondyng<sup>t</sup> these wordes doubted<sup>d</sup> no thyng<sup>t</sup> but that he  
 shold<sup>d</sup> wel do hys deuoyr and valyauntly. And yet  
 28 ageyn reyner requyred the kyng and sayd: "Syr kyng,  
 in thonour of hym that for vs deyed<sup>d</sup> on the crosse  
 suffre not my sone to Iust. Alas! whan I shal haue Reyner again  
protests and  
appeals.  
 lost my sone where shal I become? and ye may wel  
 32 fynde other for to take thys bataylle in honde." Them-  
 perour Charles answerd: "Reyner, ye knowe wel that



Oliver bids his  
comrades fare-  
well.

I may not gaynsaye that I haue to hym graunted. For  
in sygne of ly<sup>1</sup>cence I haue gyuen hym my gloue,  
wherof Olyuer was contente." & thenne Olyuer sayd  
wyth an hye voys tofore alle the people: "Syr kyng<sup>1</sup>, 4  
and alle ye barons, I beseche you alle of a yefte, that  
is that I requyre you yf I haue mesprysed or mysdoon  
in dede or in worde ony ayenst you that in the name  
of god<sup>1</sup> ye pardonne me." whan the freysssh men herde 8  
hym so speke There was none but that he wepte ten-  
derly, and soo takyng<sup>1</sup> hys leue wyth his standard<sup>1</sup>  
reysed The kyng<sup>1</sup> blessyd hym in makyng the sygne of  
the crosse, And wepyng comaunded hym in the kepyng 12  
of the fader of the sone & of the holy ghoost.

Charles gives him  
his blessing.

¶ How Olyuer spake to Fyerabras, whyche  
sette noo thyng by hym, with other dis-  
putacions: capitulo viij 16

Oliver rides up to  
Fierabras, (344)

**O** Lyuer departed & rode forth on hys waye & taryed  
not tyl that he cam where as fyerabras was, which  
was al vnarmed and laye in the shadowe. and  
whan Olyuer had aresonned hym The paynym turned 20  
his heed ayenst hym and dayned vnnethe to loke on hym.  
For he setted nought by hym by-cause he was so lytel  
of stature to the regarde of Fyerabras. And thenne  
Olyuer said to the sarasyn: "Awake, thou, <sup>2</sup>thou hast 24  
thys day so ofte called vs that I am come hyther. And  
I praye the that thou telle to me thy name." Fyerabras  
ansuerd to hym: "by Mahoun, my god, to whome I  
owe honour I am the moost ryche man that is in the 28  
world borne. Fyerabras of alexandrye am I named: I  
am he that thou knowe that dyd doo destroye rome  
your cyte, & slewe the Pope and many other and bare  
awaye the relyques that I there founde, For which ye 32  
take grete payne and laboure to recouer them. And

and demands his  
name. (351)

Fierabras tells  
him, and boasts  
of his exploits.  
(352)



furthermore I holde Iherusalem that fayre cyte, and the sepulchre in which your god rested." Olyuer answered :

"by my fayth, I haue gladly herde the say that whyche  
4 thou hast sayd. And yf it be trouthe that thou hast  
sayd for certeyn now thou mayst repute thy self well  
vnhappy and myschaunt. Now wythoute more talkyng  
make the redy and arme the . seest thou yonder the

Oliver bids him  
arm himself.  
(384)

8 frensshe men that doo no thyng but byholde vs?  
wherfore depesshe the, or<sup>1</sup> by the god on whome I by-  
leue I shalle smyte the there as thou lyst." whan Fyer-  
abras herde that he spake soo hardly he began to  
12 lawhe and sayd: "I am wel admeruaylled fro whens  
that cometh to the suche presumpcion to speke so  
hastly, but for trouthe I shal not remeue fro hens  
tyll <sup>2</sup>I knowe who thou arte and of what lygnage.

16 And whan thou hast tolde to me thy name thou shalt  
see me armed." Olyuer answered to hym: "O paynem,  
know thou for trouthe that or it be nyght thou shalt  
knowe what I am. by me sendeth to the charles the

Fierabras asks his  
name and rank.  
(388)

20 Emperour, my redoubted lord, that for the conservacion<sup>3</sup>  
of thy body and the saluacyon of thy soule thou leue  
the creaunce of thy god Mahoun, & of other ydolles,  
whyche ben but abusyon and decepcyon: whyche haue

Oliver calls on  
Fierabras to  
renounce Maho-  
met, (395)

24 neyther wytte, ne reason, ne feelyng, ne good vnder-  
standyng . wherfore that thou enclyne the to consente  
and thynke fro hens forth to byleue in god almyghty  
the holy Trynyte, the fader, the sone, and the holy

and repeats the  
articles of the  
Christian faith.  
(398)

28 ghoost, iij persones in one essence & of one wyll:  
whyche hath made heuen & erthe and al that there  
in dwelleth: whyche for our saluacion wold be borne  
of the vyrgyn marie. & whan thou shalt haue this

32 byleue wyth the holy sacrament of baptesme, which is  
vpon this establysshed, thou mayst come to the glorye  
eternal. and yf thou do not lyke as I haue taught the

<sup>1</sup> Ed. For.

<sup>2</sup> C v, back.

<sup>3</sup> Ed. consccracion.

Fierabras is surprised at his presumption, (402)

and asks him to describe Charles and the douzeperes. (408)

Oliver tells him that Charles is without an equal,

and again challenges him. (425)

I am here redy to doo bataylle ayenst the, and of two thynges thou must doo that one. Fyrst, that thou departe oute of thys contree as ouercomen & to bere nothyng with the, or thou must <sup>1</sup>come and fyght ayenst 4 me For tenhaunce thy body & to susteyne thy fals lawe." Fyerabras answerd: "whatsomeuer thou arte thou arte ouer presumptuous to haue Intencyon for to fyght ageynst me. For surely yf thou see me on 8 fote wythoute armes thou shalt be wel hardy yf thou tremble not for drede to approche me. But by the god in whome thou byleuest Say to me what man is Charle-mayn, For it is long sythe I herde hym fyrst preysed 12 and redoubted in many contrees: and also that I may haue tydynges of rolland & Olyuer, of Ogyer the danoys and of gerarde de mondydyer, For by my trouthe I wold fayn be acqueynted with them." Olyuer ansuerd: 16 "Paynym, vpon that thou me demaundest I telle to the that Charles themperour is so grete a maystre that there is no man in the World may compare to hym, as wel for the valure of hys persone, of hys counceyl, & of hys 20 maners, as of hys puyssaunce and rychesses Innumerable of regarde. Of hys neuewe Rolland he is wythoute pere, Olyuer lytel lasse than he; and as for the other frensshe men emonge al people humayn they be valy- 24 aunte men. but thyse wordes haue noo place here, depesshe the and arme the, For by the god on whom I byleue yf thou <sup>2</sup>auaunce the not I shalle smyte the wyth thys swerde of stele." Fyerabras began to lyfte vp hys 28 heed and sayd: "By my god mahommet, yf I thought not that it shold be my dyshonour I shold now smyte of thy heed." Olyuer ansuerd: "I praye the leue thys pletyng, For or it be euen thou shalt knowe what I am, 32 For certeyn I haue entencyon to plunge my swerde in thy bely." where vpon Fyerabras was not wroth, so moche noble was he, and rested hys heed vpon hys

<sup>1</sup> col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> C vj.

shelde and sayd to Olyuer : " I sette not therby, but I praye the telle to me thy name & thy lygnage."

Fierabras asks Oliver his name. (441)

Olyuer sayd to hym : " my name is garyn, and am 4 borne in perrogort, sone of a man called Iosue, whyche came that other day in to fraunce where I was adoubed

Oliver tells him he is Garin, a poor knight. (443)

knyght by the noble kyng Charles and am ordeyned for to defende hys ryght & also to fyght ayenst the.

8 wherfor conclude wythoute more taryeng & arme the & take thy hors, for I am redy to doo the bataylle yf thou be soo hardy to abyde me." Fyerabras wold not consente to the bataylle, For hym thought that olyuer was

12 to litel to Iuste ayenst hym and sayd to hym : " Garyn, I demaunde of the wherfore is not comen hyther rolland ne Olyuer or Gerard or Ogier, whyche been of so grete renommee <sup>1</sup>as I haue herd say?" Olyuer ansuerd :

Fierabras asks him why Ogier or Oliver has not come to meet him. (454)

16 " The cause wherfore they be not comen to the is for they sette nought by the & they haue desdayn to come, but I am comen to the as he that taketh noo regarde to theyr Inteneyon and shal do the bataylle ayenst the

Oliver says it is because they despise him. (457)

20 yf thou wylt abyde it. But I swere to the by saynt Petre the appostle of Ihesu Cryst that yf thou arme the not I shal smyte the to the deth wyth thys darte that I holde in my honde." " Garyn," answerd Fyerabras, " I

24 shal say to the that sythe I was adoubed knyght I Iusted neuer but ayenst a kyng, an erle, or a baron of grete valure, and thou art departed of a lowe hous for to say that I shold haue adoo wyth the : it shold be to me

Fierabras says he never fights except with a king or a noble, (465)

28 ouer grete dyshonour yf thou were put to deth by me. but for the goodwylle that I knowe in the whych is moche noble I am contente that thou smyte me and I shal falle doun to therthe, and take thou my hors & my shelde

32 and goo thou to kyng Charles and say to hym that thou hast vaynquysshed me. And yf I do thys for the I do to the grete amytye And thou oughtest for thys tyme to be contente." ¶ On whiche wordes Olyuer coude

but offers to give up his horse and shield to Oliver. (470)

not haue pacyence but that he sayd to hym : "Thy fayt lyeth in noo thyng but in wordes full of <sup>1</sup>folysse presumption. I am of thys intencion that byfore euen-songe tyme I shal make thy hede flee from thy sholdres. 4

Oliver threatens him. (484) I am none hare ne wyld beest for to be aferde, And thou knowest the comyn prouerbe that sayth that there is a tyme of spekyng<sup>t</sup> and tyme of beyng<sup>t</sup> styll, And of one and that other one may be reputed a fool. Now 8 come of & depesse the of that I haue sayd the or ellys I shal slee the." Fyerabras answerd : "I desyre ne praye the of no thyng but that thou sende to me Rolland or olyuer or one of thother knyghtes of the 12 rounde table. And yf one of them be not hardy for to come, late come ij or iij or iiij attones For by me they shal not be refused." In makyn<sup>g</sup> these desputacyons

Fierabras asks for one of the douzepers. Olyuer which sore was hurte the day tofore his woundes 16 opened by force of rydyng<sup>t</sup> and of chauffyn<sup>g</sup> & bledde sore so that fyerabras sawe the blood renne down by is knee, And demaunded of hym fro whens came that blood that soo renneth down to therthe : "I trowe thou 20 be hurte." Olyuer sayd : "I am not hurte but my hors is harde atte spore wherof he is bloody." Fyerabras behelde & sawe it was not of the hors and answerd : "Certes, garyn, thou sayest not sooth for thou art hurte 24 in thy body & I knowe it wel by the blood that cometh <sup>2</sup>down by thy knee : but see what I shal do for the : there been two flagons hangyn<sup>g</sup> on the saddle of my hors whyche ben full of the bawme that I conquered in 28 Therusalem, & it is the same of whyche your god was enbawmed wyth whan he was taken down fro the crosse and layed in hys graue. hye the, and goo drynke therof, & I promyse to the that Incontynent 32 thou shalte be hole and thezue thou shalt mowe defende the wel wythoute daunger." ¶ Olyuer ansuerd that he wold not & that he sayd was folye. Thenne

He sees the blood run from Oliver's wound, (497) and asks if he is wounded? Oliver says, "No."

Fierabras offers to cure him with the holy balm, (510)

but Oliver refuses.

<sup>1</sup> C vj, back.<sup>2</sup> col. 2.



fyerabras ansuerd' that he was a fool wythoute reason,  
And that it myght happe to repente hym.

¶ How after many dysputacyons Olyuer ayded'

4 arme Fyerabras, and' of the ix meruayllous  
swerdes, And' how olyuer named' his name:

ca.

ix

8 **W**Han fyerabras had long abyden lyeng' wyth-  
oute arysyng' for Olyuer he satte vp and  
after sayd: "Garyn, I demaunde the wyth-  
oute hydyng' of what strengthe is Rolland & Olyuer  
that been soo moche redoubted' of paynems, & of what  
12 gretenes ben they of?" Olyuer answerd: "as towchyng  
to rolland he is a lytel lasse of body than <sup>1</sup>I am, but of  
courage he is right hardy to fyght and so chyualrous  
that there is no man lyuyng in the world lyke to hym.  
16 For he neuer faught yet ayenst ony man in the world  
but he vaynquysshed hym. and as for Olyuer thou  
mayst wel apperceyue that he is a man moche semblable  
and lyke to me and of the same gretenes that I am."  
20 Thenne sayd Fyerabras: "by the fayth that I owe to  
my god appollyn & to Termagaunt thou tellest to me a  
thyng wherof I am moche abasshed. For yf they  
were suche foure as thou tellest to me. I wold not refuse  
24 them ne leue them tyl I had put them to deth wyth my  
swerde." Olyuer coude no lenger forbere ne haue  
pacyence vnto the delays of fyerabras but made redy  
to synye hym, wherfore Fyerabras sayd to hym: "thou  
28 wylt haue no pyte on thyn owne persone,<sup>2</sup> By mahoun  
my god yf I aryse & take my hors Charles thy kyng' ne  
alle thy goddes<sup>3</sup> shal not redeme the but that thou shalt  
Incontynente be slayn. For onely yf thou see me tofore  
32 the on my feet thou shalt be moche corageous yf thou  
tremble not for fere."

Fierabras asks  
him to describe  
Roland and  
Oliver. (525)

Oliver tells him.

Fierabras says he  
would not be  
afraid of four  
such. (536)

<sup>1</sup> C vij.

<sup>2</sup> Ed. personr.

<sup>3</sup> Ed. goodes.



Oliver at last  
induces Fierabras  
to rise. (546)

He is 15 feet  
high.

He bids Oliver go  
back and send  
Roland, or Ogier,  
(562)

but Oliver refuses.

Fierabras asks  
Oliver to help him  
to arm.

Oliver does so.

Was not this a  
noble example of  
chivalry and  
courtesy?

¶ Olyuer answerd: "thou hast vaunted the ouer-  
longe to doo thyng whiche thou neuer sawest in thy  
lyue. For better it were to speke by mesure, for by  
ouer <sup>1</sup>moche spekyng<sup>1</sup> otherwyse than trouthe may 4  
brynge the soone to myschyf." Herof was fyerabras  
strongely despyteous And roos on hys feet in a grete  
fyersnes, whyche was by comyn estymacyon xv foot  
longe. And yf he wold haue be baptysed and byleue in 8  
Ihesu Cryst ther had neuer be seen a man of his valure.  
And whan he was a-foot he had grete dysplaysyr by  
cause he had not a valyaunte man to Iuste agenst hym,  
and sayd to Olyuer: "In trouthe I haue grete pyte of 12  
thyn affaire for the noblesse of the courage that I see in  
the. I am yet contente for this present tyme that thou  
retorne And sende to me Rolland, or Olyuer, or Ogyer,  
or Gerard de mondydyer, and expressely say to Olyuer 16  
that I shall not passe thys anauntgarde tyl I haue  
conquerd hym." Olyuer myght no lenger abyde the  
paynym for yf it had not be for hys honour he had  
smyten hym dyuers tymes vnarmed. And whan he 20  
must nedes fyght Fyerabras called Olyuer and prayed  
hym that he wold helpe to arme hym. Olyuer de-  
maunded yf he myght truste hym. Fyerabras ansuerd:  
"helpe me hardyly, For I swere and assure the that 24  
neuer whyle I lyue shal I be traytour to no man  
lyuyng." And vpon that promyse olyuer dyd his  
diligence <sup>2</sup>to arme hym, and he took fyrst lether of  
arabye and cladde hym therwyth, & after hys cote & 28  
his habergeon of stele wele boucled & polysshed: &  
after sette on hys heed an helme garnysshed wyth  
precyous stones rychely. But wel consydered the  
facyon of thys paynym and of this cristen man there 32  
was grete loyalte & curtosye bytwene them whyche  
were assembled for to make mortal warre and eche to  
slee other, and yet they dyd eche to other synguler

<sup>1</sup> col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> C vij, back.

seruyce. Fyrst, the paynym had grete pyte for to destroye Olyuer For he was not hys pere ne egal to the regarde of hys persone. And on that other parte  
 4 whan he sawe hym hurte and the blood descende to therthe he wold haue gyuen to hym of the precyous bawme. Semblably Olyuer, whan he fonde hym dysarmed he had slayne hym wythoute grete payne yf he  
 8 had wold, and after he was soo curtoys that he ayded to arme hym that shold fyzt ayenst hym. ¶ O, what grete loyalte of noblesse was bytwene them whyche were of fayth and creaunce contrærye! I suppose that  
 12 god shold be wel pleased yf there were suche confyaunce emonge crysten men and so ful of naturel noblesse. But I retorne ageyn to my mater. Whan Fyerabras was wel armed he than<sup>1</sup>ked moche Olyuer, And after  
 16 gyrd hys swerde named plourance.<sup>2</sup> and in the arson of his sadyl he had tweyne other of whom that one was named baptysme and that other grabam, the whyche swerdes were maad in suche wyse that there was none  
 20 harnoys but they wold breke and cutte a-sondre. And who that wyl demaunde the manyer how they were made & by whom [I wyl saye] after that whyche I haue founden by wrytyng. ¶ On a tyme there were  
 24 thre brethern of one fader engendred, of whome that one was named Galaus, that other Munyfcans, & the thyrd was called Agnisiæ. These iij brethern made ix swerdes, eche of them thre. Agnisiæ the thyrd  
 28 brother maad the swerde named baptesme, whiche had the pomel of gold and wel enameld, & also plourance,<sup>2</sup> and after Grabam; whyche thre swerdes fyerabras had as I haue sayd. Munyfcans, that other  
 32 brother, made another swerde whyche was named durandal, Whyche Rolland had. that other was called sauognye and that other Cortan whyche Ogyer the danoy had. ¶ And galaus, that other brother, maad

Would that there were such between all Christian men!

Fierabras takes his three swords,

made by one of three brothers,

by another of whom Durendal and Cortan were made,

<sup>1</sup> col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> *Ed.* plourance.

and by the third  
Joyous and  
Floberge.

Fierabras takes  
with him the two  
vessels of balm.

Of the nature of  
his horse.

Fierabras wishes  
Oliver to retire.  
(556)

Oliver refuses.  
(565)

Fierabras con-  
fines Oliver on his  
faith and loyalty  
to reveal his true  
name. (637)

the swerd that was named Floberge, another called  
haulteclere, and that other Ioyouse, whyche Charle-  
mayn had for a grete specyalte. and these <sup>1</sup>iiij brethern  
aforesayd were smythes & wrought the sayd swerdes. 4  
And in thys poynte Fyerabras mounted on hors backe  
And took hys two barylles by hym ful of bawme, And  
henge aboute his necke his shelde whiche was heuy and  
bended wyth yron and stele by meruayllous strengthe. 8  
And in the myddle of the same shelde was paynted hys  
god Appollyn. and after that he had commaunded hym  
to hys god he took his spere in hys honde, whyche was  
sharpe & mortally heded with stele. It was meruaylle 12  
to see the corpulence of the sayd Paynym which sat on  
hys hors named feraunt of spayne, grete, thycke, &  
pommeltyd, whyche had a specyal condycyon : For whan  
his mayster in fyghtyng put to the grounde hys aduer- 16  
sarye this hors maad gretter warre wythout comparyson  
than hys mayster. and thus they beyng on horsback  
Fyerabras sayd to Olyuer : “O garyn, gracyous and  
curtoys, yet I admoneste the for the gentylnesse that 20  
thou hast doon to me that thou wilt retorne without  
fyghtyng, For I haue pyte of thy valyaunte courage.”  
Olyuer answerde : “alwaye thou spekest of grete folye  
for I shal not departe for to be in daunger to be dys- 24  
membred. For I am not he that thou wenest to make  
aferde : for <sup>2</sup>by the helpe of the blessyd Ihesus thys day  
shalt thou be yelden or deed or lyuyng vnto charles the  
emperour.” Whan Olyuer had so spoken Fyerabras 28  
was meruayllously abashed of thys man that wold not  
lete for menace that he maad to hym, but wold haue  
the bataylle ayenst hym & sayd to hym : “Thou art a  
crysten man and hast grete fayth at the mysteryes by 32  
you ordeyned, but I coniure the by the fonte in whyche  
thou were baptysed, and by the fayth that thou hast  
gyuen to the crosse wheron thy god henge and was

<sup>1</sup> C viij.

<sup>2</sup> col. 2.

naylled, And by the loyalte that thou owest to charles  
 themperour, to rolland, and to the other pyeres of  
 fraunce, thou say and telle to me the veryte of thy ryght  
 4 name and of thy lygnage." Olyuer answerd: "Certes,  
 Paynem, he that enduced the to speke to me in suche  
 wyse hath wel taught the, For gretter ne more hyely  
 myghtest thou not adiure me. Wherefore knowe thou  
 8 that I am Olyuer the sone of Reyner, the Erle of Genes, Oliver tells him,  
(650)  
 the moost especial felowe of rolland, and am one of the  
 twelue peres." "In fayth," sayd Fyerabras, "I alwaye  
 thought wel that thou were another than thou saydest  
 12 to me, seen thyn ardaunt courage and that I coude not  
 make the aferde vpon the fayt of bataylle. And how,  
 sir Oliuer, <sup>1</sup>are ye hurte in the body? it shold be grete  
 dyshonour for me to ouercome you in bataylle & destroye wnerenpon Fiera-  
bras presses to  
retire on account  
of his wound.  
 16 you. For I acounte you but a dede man whyche shold  
 be a grete reproche, wherfore retorne ageyn for we haue  
 don for this tyme: For alle the golde in the world I  
 wold not doo suche a shame as to Iuste ayenst you."  
 20 Thenne ansuerd Olyuer: "certeynlye ye shal. For by  
 my hede whan we shal be assembled ye shal haue no  
 courage to Iape ne playe wyth me for I shal make you  
 wel to fele that I am noo dede man." And after Olyuer  
 24 admonested hym swetely in this manere and sayd:  
 "O paynym, or we procede ony ferther now I admonest  
 the that thou byleue in god of heuen almyghty whiche  
 hath made the and fourmed, to whome al thyng<sup>1</sup> owen  
 28 honoure and synguler creaunce. For he that taketh  
 not aduys is borne in an euyl houre. And forsake  
 Mahoun and thy goddes ful of abuse and decepcyon, &  
 dyspose the to be baptysed, & thou shalt haue to thy  
 32 frende the grete charles and a specyall felowe of Rolland  
 the chyualrous. And furthermore al the dayes of my  
 lyf I shal neuer forsake thy companye." fyerabras  
 ansuerd to hym: "thou remembrest a grete folye.

<sup>1</sup> C viij, back.



The Saracen  
refuses.

For for no thyng<sup>1</sup> I shalle not bylue in your god ne shal forsake ne abandoune Mahoun. But on thys day yf thou arte frende of rolland, as thou sayest, so desplaysaunt ne sory was he neuer as I shal make hym for 4 the."

¶ How Olyuer and' fyerabras began to fyzt, & of the prayer of Charles for Olyuer, & of other maters : capitulo x 8

Fierabras offers  
Oliver some of  
the balm,

but he refuses it.

The fight begins.  
(602)

The French pray  
for Oliver's  
success,

and especially  
Charles.

At the first onset  
their spears are  
broken,

**F**Yerabras & olyuer were longe on horsback and it was so that fyerabras wold not lete hys hors renne ageynst Olyuer, But sayd : "my frende, I praye the pat thou drynke of my barylles & by the 12 vertue of the bawme that is therin Incontynent thou shalt be heled & shal mowe wel defende thy self ayenst me." "God forbede," sayd olyuer, "that by drynke thou be conquerd of me but by franke bataylle and 16 harnois fourbysshed." And thys sayd they lete their horses renne wyth a grete courage for to Iuste at vtter-aunce. And as they came that one ageynst that other the frensshe men whyche were in their lodgys had grete 20 fere and drede leste it shold mysfalle to Olyuer. And emonge al other charles al wepyng sayd : "O blessyd Ihesus, I requyre the that at this stroke thou haue pyte of Olyuer my 2baron in suche wyse that I may see hym 24 ageyn alyue & in helthe!" and after feruently came in to hys chapel hydyng his vysage wyth hys mantel and kneled before the crosse and embraced the crucefyx wyth grete teeres, sayeng : "My lord god, of whome I 28 see here the remembraunce, I byseche the to helpe Olyuer, whyche for thexaltaeyon of the crysten fayth is in daunger." Thus in contemplacyon of Charles fyerabras and olyuer gaf so grete strokes vpon theyr 32 sheldes that the hedes of their speres were by force bowed and entred that the fyre sprange out on al

<sup>1</sup> col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> D j.



sydes, and the shaftes of theyr speres were trouchonned that the pyeces flewe in the ayer. The reynes of the brydles of theyr horses wente oute of theyr hondes.

- 4 Bothe tweyne were so astoned of the stroke and theyr eyen so troubled that in a grete whyle they knewe not on whos syde they were torned. and after that bothe were comen to them self Fyerabras drewe plouraunce
- 8 hys swerde that henge by hys syde, And Olyuer took haulteclere meruayllously shynynge & cam vpon Fyerabras and on hyghe on hys helme gaf hym so grete a stroke that the floures and precyous stones wherof it
- 12 was ennobled and garnysshed made to flee to the grounde; and with <sup>1</sup>the same stroke in descendynge he touched hys sholder, but the lether of capadoce saued hym. And the paynym was smyton so harde and sore
- 16 that bothe hys feet were oute of the styroppes and almoost was ouerthrowen, wherof the frensshe men sayden al wyth one voys: "A! saynt marye, what a stroke hath Olyuer gyuen<sup>2</sup> to thys paynym!" "ye,"
- 20 sayde rolland, "meruayllously he smote hym! ¶ Now wolde god of heuen," sayde Rolland, "that I were now vnder the shilde of my gentyl felowe Olyuer, For of me or of the paynym shold shortly be seen the ende."
- 24 ¶ To whom the Emperour answerde: "Ha! euylgloton, I haue wel herde the spoken felon coward. It is not now tyme that thou so say, For atte beginnyng thou woldest not goo, wherof many tymes shalt thou be of
- 28 me reproched." vpon whych thyng rolland ansuerd no thyng but that he shold do as it plesed hym. fyerabras al astoned of the stroke & replenysshed of grete wrath with his swerd named plouraunce came wyth a course
- 32 vpon olyuer, & gaf hym a stroke<sup>3</sup> vpon his helme so sharply that he trenched moo than ve maylles, and hurte euyl hys hors and smote of the spore of his foot & a parte of hys thye, wheroute the blode ranne

and both are  
stunned.

Oliver cuts off a  
part of Fierabras'  
helmet, (616)

and nearly un-  
horses him.

Fierabras strikes  
Oliver on the  
helmet,  
and wounds his  
horse. (591)

<sup>1</sup> col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> *Ed.* gynen.

<sup>3</sup> *Ed.* stooke.

Oliver calls on  
God and the  
Virgin for help.

Fierabras again  
offers to let him  
go,

on account of his  
wound,

but Oliver defies  
him. (597)

habundantly & the swerde of fyerabras <sup>1</sup>was al bloody :  
of whiche stroke olyuer was moeued & troubled that he  
had fallen ne had hys sadel haue been, For he was  
bowed afterward that he was al to broken. And his 4  
hors began to halte of the stroke & whan he was comen  
to hym self wyth an hye voys began to crye : ¶ "O  
lord god, my creatour, o what an euyl stroke haue I  
receyued ! O vyrgyn marye, moder of Ihesus, haue 8  
pyte of me ! For ouer fyersly cutteth the swerde of  
thys paynym. yeue me grace that I may ones haue  
hym : " and made vpon hym self the sygne of the  
crosse. & after fyerabras sayd to hym : " Olyuer, by 12  
Mahoun my god, wyth thys stroke I maad the aferde :  
now mayst thou wel fele how I can playe, & I haue no  
meruaylle though thou commaunde the to thy god, but  
I am euyl contente that I haue hurte the ouer sore with 16  
p<sup>e</sup> stroke. ¶ Neuertheles be sure that thou shalt not  
see the sonne goo to reste for thou begynnest now  
to chaunge colour and thy fyerce manere : neuer-  
theles I am contente that thou retorne, and that shall 20  
be for the the best tofore thou knowe more fully my  
strengthe : for I warne the of one thyng that whan I  
see my blood yssue out of my body thenne doubleth  
my myght and my strengthe. And I wote wel that 24  
charles loueth <sup>2</sup>the not moche whan he sendeth the to  
me, yf he had lodged the in a fayre bedde & whyte  
shetes thou haddest been moche better." whan Olyuer  
herde hym so saye he was replenysshed with a feruent 28  
courage & began to lyfte vp hys heed and sayd : " O  
Paynym, dysmesured al day thou vauntest the for to  
brynge me to thende of my dayes. I praye to god  
almighty that he wyl reioye my courage. kepe the wel, 32  
I deffye the ! we haue ouer long pleted." vpon these  
wordes they ranne to-gydre, smytyng meruayllously  
eche other vpon their helmes in suche wyse that boucles,

<sup>1</sup> D j, back.

<sup>2</sup> col. 2.

- naylles, and<sup>d</sup> crochettes, precious stones, or faueryes, and  
 floures been hewen, broken, and<sup>d</sup> flowen to the ground.  
 the fyre yssued<sup>d</sup> oute largely, makyng<sup>r</sup> grete bruyt with  
 4 the swerdes vpon their harnoys. In this whyle Charles  
 was in grete medytacyon and<sup>d</sup> thought that the quarele  
 of Olyner was trewe and<sup>d</sup> Iuste and<sup>d</sup> that god ought to  
 preserue hym, and<sup>d</sup> whan he thought that Olyuer myght  
 8 deye As Inpacyent of a perfayte fayth he sayd<sup>d</sup>: ¶ “O  
 glorious god<sup>d</sup>, for whome we take payne, I praye the to  
 conserue oliuer that he be not slayn ne taken. For I  
 swere by the soule of my fader that yf he be now slayn  
 12 of thys paynym that neuer in fraunce in ony chirche  
 shal <sup>1</sup>clerke ne preest be reuested<sup>d</sup> ne enhabyted<sup>d</sup>, but I  
 shal do brezne monasteryes, chyrches, aulters & cruce-  
 fyxes.” “Alas,” sayd<sup>d</sup> Duc naymes, “Syr kyng, leue  
 16 these wordes vayne and<sup>d</sup> ydle, & praye god<sup>d</sup> for Olyuer  
 that he be in his ayde for hys holy mercy.” Al thys  
 whyle perseuered<sup>d</sup> the ij champyons fyghtyng and smyt-  
 yng<sup>r</sup> eche on other in suche maner that Fyerabras wyth  
 20 hys swerde brake the cercle of Olyuers helme and made  
 hym falle on hys vysage, and<sup>d</sup> hys hors had<sup>d</sup> be slayn yf  
 he had not lepte a syde. and<sup>d</sup> Olyuer was hurte in hys  
 body and<sup>d</sup> speccally in the breste and<sup>d</sup> had<sup>d</sup> thenne loste  
 24 soo moche of hys blood<sup>d</sup> that he was moche feble,  
 whyche was no merueylle, seen that he had resysted<sup>d</sup>  
 ageynst the moost terryble man that euer was borne of  
 moder.

Their armour is  
cut to pieces.

Charles prays for  
Oliver's success,

and vows if he is  
killed every  
church shall be  
burnt.

Naymes reproves  
him.

Oliver is very  
weak from loss of  
blood.

- 28 ¶ How Olyuer made his prayer to god<sup>d</sup> whan  
 he felte hym hurte : capitulo xj

- 32 **O**lyuer the noble erle beyng in this malancolye of  
 the grete woundes that he had<sup>d</sup> in hys body took  
 his recomforte sayeng in this manere: “O glory-  
 ous god<sup>d</sup>, cause & begynnyng<sup>r</sup> of al that is aboue & vnder  
 the fymamente, which for your owne playser fourmed

Oliver offers up a  
prayer,

<sup>1</sup> D ij.

our fyrst fader Adam and for <sup>1</sup>hys companye gauest  
vnto hym Eue, by whome al humayn generacyon is  
conceyued, gyuyng to them lycence to ete al maner  
fryytes reserued onely one, of whyche Eue by the 4  
recounting the  
fall of Adam,  
moeuyng of the serpent caused Adam to ete, wherfore  
they loste paradys, & by the seductyon of the fendes of  
helle many haue ben deceyued & dampned : wherof ye  
had pyte of the perdyceyon of the world and came for 8  
to take flesshe humayn in the wombe of the glorious  
the annunciation,  
vyrgyn marye by thannuncyacion of the holy .Aungel  
Gabryel, and were borne as it pleased you. And anone  
after the thre kynges camen to adoure & make obeys- 12  
saunce and wyth golde, encence, and myrre made to  
you their presentes. After for you herodes made to be  
the slaughter of  
the Innocents,  
slayne many chyl dren, whiche now been in Ioye per-  
manable. And whan ye were in age by you deter- 16  
myned ye went in the world prechyng to your frendes.  
Thenne afterward by thenuyous Iewes ye were hanged  
the Crucifixion,  
on the crosse, in whiche so hangyng longyus the knyght  
by the Induction of the Iewes percyd your syde ; & 20  
whan he byleued in you & wesse he hys eyen with your  
precious blode he recouerd his syt fayre & clere &  
cryed you mercy wherby he was saued. After by your  
frendes ye were layed in the holy sepulture : <sup>2</sup>the thyrde 24  
the Resurrection,  
day after aroos and took ageyn lyf and descended in to  
helle, And took out Adam and Eue and al them that  
were worthy to haue paradys. And the day of your  
and the  
Ascension.  
meruayllous ascencyon ye ascended in to heuen in the 28  
presence of al your apostles. Thus my god, my maker,  
as thys is trouthe and I byleue it verayly and fermly,  
be ye in my comforte ageynst thys myscreaunte that I  
may vaynquyshe hym in suche wyse that he may be 32  
He crosses him-  
self.  
saued." And this said he blessyd hym with his swerde  
in makyng the sygne of p<sup>e</sup> crosse in the name of god  
the holy trynity, and smote his hors vpon the hope of

<sup>1</sup> col. 2.<sup>2</sup> D ij, back.



the helpe of god. and Fyerabras sayd to hym lawhyng:

“Olyuer, fayre frende, I praye the that thou hyde not  
fro me the oryson that thou hast said now, for by my  
4 god termagaunt I wold gladly here it.” “Now wold  
god of heuen,” sayd Olyuer, “that thou were in suche  
grace that thou sholdest byleue it also fermly as I doo,  
For I assure the I shold loue the thenne as moche as I  
8 doo Roulland.”

Fierabras laughs  
at him,  
and asks what his  
prayer has been.

¶ And Fyerabras ansuerd to hym: “by my god  
Mahoun and Termagaunt, thou spekest now of a moche  
grete folye?”

12 ¶ How after a grete bataylle Olyuer conquerd  
the bawme & <sup>1</sup> dranke therof at hys ease,  
and how he fyl to therthe whan hys hors  
was slayn: capitulo xij

16 **F**yerabras beyng wroth of the wordes of oliuer in  
grete Ire sayd to hym: “kepe the wel fro me, for  
I deffye the!” “I am redy,” sayd Olyuer, “for  
to god I commaunde me.” & so thenne they recountred  
20 to-gyder so sharply and so hard strokes they gaf that  
the fyre myzt haboundantlye be seen sprynge oute of  
theyr harnoys. Theyr horses bowed vnder hem and  
the erthe trembled of the bruyt in the medowe vnder

The struggle is  
renewed (602) so  
fiercely that the  
ground shakes.  
(607)

24 mormyonde. Fyerabras took hys swerde in hys honde  
and smote Olyuer there as he was euyl hurte in the  
breste vnder the pappe, & of that stroke the eyen  
torned in hys heed, And had hys face alle chaunged.

Fierabras wounds  
Oliver in the  
breast.

28 And thenne ageyn he cryed on god and on the virgyn  
marie that he wold saue his soule. Fyerabras by grete  
curtosye sayd to hym: “Olyuer, vnderstonde me,  
descende doun surely and goo take of the bawme and  
32 drynke at thyn ease, and anone thou shalt be al guar-  
ysshed and hole, and thenne mayst thou the better

Fierabras again  
offers Oliver some  
of the holy balm,

but Oliver refuses  
it.

Oliver pierces  
Fierabras' thigh.

He drinks some  
of the balm,  
and is at once  
made whole again.

Oliver cuts the  
cord by which the  
vessels are tied.

He seizes one,  
drinks some of  
the balm,  
and is healed of  
his wound.

Oliver throws the  
vessels into the  
river.

defende the ageynst me and thou shalt recoure newe  
strengthe." But olyuer for noo thyng that he coude  
do though he shold dye he wold not, For by trewe  
fightyng he wold haue it. And anone came that one 4  
ageynst that other and smyten in suche wyse that  
Fyerabras was hurte daungerously, For olyuers swerde  
entred in to his thye an halfe foot depe, and of the  
blood that yssued oute alle the grasse was reed. And 8  
whan he sawe hym so hurte he dranke of hys bawme  
and was anone al hool, wherof olyuer was moche sorou-  
ful, by cause therof he coude make none ende of thys  
paynym. And the frensshe men that saw this made 12  
to god their prayers deuoutly that he wolde conserue  
that day Olyuer, And in especyal Charlemayn whiche  
emong al other loued hym moast entyerly. But whan  
Olyuer sawe the paynym al hole & for the bawme 16  
so comforted, by the ayde of god he came to hym  
and smote hym vpon the helme soo harde that the  
stroke descended vpon the sadel & cutte the corde by  
whyche the barylles were bouzden and fastned, and the 20  
hors of fyerabras was aferde of the stroke and made a  
lytel course by the playsyr of god. Thenne Olyuer or  
the paynym toke ony hede bowed to the grounde and  
took vp the barylles & dranke at hys ease and largely, 24  
& anon he was al hole & reconfermed in newe strengthe,  
& thought that yf by aduenture fyerabras were more  
hurte by hym and myght ageyn haue hys barylles  
that in thende it myght euyl happe and come to hym. 28  
wherfore he beyng nyghe vnto a grete ryuer took the  
barylles & threwe them therin whyche were anone  
sonken. And as it is redde at alle the festes of saynt  
Iohan these ij barylles ben shewed aboue the water 32  
euydently. whan fyerabras sawe that the barilles were  
lost all most for angre he was oute of hys mynde &  
by grete reproche sayd to Olyuer: "O euyl man that

<sup>1</sup> D iij.

<sup>2</sup> col. 2.

thou arte, thou hast loste my barylles whyche were  
 more worth than al the golde in the world: but I  
 promyse the that or it be euen they shal to the ben  
 4 dere solde, For I shal not cesse tyl I haue smyton of thy  
 heed:” and thys sayeng he came ayenst hym, but  
 Olyuer as he that doubteth hym not soo moche as he  
 dyd tofore eschewed hym not but put hym at the  
 8 defence wyth his shelde to auoyde the stroke. Neuer-  
 theles Fyerabras smote hym so hard pat hys helme was  
 desmaylled & broken, but he was not hurte, & the  
 stroke descended so inpytuously pat he cutte asondre the  
 12 necke of oliuers hors, & [he] fyl to grounde and thenne  
 was Olyuer on fote. but a grete myracle it was of the  
 hors of fyerabras that maad no semblaunte<sup>1</sup> to renne  
 vpon hym as he had ben taught, lyke as I haue sayd  
 16 byfore, but helde hym styлле aboue hys propre custome.

Fierabras reviles  
him for doing so,

rushes at him,

and breaks his  
helmet,

and kills his  
horse. (588)

¶ How Fyerabras and Olyuer foughten to-  
 gyder afote merveyllously, and of the  
 prayer that Charles maad for Olyuer:  
 20 capitulo viij

**M**Oche sorouful were the frensshe men whan they  
 sawe Olyuer on fote, and wold haue armed  
 hem for to socoure hym, But Charles wold not  
 24 consente for to mayntene hys honour & hys trouthe.  
 ¶ And thenne kyng Charles kneled down to therthe &  
 maad his prayer to god that he wolde comforte Olyuer  
 whyche was thus dyspourueyed of his hors. whan  
 28 Olyuer sawe hym self on fote he was moche sorouful &  
 came a foure paas nyghe vnto Fyerabras, and sayd to  
 hym: “o kyng of Alexandrye, thou hast borne the  
 foule this day ageynst me. In the mornyng thou hast  
 32 so moche preysed thy self that thou hast sayd yf v  
 knyghtes came ageynst the thou woldest abyde and

The French wish  
to help Oliver,

but Charles for-  
bids them.

Oliver reproaches  
the Saracen for  
killing his horse.  
(598)

<sup>1</sup> D iij, back.

conquere them, and thou knowest that the kyng that sleeth an hors ought to haue no parte of therytage."

Fierabras declares it was accidental, and offers to give him his own horse, but Oliver refuses.

Fierabras jumps off his horse,

and they fight on foot.

Reyner appeals to Charles to send help to Oliver, or at least to pray for him.

Fyerabras answered: "I knowe wel that thou <sup>1</sup>sayest trouthe, but I dyd it not wyth my wylle. Neuertheles 4 to thende that thou be not euyl contente wyth me I shal descende doun of my hors & shal gyue to the my hors pomelk: And I promyse the thou shalt be well horsed. And knowe thou that neuer in my lyf 8 I was so abasshed as whan he sawe the at erthe that he strangled the not, for I neuer put man to the erthe and thys hors present but that anone he was by hym slayn & dede." Olyuer answered: "I promyse the that I shal 12 neuer take thyn hors but yf he be first by me conquered and Iustly wonne." wherupon fyerabras was soo moche noble that for the valyaunce of Olyuer sayd: "Certeyn for the noblesse that I knowe in the I wyl do that I 16 neuer dyd for man:" and sprange of his hors & stode a-foote & was contente to fyght ayenst hym a foote, by-cause he had no hors of hys owne. and the sayd fyerabras was moche heyer than Olyuer. and by 20 one accorde they Iusted afoote that one ayenst that other so meruayllously that it was wonder that bothe tweyne remayned not in the felde a-swoune of the trauaylle that they toke. Thus contynueing the bataylle 24 which coude take none ende they spoken many reproches and despytous wordes that one of theym vnto <sup>2</sup>other. The kyng Charles seyng al thys had grete pyte on Olyuer. Thenne the Erle Reyner, fader of Olyuer, whyche was 28 moche sorouful came & kneled at the feet of Charles and sayd: "O noble emperour, in thonour of god take remors of my sone whome I see lykly anone to dye. Atte leste make prayer to Ihesus our maker that he be in ayde to 32 hym that I may see hym ryghe to me in helthe." ¶ In-contynent Charles seyng thys sayd: "O lord god, yf ye suffre that Olyuer be ouercome and that my ryght at

<sup>1</sup> col. 2.<sup>2</sup> D iiij.



- thys tyme be loste and<sup>d</sup> defyled<sup>d</sup>, I make auowe that al  
 crystyante shal be destroyed. I shal not leue in  
 Fraunce chirche ne monasterye, ymage ne aulter." &  
 4 after kneled<sup>d</sup> doun with bothe his knees<sup>1</sup> to the grounde  
 & prayed<sup>d</sup> in this manere: "My creatour, whyche for  
 our sauacyon was borne of the glorious vyrgyn marie  
 in bethleem, as I wel by-leue, that of your glorious  
 8 byrth al the world was enlumyned<sup>d</sup>, whiche abode in thys  
 world<sup>d</sup> ful xxxij yere & more, & made atte begynnyng<sup>t</sup>  
 Adam and Eue, of whom we ben comen, & that was in  
 paradys tenestre a place moche delectable. And there  
 12 by you were alle fruytes abandoned to them except one  
 onely, whyche was of knowyng good & euyll, as it plesed  
 you to ordeyne: of <sup>2</sup>whiche adam ete & was dysobey-  
 saunt, for whom to the reparacion of his misdede & for  
 16 to redeme hym fro eternal captyuyte & vs also ye were  
 contente to take the deth in the tree of the crosse, after  
 that the traytour<sup>3</sup> Iudas solde you for xxx pens: & on  
 a friday ye were payned<sup>d</sup> & your handes & feet mortally  
 20 naylled, & crowned with a moche sharpe crowne of  
 thornes: and<sup>d</sup> after Longyus smote you in the ryght  
 syde to the hert, whiche was blynde & after that he  
 had leyed on hys eyen of your precyous blood he sawe  
 24 moche clerely: & after ye descended in to helle & toke  
 out your frendes, & sythe aroos fro deth to lyf, & tofore  
 al your apostles ye ascended<sup>d</sup> in to heuen & lefte for  
 your lyeutenaunt saynt Peter thapostle in erthe; and  
 28 ordeynest baptesme for the regeneracyon of vs and<sup>d</sup> to  
 make vs crysten for to haue saluacyon. O lord<sup>d</sup>, as alle  
 thys is truthe and<sup>d</sup> that I byleue it stedfastly, so on thys  
 day be thou in ayde and<sup>d</sup> socoure vnto Olyuer for to  
 32 preserue hym that he be not slayn ne vaynquysshed."
- ¶ He thys sayeng<sup>t</sup> & other deuoute wordes in hys  
 secrete oratorye Our<sup>4</sup> lord sente to hym an aungel fro  
 heuen whyche sayd<sup>d</sup> to hym: ¶ "O Charles, Emperour

Charles at first  
threatens to de-  
stroy every church  
if Oliver is killed,

and then prays  
for Oliver's suc-  
cess,

recounting the  
Fall,

the Crucifixion,

the piercing of  
our Lord's side  
by Longius,

the descent into  
hell,

the Ascension,

and the ordination  
of Baptism.

An angel appears

<sup>1</sup> Ed. knees.

<sup>2</sup> col. 2.

<sup>3</sup> Ed. traycour.

<sup>4</sup> Ed. Out.

and tells him that Oliver will be the victor.

Fierabras aims a stroke at Oliver,

which he dodges, and wounds the Saracen.

Oliver's sword flies out of his hand.

He tries to recover it, but cannot

through fear of Fierabras.

The French are eager to help Oliver, but Charles will not allow them.

of noblesse, knowe thou for trouthe that I am sente from <sup>1</sup>god for to say to the that thou doubte no thyng of Olyuer, for wythout faylle he shal wyne the bataylle; though it be late, but he shal vaynquysse the paynym." 4  
thys sayd, the aungel departed and charles thanked god deuoutelye for hys glorious medytacyon. Neuertheles after many bataylles bytwene fyerabras and Olyuer maad, and grete menaces by grete furour, wyll 8  
yng to haue gyuen to Olyuer a grete stroke oute of mesure. But Olyuer whyche sawe the stroke comyng deuauced hym in suche wyse that he gaf two euyl strokes to Fyerabras, wherof Fyerabras was passyng 12  
angry vpon Olyuer, and Olyuer on hym, so that bothe were ryzt actyf neuer to departe tyl that one of them were vaynquysshed and destroyed. & at that tyme Olyuer was soo coueytous in smytyng that his honde in 16  
whiche he helde hys swerde was a-slepe and swollen for the payne that he had of smytyng, and he desyryng to smyte hys enemye at vtteraunce hys suerde flewe a-ferre fro hym out of his hande, wherof he was sore moued 20  
and abashed—and it was no meruaylle—and moche courageously ranne for to take vp his swerde, And layed hys shelde on hys hede for to preserue it. But not wythstondyng the paynym smote <sup>2</sup>hym twyes so 24  
myghtyly that he brake hys shelde in dyuers places and hys hauberke, so that he was sore astonyed for that tyme And doubted soo moche the paynym that he durst not take hys swerde : and moche sodeynlye the frensshe 28  
men which sawe so Olyuer dyspourueyed of his swerde armed them anone and were in purpoos to renne vpon the sarasyn for to socour olyuer. but Charles wold not consente that any man shold goo sayeng to them that 32  
god is almyghty for to saue and mayntene hym in hys good ryght, for yf he had not gaynsayed it more than xiiij thousand men were thenne redy for to haue rescowed

<sup>1</sup> D iij, back.

<sup>2</sup> col. 2.

- hym. and notwithstandyng<sup>1</sup> al thys the paynym dyd  
 but laughe & said to Olyuer: "In trouthe, Olyuer, I haue opteyned vpon the a lytel of myn entente, but  
 4 wherfore darst not þou take thy swerde I knowe now  
 wel that thou art ynough vaynquysshed sythe that thou  
 art so aferde that thou darst not stoupe for all the  
 tresour of the world. and I am wel contente for t.  
 8 apoynte wyth the that is that thou renye the fayth that  
 thou holdest, the baptesme that thou hast receyued &  
 the god in whom thou byleuest, and for whome thou  
 hast had al thys payne, & byleue in Mahoun, my god  
 12 ful of bounte, & <sup>1</sup>I shal suffre the to lyue & more ouer  
 I shal be contente to gyue to the my sister to wyf to  
 whom thou shalte be rychely maryed. Hyr name is  
 Florypes, the fayrest of moder borne, & after we shal con-  
 16 quere Fraunce or thys yere be paste, And of one of the  
 royames I shal crowne the kyng." Olyuer ansuerd to  
 hym: "Paynym, thou spekest to me of grete folye, for  
 god forbede that euer I shold be of entencion to forsake  
 20 my god, whyche hath created & fourmed me, and his  
 holy sacrements which haue been establysshed for my<sup>2</sup>  
 sauacyon, for to byleue in mahoun and in thy goddes  
 ful of abusyon: whiche haue neyther strengthe ne  
 24 vertue but cause of dampnacyon." Fyerabras sayd to  
 hym, "by mahoun my god, thou art alwaye moche  
 obstynat that ne for payn ne for torment thou wylt not  
 denye thy fayth, & of one thyng which is more grete  
 28 thou<sup>3</sup> mayst wel auauzte the. For neuer was I of  
 persone so trauailed ne greued as I am of the. ¶ Thou  
 oughtest wel to be praysed. I am contente that thou  
 take thy swerde hardyly and surely for withoute com-  
 32 petent wepen thou mayst not preuaylle ne more than a  
 woman." Olyuer answerd: "Paynym, I can not say  
 the contrarye but that thou offrest to me seruyce and  
 bounte, but for the<sup>4</sup> valewe of x thousand marke of

Fierabras mocks  
at Oliver,

and offers, if he  
will renounce  
Christianity, to

give him his sister  
Floripas in mar-  
riage.

Oliver says, "God  
forbid!"

Fierabras declares  
he never met any  
one so obstinate.

Fierabras then  
offers to let him  
pick up his sword,

<sup>1</sup> D v.    <sup>2</sup> Ed. fo rmy.    <sup>3</sup> Ed. thon.    <sup>4</sup> col. 2.

but Oliver refuses, golde I wyl not take it, ne for to deye therfore. For yf I had recouerð my swerde by thy curtosye And it happed that thou were vnder my puyssaunce and thou thenne demaundest of me amytte & frendshyp & thenne 4 [I] put the to deth it shold to me be vylete and reproche. And at thys tyme my lyf and my deth be in the wyll of god to whom I haue gyuen my self ouer. But and yf I may wyne my swerde thou shalt bye it dere & here 8 deye, For other thyng shal thou not haue." ¶ "By my fayth," sayd Fyerabras, "thou art moche surquydrous & glorious, wherfore be thou sure that shortely thou shalt be confused descomfyte and matte." 12

and declares he will win it back in fair fight.

¶ How at thys bataylle Fyerabras was vanquysshed by Olyuer after that he had recouerð one of the swerdes of fyerabras :  
capitulo viiiij 16

**W**Han Fyerabras herde that oliuer was so fyers of fayt and of courage he had grete meruaylle. For he wold not haue hys swerde but yf he myght by Iuste warre conquere it, wherfore the paynym 20 dysmesurably came ageynst hym and helde in hys hande plorance hys swerde. Thenne it was no meruayle though olyuer was aferde to abyde hys enemye he beyng dyspourueyed of swerde & of shelde, For that 24 was broken in two parties. but as it playsted to god he looked besyde hym & sawe the hors of fyerabras and on the arson of the sadel were ij other swerdes of whych I haue spoken afore. And anone Olyuer ranne ryght 28 quickely and took one of the swerdes whych was named baptesme, whyche had the blade moche large and shone meruayllously, & after came ageynst the paynym & put tofore parte of hys shelde suche as was lefte. and whan 32 he was nyghe hym he began to say : "O kyng of

Fierabras comes against Oliver,

who, looking round in fear,

sees the Saracen's horse, on which are two swords.

He runs and seizes one, Baptism,



Alexandrye, now is tyme to compte. For I am pourueyed of your swerde of whych I shal make you wroth & kepe you wel from me for I haue deffyed you.”

and defies  
Fierabras,

4 Thenne whan Fyerabras sawe it and had herde hym so speke anone began to chaunge colour and sayd: “O baptym, good swerde, I haue kepte the many a day for one of the beste that euer henge by my syde or by ony  
8 mans that is lyuyng!” And after behelde olyuer sayeng:

“By my god Mahoun, I knowe the a man of grete fyerste. I wold that thou woldest take thyn owne swerde and late me <sup>1</sup>haue myn and thenne late vs fyght

who asks him to  
give up Baptism,  
and take his own  
sword in ex-  
change,

12 as we haue begonne.” “by my hede,” sayd Olyuer, “that shal neuer be by my wylle, for tofore I make ony pacte with the I shal assaye and approue thys swerde vpon thy persone. kepe the wel fro me For ouer long

but Oliver refuses,

16 haue we sermoned.” Thys sayeng & other thynges Olyuer came as a lyon hungry ayenst fyerabras & smote hym fyrst, but he myzt not attayne hym on the hede but that he recountred first the shelde of the paynym,

20 whyche he brake and al to-frusshed euyl that the half flewe in the felde. Thenne fyerabras was sore aferde of that stroke For aboue alle thys the swerde wyth that stroke entred nygh half a foot within therthe. Thenne

and with a blow  
breaks the shield  
of the Saracen.

24 olyuer blessyd hym that had forged that swerde and so wel tempred, and after many menaces rygorous they were in partye descouered of theyr helmes. And whan

They both lose  
their helmets.

Olyuer sawe the Paynym Fyerabras in the vysage fyers  
28 and courageous he sayd: “O lord god of heuen, maker of heuen & of erthe, that thys paynym is noble and ful of cruelte. Now wold god that Charles had hym in

Oliver is astonish-  
ed at the appear-  
ance of Fierabras,  
and prays for his  
conversion.

his power and yf he wold be baptysed Rolland and I  
32 shold be hys pryue felowes. O glorious vyrgyn marie moder of god, praye our lord Ihesu Cryste thy sone

<sup>2</sup>that he gyue grace to thys sarasyn that he may byleue in the cristen fayth, for by hym it may be moche

<sup>1</sup> col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> D vj.

enhaunced." Fyerabras ansuerd in thys manere :  
 "Olyuer, leue suche wordes : telle me yf thou wylt  
 fyght like as thou hast enterprysed." "ye," sayd  
 olyuer, "kepe the wel fro me for I deffye the," and 4  
 ranne vpon hym : and Olyuer was smyton fyrst vpon  
 his shelde by suche fiersnes that he smote his shelde in  
 pyeces nyghe to hys fyste, and it was meruaylle that he  
 cut it not of : wherfore Fyerabras sayd that he had 8  
 put hym in suche caas that he shold not longe lyue in  
 thys world. Olyuer sayd noo worde but came with his  
 swerde ayenst the paynym Fyerabras moche furiously.  
 ¶ Thenne the paynym that sawe þe stroke come threwe 12  
 hys shelde ayenst olyuer wherfore anone it was quartred,  
 and was so astoned that the eyen in hys heed were al  
 troubled of the payne and the fyre was seen sprynge  
 oute of the swerdes and sheldes moche habundantlye. 16  
 and thus in smytyng fyerabras sayd in this manere :  
 "now is the houre come that thou shalt neuer haue ayde  
 of thy god Ihesus in whome thou byleuest, [but] that  
 anone thou shalt be deed sythe thou felest thy self ouer- 20  
 comen. And Olyuer anone ansuerd : "Ihesus is wel  
 myghty <sup>1</sup>for to shewe hys puyssaunce. But anone thou  
 shalt knowe that Mahoun ne Termagaunte shal not  
 mowe ayde the ne be so myghty but that thou shalt be 24  
 deed, I shal wel gyue the knowleche." And herupon  
 came that one vpon that other. And olyuer was smyton  
 on the helme al vnto the flesshe in suche wyse that al  
 that the swerde araught it share and passed thorough, & 28  
 thenne he sayd to olyuer : "I swere to the by my god  
 that I haue wel araught the and smyton. Neuer shal  
 charles ne Rolland see the be thou wel sure." Olyuer  
 ansuerd : "O Fyerabras of alexandrye, be not thou so 32  
 proude for or I departe fro the I shal rendre the dede  
 or vaynquysshed, & god graunte to me that whyche I  
 haue alwaye desyred !" And therupon eche smote

<sup>1</sup> col. 2.

Fierabras smites  
Oliver on his  
shield,  
and breaks it in  
pieces.

Oliver cuts the  
Saracen on his  
shield,

and nearly stuns  
him.

They abuse each  
other. (701)

Fierabras wounds  
Oliver (732) and

declares his time  
has now come.

other so merueyllously that the bodyes of them bothe  
 swette for anguysshe and payne. Fyerabras smote  
 olyuer vpon the helme soo harde that the stroke came  
 4 to the flesshe, and yf god had not wrought he had be  
 slayn at that tyme. wherfore Olyuer as a man enraged  
 came ayenst the paynym & the sarasyn lyfte on hyghe  
 hys shelde so that he was al dyscouerd vnder the arme  
 8 and hys flanke was there vnarmed. Olyuer was wyse  
 & took good hede and came lyghtly & smote <sup>1</sup>fyerabras  
 in hys flanke so myghtyly & contynued in suche wyse  
 that he thrested his swerde in one of hys flankes wel  
 12 depe, & hys swerde hym self & the place was alle bybled  
 of the blood. Thus was Fyerabras hurte in suche  
 manere that almoost hys bowellys yssued oute of his  
 bely, For thenne at that stroke olyuer employed al his  
 16 strengthe for to make an ende of the bataylle so longe  
 foughten.

Oliver aims a  
 blow at Fierabras;  
 who, raising his  
 shield too high,  
 leaves his side  
 uncovered. (737)

Oliver thrusts his  
 sword in between  
 the ribs,

so that the Sara-  
 cen's bowels al-  
 most fall out. (748)

¶ How fyerabras beyng vaynquysshed' by-  
 leued' in god', and' how he was borne by  
 20 Olyuer, And' how Olyuer was assaylled'  
 of the sarasyns and tormented': capitulo xv

After that the Paynym was smyton, and hurte  
 mortally as I haue sayd, And he seyng that he  
 24 myght nomore resyste ayenst Olyuer, by the  
 vertu of god he was enlumyned in suche wyse that he  
 had knowleche of the errour of the paynyns and lyfte  
 vp hys eyen vnto heuen and began to escrye the holy  
 28 trynitye and the grace of the holy ghoost. And after  
 looked on Olyuer and sayd to hym: "O noble Olyuer  
 & valyaunt knyght, in thouour of god on whome thou  
 byleuest and to <sup>2</sup>whome I consente I crye the mercy  
 32 and requyre the that I dye not tyl I be baptysed &  
 yelden vaynquysshed vnto Charles the Emperour

Fierabras finding  
 himself vanquish-  
 ed begs for mercy,

(753) promising  
 to become a  
 christian,

and to be bap-  
 tised, (755)

<sup>1</sup> D vj, back.

<sup>2</sup> col. 2.

whyche so moche is redoubted. For I shal byleue in  
 and to give up the the crysten fayth & shal yelde the relyques for whyche  
 sacred relics. (763) ye be assemblyd and haue taken soo moche payne.  
 And I swere to the that yf by thy defaute I dye sarasyn 4  
 I make the culpable of my dampnacyon, And yf thou  
 take not me in to thy garde I shal lose my blood.  
 Thou shalt see me deye tofore thyn eyen wherfore in  
 Oliver takes pity the honour of god haue pyte on me." Olyuer had so 8  
 on him, (770) moche compassyon of hym for hys soor that he sore  
 wepte, and after he layed hym in the shadowe vnder a  
 and binds up his tree and there bounde his mortal woundes in suche  
 wounds. (774) wyse that he staunched hys bledyng. And after the 12  
 Fierabras asks to paynym prayed hym that it myght plesse hym to bere  
 be carried away, hym away For hym self myght not goo. but whan  
 (776) Olyuer sawe that he was so heuy he sayd that it was  
 not to hym possyble to bere hym. Fyerabras enforced 16  
 hym self moche & came nyghe to hym, "O noble and  
 redoubted Erle Olyuer, in the honour of god lede me  
 to charles or I be dede for I am nyghe at myn ende,  
 and bids him fetch for al my body bledeth. take that hors and mounte 20  
 his horse, (788) theron and come as nyghe to <sup>1</sup>me as thou may and yf I  
 and take him on may lye thwart tofore the vpon the sadel thou mayst  
 it. lede me; & take my swerde by thy syde. ¶ Now  
 hast thou foure that been moche worthe. and hye and 24  
 depeesse the, For thys day in the mornyng I lefte in  
 He warns him of an ambush of 50,000 Saracens in the wood close by. (796)  
 the wode that thou there seest here by fyfty thousand  
 men whyche been al my subgettes, & comanded them  
 that none shold moeue tyl I were retorned fro the 28  
 bataylle." Whan Olyuer vnderstood hym he was al  
 afrayed and abashed for fere, but not wythstondyng  
 he sayd: "Syr kyng, sythe that it plesse you I am  
 contente," & took hym thwart the hors as it was sayd 32  
 Oliver lifts him on to the horse. (809) & went forth on the waye in grete sorowe. And  
 sodeynly departed out of the wode where as were the  
 subgettes of Fyerabras a moche fyers paynym named



bruyllant of Mommere. And after hym Sortybrant of  
 nonymbres, and the kyng of Mantryble; after hym  
 maradas, Pynan, & Tenebras, & wel fyfty thousand  
 4 sarasyns after. whan Olyuer sawe theym come he smote  
 the hors wyth the spores but the charge was so heuy  
 that he myzt not goo so faste as his enemyes came to  
 hym. Whan the frensshe men sawe the paynyns come  
 8 in so grete nombre anon lyghtely they armed them.  
 And emonge other rolland, Gherard of mon<sup>1</sup>dydyer,  
 Guyllam the scot, naymes of bauyere, Ogier, Rychard  
 of normandye, Guy of bourgoyn, Geffroy lantiguy,  
 12 Basyn, the duc Thyery of ardeyne, And Aubert, And  
 semblably Reynier of genes fader of Olyuer faylled not.  
 Olyuer saw alonge the medowe and sawe come to fore  
 thother brullant of mommyere which rode on an hors  
 16 as swyft as a grehounde and made grete bruyt emonge  
 the other, For it semed as it had be thonder and  
 tempeste; and bare in hys honde a faus dart with a  
 grete hede of stele square and sharpe whyche was alle  
 20 enuyned wyth the blood of a crapauld and was  
 ryght daungerous. whan Olyuer sawe him he was al  
 amoeued and abashed and sayd to Fyerabras in thys  
 manere: "Sir kyng, ye must needs descende; I may  
 24 no farther conduyte you, wherfore I am meruayllously  
 sory and dysplaysaunt. For I knowe that I must nedes  
 be oppressyd; ye see it wel. And yf they may  
 attayne I shal be put to deth, And Charles shal neuer  
 28 see me whyche shall be to hym grete dyscomforte."  
 Thenne anone Fyerabras cryed with an hye voys: <sup>2</sup> "O  
 noble Olyuer, wyl ye now leue me? Ye haue conquerd  
 me, to you I am yeuen and yelden. it shal not be  
 32 reputed noblesse determyned whan <sup>3</sup>I am youres and  
 ye forsake me. Alas poure sorouful and caytyf that I  
 am, yf I deye paynym what shal come of me? Virgyn  
 marie, moder of god, haue pyte on me vnworthy that I

The Saracens  
break out of the  
ambush. (812)

Oliver spurs his  
horse, but in vain.

Roland and others  
rush out to his  
help.

Oliver being hard  
pressed,  
tells Fierabras he  
must set him on  
the ground.

Fierabras begs  
him not to leave  
him.

<sup>1</sup> col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> *Ed.* veys.

<sup>3</sup> D vij, back.

Oliver promises  
not to desert him,

and arms himself  
in Fierabras'  
armour. (868)

Brillant charges  
at and wounds  
him in the breast.

He sets Fierabras  
down (825), and  
tries to escape,

but seeing it is in  
vain,  
utters a prayer,

draws his sword,  
and turns to meet  
the Saracens. (833)

am to retorne me to you!" And after he sayd to  
Olyuer: "I am conquerd by the and haue promysed  
to the that I shal be baptysed. Yf thou leue me thou  
oughtest lytel to be preysed." Olyuer ansuerd: "Fy- 4  
erabras, thou spekest as a knyght. But I auowe to god  
and to the courte of heuen that I shal not leue the, I  
shal take the bataylle in honde for the and shal deffende  
the as longe as I shal be on lyue: thou mayst wel truste 8  
therto." & there vpon he took the hauberk of the  
sarasyn and wyth suche as he myzt haue he armed  
hym, & prestly he abylded hym and put on his heed an  
hatte of fyne stele, and helde hys swerde drawen named 12  
haultclere, wyth whiche he coude wel helpe hym. &  
herupon came anone brillant wyth his faus darte &  
atteyned Olyuer in the breste & gaf hym an euyl stroke  
so that the dart brake. thenne said fyerabras: "Syr 16  
Olyuer, ye haue doon ynough for me, For ye be hurte.  
late me descende doun and laye me a-parte out of the  
waye to thende that I be not defoulled of these sara-  
syns, ne taken and destroyed." Therof had Olyuer 20  
grete compassyon & layed Fyerabras in the shadowe of  
a pynapple tree ferre out of the waye. and whan he wold  
haue fledde he sawe aboute hym wel x thousand sarasyns  
and sayd: "Alas! god Ihesus, my creatour, thou 24  
knowest myn entencyon. I requyre the to gyue me  
grace that I deye not at thys tyme present vnto the tyme  
that for the exaltacion of thy fayth I may be wyth Rol-  
land my felawe:" & in the name of Ihesus drewe out 28  
haultclere and came in to the waye, & the first that he  
recountred was the sone of the grettest lord that was  
there, and gaf hym suche a stroke that he clefted hym to  
the breste and [he] fyl doun dede. & Olyuer was abylded 32  
& delyuer, and took fro hym hys shielde whyche was al  
newe: for in the bataylle tofore maad he had loste hys,  
& also he had his spere & lete hys hors renne emonge

the myscreauntes. And atteyned at the fyrst stroke  
 Clorgys & smote hym vnto the hert. And in retorning<sup>r</sup>  
 he slewe thre sarasyns & they ranne tofore hym as sheep  
 4 tofore the wulf whiche is hongry. Thenne came on  
 hym marabas, Turgys, Sortybrant of conymbres, and  
 the kyng Margaris, and they cryed with an hye voys  
 to-gydre : " by Mahoun our god, thou frensshe man thou  
 8 shalt not escape vs ; kepe the wel <sup>1</sup>for by vs thou shalt  
 deye !" And thenne cam Olyuer emonge his enemyes and  
 smote and slewe on al sydes. And the sarsyns smote on  
 hym in suche wyse that it was grete meruaylle that he  
 12 was not slayne and ouercomen but by force of <sup>2</sup>shotte  
 and of strokes hys hors was slayn vnder hym. And  
 he beyng on the erthe as sone as he myght he aroos  
 and beyng afoot sette hys shelde tofore hym whyche he  
 16 had goten, and helde fast haultclere whyche was alle  
 hys comforte for to socoure hym. And alwaye whome  
 he raught fyl down and was slayn. It is not redde in  
 any book that euer any man so hurt as he was bare hym  
 20 so wel and dyd so grete portemente of armes.

He slays Clargys,  
and three others.

He is surrounded,

and his horse slain  
under him. (891)

He defends him-  
self bravely.

¶ How Olyuer was taken & blynfeld' pyteous-  
 ly, & myght not be socoured' by the  
 Frensshe men : ca. xvj <sup>3</sup>

24 **O** Lyuer was a[l]lone on fote emonge the sarasyns  
 ageynst whome he made grete resystence & mer-  
 uayllous : but it is not a thyng possyble that he  
 myght escape fro theyr handes, for wyth glaues, with  
 28 swerdes and with faus dartes of yron they pressyd hym  
 so sore that hys shelde was perced in <sup>4</sup>moo than xxx  
 places : & whan hys hauberk was broken & perced wyth  
 foure sharpe dartes they perced and wounded hym in  
 32 his body meruailously. Wherfore by veray force &  
 for feblesse he fyl to the erthe & there they took hym

His shield is  
broken, (896)  
his coat of mail  
cut to pieces.

He is overpower-  
ed, bound, &  
blindfolded. (906).

<sup>1</sup> D viij.    <sup>2</sup> Ed. and.    <sup>3</sup> Ed. xvij.    <sup>4</sup> col. 2.

moche outerageously, and after blynfelde hys eyen & bonde hym straytely soo that he myzt not see, ne wyst not where he was & they sette hym vpon a good hors & bonde hym surely. And whan thys valyaunt olyuer 4 was thus dyspourueyed fro al helpe, fro al syzt, fro al hope, and fro al comforte, it is good to wete that he was in grete desplaysaunce, For he knewe not what they wold doo wyth hym. Thenne wyth an hye voys by a compas- 8 syon of hert he sayd: "O Charlemayn kyng of noblesse Emperour of valure, where art thou now & knowest thou not where I am? seest thou not what I do? remembreth not me, Noble felawe Rolland? thou art 12 all a slepe. am I deaf or how I may not here the? is there none of you crysten that remembreth me?" These and suche other complayntes making the kyng Maradas sayd to hym: "Frensshe man, whatsomeuer 16 thou be thou spekest of folye, For I shal not ete tyl thou be hanged." These sarasyns ranne wyth olyuer, hys eyen blynfelde and hys hondes<sup>1</sup> straytly bounden, in the garde of four fals tyraunts. Thez ne vpon thys in 20 especyal came Rolland, Thyerry, & al the peres & charles hym self also, but thys was ouer late for to saue Olyuer. wyth grete cryes they cryed on god & on al the sayntes of heuen. And wyth grete Ire Rolland smote 24 Corsuble in the brest, Gherard of mondydyer came ayenst Turgys, Ogyer smote athenas, And Rychard Amanedys; Guy of bourgoyne atteyned brullant. There was none of the peres of fraunce but that ouer- 28 threwe hys man and made so grete dyscomfyte of the sarasyns that they were al empossed to holde them to-gyders and to goo theyr waye, but the other paynyns that conduyted Olyuer wente alwaye forth. And in 32 thys bataylle was slayn guyllam, gualtier, & other ynow of valyaunte peple & many other of the moien people & others, and laye on the grounde. And gherard de mon-

He cries on  
Charles for help,  
(912)

and on Roland.  
(913)

Maradas mocks  
him. (914)

Roland and the  
other douzperes  
charge the Sara-  
cens: (932)

each kills a Sara-  
cen. (945)

Guyllam, Gual-  
tier, and others  
are slain (968),  
and



- dydier, the sone of Duke Thyerry, and geffroy langeuyn they bonde dyligently to theyr horses & rode aweye wyth them hastely. but whan charles sawe theym thus  
 4 ladde for angre he loste almoost hys wytte, And wyth an hyghe voys cryed: "saue, kepe, and socoure the barons. O knyghtes desloyal, that ye be slowe! yf they lede awaye the barons <sup>1</sup>neuer shal ye fare wel." whan the  
 8 Frensshe men herde Charles thus moeued as enraged smote theyr horses wyth theyr spores and wente down of a mountayn. And there was Rolland fyrst that helde hys swerde durandall drawen for tauenge hym fyersly,  
 12 and hym that he atteyned was sure to passe by the deth. For he was al enraged by cause that they ledde awaye his felowe Olyuer, & smote a paynym that he clefte hym to the myddle of hys body. at that tyme  
 16 rolland bare hym myghtely: by cause of the multytude of the paynmys he myght not passe forth for to socoure the barons prysonners and chaced them more than v myle ferre & coude not approche them. & thenne  
 20 were many good knyghtes deed, morfounded, and wery. And not wythstondyng Rolland sware that he wold neuer retorne tyl the barons of fraunce were taken fro the handes of theyr enemyes. But he myght not do it,  
 24 For the nyght came on & wyst neuer whyther to goo. The sarasyns that were tofore went fleyng alwaye at theyr playsyr. ¶ Thys seyng Charles wyst not what he shold doo ne say, For he doubted that the paynmys  
 28 made a watche & a ryere garde for to close them, ¶ And therfore by force they must leue the felde in ryzt grete <sup>2</sup>dysplaysyr & anguysshe; and so al they retourned.
- The second' partye of the second' book conteyneth xvij chapytres & speketh of the tormente of the barons of fraunce, & how they that were taken spaken to ballant thadmyral of spayne.

Gerard and Geofrey taken prisoners. (973)

The French try to rescue them. (982)

Roland in the front.

They chase them for more than five miles,

till night came on, (1013)

when they were compelled to turn back. (1020)

<sup>1</sup> col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> E j.

¶ How Fyerabras was founden by Charles,  
and after was baptysed' and' heled' of his  
wonde : ca. primo

On his way back  
to the camp  
Charles finds  
Fierabras lying  
under a tree.  
(1037)  
He reproaches  
him.

**A**fter that charles knew that he myght not haue 4  
ageyn Olyuer ne the other prysoners it was force to  
hym to retorne wyth hys people for the nyght was  
thezne to them greuous ; & also in retornynge they  
fonde fyerabras vnder a tre languysshynge, to whom þe 8  
kyng said : O vnhappy paynym, I ouzt wel to hate the  
for by the been my men prysonners and loste. thou hast  
take fro me oliuer one of the best byloued that I had  
emonge al thumayn creatures : hym þat hath be synguler 12  
to mayntene my good name. & by the in the ende in  
stede of Ioye thou yeldest me sorowe." whan fyerabras  
vnderstode hym he sore syghed & sayd : "O ryche  
emperour & noble, the moost myghty of human lygnage, 16  
In thonour of <sup>1</sup>god I crye the mercy & pardone me.  
It is trouthe that Olyuer hath conquerd me, I shal not  
hyde it, and I haue promysed hym that I shal be  
crystned. I haue left & forsaken al my goddes and yelde 20  
me to Ihesus the creatour of the world. And I requyre  
the yet that I may be baptysed, and yf I were heled of  
my woundes I shal enhaunce to my power the crysten  
fayth & many sarasyns shal be maad crysten ; and by 24  
my moyan the holy sepulcre & the holy reliques shal  
be delyuerd, for whome ye take grete payne and  
trauaylle. And also I make an oth to you by god in  
whom I now byleue that I am more heuy & sory for 28  
Olyuer that noble knyzt whiche is taken prysonner  
than I am for my body whyche is mortally wounded, &  
by the grace of god we shal haue hym ones ; wherfore  
conclude we that I be crystened, For yf I deye sarasyn 32  
it shal be to you reproche." ¶ And vpon thys Charles,  
whyche had grete compassyon on hym, made hym to be  
borne in to hys lodgyng by his barons. and whan they

Fierabras begs for  
mercy, (1042)

promises to be-  
come Christian,  
(1046)

and to give up the  
holy relics. (1056)

Charles has pity  
on him and causes  
him to be carried  
to the camp.  
(1067)

- saw hym so hugely membred<sup>t</sup> they al were abasshed of  
his gretenes and<sup>t</sup> largenes, for whan he was vnarmed<sup>t</sup> he  
was one of the semelyest men that euer was. ¶ And<sup>t</sup>  
4 al the Frensshe men gaf grete loes and<sup>t</sup> honour <sup>1</sup>to  
Olyuer that had<sup>t</sup> foughten & ouercomen suche a man;  
and as he was vnclothed<sup>t</sup> partye of hys woundes opened<sup>t</sup>  
and<sup>t</sup> began to blede wherof hys hert faylled & fyl down  
8 a-swoune, & rolland<sup>t</sup> anone lyfte hym vp. And in al  
haste they made redy a fonte, & sente for tha[r]che-  
bysshop Turpyn and Naymes, which were moche Ioyous  
of this that the paynym shold<sup>t</sup> be crystend<sup>t</sup>. & after that  
12 the baptesme was redy the godfaders gaf hym another  
name & was named floren, (but as longe as he lyued<sup>t</sup> he  
was called<sup>t</sup> Fyerabras,) and thenne he was layed in a  
bedde honourable. And<sup>t</sup> at the laste ende of hys dayes  
16 he was a saynt and<sup>t</sup> god shewed<sup>t</sup> for hym myracles, and  
is now called<sup>t</sup> Saynt Floren of Roye. And thenne  
anone charles made hym to be vysyted<sup>t</sup> by his medycynes  
& surgyens wel expert, & sercheden al his woundes, and  
20 as god wolde they fonde none of his bowellys entamed  
ne hurt, wherfore the leches were sure for to delyuer  
hym al hole wythin ij monethes next after comyng<sup>t</sup>.  
In makyng thys vysytacion the Emperour charles was  
24 present & sayd<sup>t</sup> to fyerabras: "yf now olyuer & the  
other barons were here present tofore the we shold<sup>t</sup> wel  
be contente." And charles was thenne al pencyf and  
heuy moche thynkyng<sup>t</sup> vpon hys ba<sup>2</sup>-rons prysoners, but  
28 he maad<sup>t</sup> no more semblaunte.

All the French  
admire his size  
and figure. (1076)

He is baptised  
and named  
Floren. (1087)

After his death he  
became a Saint.

Charles orders his  
own physicians  
to attend to him.  
(1092)

They assure him  
that Fierabras  
will be well in  
2 months. (1097)

¶ How Olyuer & his felowes were presented'  
to ballant thadmyral and' cruelly passyoned  
in pryson: capitulo ij

- 32 **T**He Sarasyns after they had the barons of fraunce  
tofore named for prysoners they taryed<sup>t</sup> not but  
ranne tyl they came in to a ryche cytee named<sup>t</sup>

The Saracens  
carry Oliver  
and the other  
prisoners to  
Algreimore. (1114)

<sup>1</sup> E j, back.

<sup>2</sup> col. 2.

Balan enquires  
what tidings they  
bring. (1124)

Brillant tells  
him of their  
defeat, (1129)

and of Oliver's  
victory over  
Fierabras. (1132)

Balan laments  
over his son,  
(1134)

and threatens to  
smash his gods.

Agrymore ; and at the entre of the sayd cyte they  
sowned and blewe vp trumpes makyn<sup>g</sup> grete bruyt.  
whan ballant thadmyral, fader of Fyerabras, sawe them  
he came vnto them & fonde there brillant of mommyer, 4  
to whome he sayd : " O brillant my frende, telle to vs of  
your tydynges, how ye haue borne you in my warre and  
affayres. haue ye taken Charles the emperour whyche so  
moche is redoubted, & his peres of fraunce be they 8  
dyscomfyted?" Brillant sayd to hym : " O syradmyral,  
the tydynges that I brynge you been alle otherwyse,  
and of lasse valewe than ye say. by Charles the kyng  
we haue been almoost defeated and dyscomfyted. For 12  
of hys puyssaunce it is a meruayllous thyng. Fyerabras  
your sone is with hym vaynquysshed by one of his  
barons and is made crysten, & he was taken vayn-  
quysshed & dyscomfyted in loyal batayl without doyn<sup>g</sup> 16  
ony treson." <sup>1</sup>whan thadmyral vnderstode this he fyl to  
therthe al in a traunse, And or he came ageyn to hys  
mynde it was a grete whyle for the sorowe that he had  
of hys sone. and whan he was releued he cryed wyth an 20  
hye voys : " O dolaunt vnhappy that I am ! ha ! poure  
caytyf ! what shal bycome of me ? O Fyerabras, my  
ryght dere sone and heyer, whyther art thou gone ?  
Fro whens cometh thys trespaas ? wherfore were thou 24  
taken whyche neuer in bataylle were wery ne had re-  
proche ? ¶ O what euyl tydynges been brought to me  
of the ! yf he be crysten I am sory that he lyueth : I  
had moche leuer that he were dysmembred and put to 28  
deth : " & thenne as a man feble for sorowe fyl down to the  
grounde and cryed : " O brillant of mommyere, what is  
betyd of the noble kyng of Cordube and of my neuewe  
bruchart ? sythe my sone fyerabras the ledar and captayn 32  
of all, yf it be trewe that he be lost I shal smyte oute  
the brayne of Mahomet the god whiche hath promysed  
to me so moche good, to whome I haue gyuen my self  
and yolden." Thus sayeng alle in a rage he tormented



hym self greuously vpon the grounde.<sup>1</sup> And whan  
 thadmyral was a lytel coled of hys grete yre He de-  
 maunded of Brullant: "whiche is the knyzt that hath  
 4 vaynquys-<sup>2</sup>shed fyerabras my sone?" brullant answerd:  
 "Syr admyrall, your sone hath be conquerd by yonde  
 knyght:" in shewyng Olyuer whiche was so fayr & wel  
 formed & membred & had emonge al other his eyen  
 8 bended. Now anone sayd thadmyral of spayn: "hye  
 you & brynge hym to me for I shal neuer ete tyl he be  
 dysmembred." whan the frenssh men vnderstode that  
 he wold do put Olyuer to deth, whiche was al theyr  
 12 comferte, begonne to wepe greuously, & olyuer whiche  
 vnderstode it sawe them waylle he recomforted them  
 sayeng, in suche manere that the sarasyns wyst not  
 what they sayd, "My lordes & my brethern, ye knowe  
 16 our necessite, yf thadmyral myzt know that we be of  
 the peres of fraunce our lyues shal be sone termyned,  
 for no thyng shal he take pyte of vs but that we shal  
 deye shamefully. wherfor I praye you that we al say as  
 20 I shal begynne:" to whome alle the other frensshe men  
 prysonniers dyd consente, & wold say & do lyke as he  
 counceyllled them. after that thadmyral had comanded  
 them to come tofore hym the paynymys vnarmed them  
 24 & bonde faste theyr hondes & blynfelde theyr eyen,  
 wherof they were moche greued & daungerously hurt:  
 & anon thadmyral furiously demaunded olyuer: "þou  
 frenssh man, beware that þou<sup>3</sup> lye not but say to me the  
 28 trouthe how thou arte named & hyde it not." Olyuer  
 ansuerd & sayd: "syr, I am named eugynes, sone vnto  
 a yeman of poure lygnage, and was borne in lorayne &  
 cam on a tyme to the courte of Charles emperour,  
 32 whiche gaf to me armes & after adoubed me knyght:  
 & also my felawes that ye see tofore you ben poure  
 knyghtes aduenturous & haue enterprysed payne to  
 serue our kyng, by cause þat by our seruyce we myzt  
 be auaunced & haue somme good guerdon & rewarde."

Balan enquires  
 which of the  
 French knights  
 overcame Fiera-  
 bras. (1144)

Bruillant points  
 out Oliver. (1146)

Oliver warns his  
 companions not  
 to tell their  
 names. (1155)

Balan demands  
 Oliver's name.  
 (1166)

Oliver answers,  
 "Eugynes, the  
 son of a poor  
 yeoman," (1168)

and says that all  
 his companions  
 are poor knights.  
 (1171)

<sup>1</sup> *Et*. groude.

<sup>2</sup> col. 2.

<sup>3</sup> E ij, back.

Balan is vexed at this, (1172)

and orders his chamberlain to bind the French

to a pillar that he may shoot at them.

Bruillant interposes, and reminds him that the day is far gone,

and, moreover, Charles might give Fierabras in exchange for the prisoners. (1181)

Balan assents, and orders them to prison. (1184)

“O Mahoun,” sayd thadmyral, “now I am wel deceyued. I supposed by my god that I had had fyue of the valyaunttest erles of fraunce & of the grettest, & thought I had the kayes of fraunce by the moyen of these 4 barons,” & anone called barbacas his chamberlayn and sayd to hym anone: “depresshe the, take these frensshe men and despoyle them & bynde them harde to that pyler & after brynge me my dartes wel sharked wyth yron, & I shal shote at them and smyte hem at my playsyr.” thenne aroos brullant & sayd: “syr admyral, I praye you that at thys tyme that ye do not that enterpryse, for it shal not be wel doo. ye see wel that it is in the euen- 12 tyde & ouer late to do Iustyce, & so ye myght be blamed, seen that your seynorye ne your lor<sup>1</sup>des be not here now present. wherfore I praye you that at thys tyme ye do no thyng to them tyl to-morowe atte houre that 16 eche man knowe it, & your Iugement shal the better be approued. For I knowe wel that they haue deserued it wel euydently. And on that other syde yf charles the emperour wold yelde ageyn to you Fyerabras your 20 sone wyth his good wylle ye myght semblably remyse to hym these frenssh men that ye now haue.” “for your loue,” sayd thadmyral, “I am contente,” and sente for Brutamont whych was kepar of the pryson, and gaf 24 to hym grete charge to kepe the frensshe men and that he be wel sure of them, and that he sette them in suche place for to lerne how they haue wrought folylly for to come it to hys kepyng. 28

¶ Of the pryson wherin that the Frensshe men were lodged, And how they were vysyted by the fayre Florypes doughter of the admyral, and of the beaulte of hyr: ca. iij 32

AFTER that ballant thadmyral of Spayne had commaunded that the Frensshe men were sette in

- greuous pry<sup>1</sup>son brutamont the geayler made Olyuer & his felawes to auale down in to a pryson moche daungerous, whyche was so depe and strait in the grounde  
 4 that no lyzt myght be seen: in the which were put & nourysshed serpentes, crapauldes, and other beestes venemous and detestable; in whyche place al stenche was comprysed. and there passed a streme of the salte  
 8 see whiche had hys entree wythout conduyt, by whiche water myght one passe whan the tyde was passed. & or the kepar of the pryson went he blynfeld them & shiet the dore aboue them, & they beyng in this fylthe  
 12 and stenche anon the water came so habundantly that the poure frenssh men were in the water vnto their sholdres. Thenne the woundes of olyuer began to smerte by cause of the salte water that it perced hys  
 16 hert. ye may wel thynke the payne was grete, But in especyal of olyuer, which was hurt mortally in many places & had grete necessaryte of remedye, & he was in a place where al his paynes were renewed & his woundes  
 20 opened: for anon as he felte hym bayned in the salte water he fyl down a swoune & had be dede that tyme ne had be gherard de mondydyer who susteyned hym. & ye may demaunde me how they were not drowned  
 24 seeyng that the water grewe alwaye. <sup>2</sup>ye shal vnderstonde that in that pryson of aduenture were two grete pylers wel xv fote hye vpon whiche by grete force they gate vp olyuer which myzt not helpe hym. & whan  
 28 olyuer was sette therupon in grete anguysshe he waylled & sayd: "o poure man & vnhappy put vnder by fals fortune! O Reyner my dere fader, for goddes sake what do ye? knowe ye where I am? thynke ye what I make?  
 32 knowe ye my sorowe? ye shal neuer see me." this sayeng & other lamentable wordes of desolacyon the valyaunt man Gherard sayd to hym: "Syr oliuer, wayle nomore: vnto suche a knyght as ye be. it apperteyneth

Brutamont takes the French knights to a deep dungeon,

full of serpents and other creatures. (1195)

The tide rises as high as their shoulders.

The salt water causes Oliver's wounds to smart.

They save themselves from drowning by climbing a pillar.

Oliver laments over his fate.

Gerard cheers him,

<sup>1</sup> E iij.

<sup>2</sup> col. 2.

not to make suche complainte. reioyce we our self &  
 traiste we in god, whych I wold it plesed that now we  
 and wishes he had that be here were aboue at large al armed & eche a good  
 his sword, swerde in his hande onely: for I make a vowe to god 4  
 and could get at the Saracens. that or we shold be put in to this pytte vaynquysshed  
 I shold put to deth iijC sarasyns or moo." the frensshe  
 Floripas hears their cries and groans. (1202) men beyng' on these pylers of marble afore sayd in  
 suche wyse sayeng & other wordes Florypes the syster 8  
 of fyerabras & doughter of thadmyrall herd them & had  
 grete compassyon of þ<sup>e</sup> complayntes that Olyuer made.  
 She is young and well made: this douzter was yonge & not maryed, was wel comprysed  
 with lips like a rose in May: of body; resonable of lengthe, <sup>1</sup>whyte & rody as rose in 12  
 maye. hyr heyre was shynying as the fyne golde, & hir  
 vysage termyned in lytel of lengthe: and hyr chere  
 her eyes like a falcon's: lawhyng, hyr eyen clere as fawcon mued, & sparklyng  
 lyke ij sterres. the vysage had she deuysed moche egally, 16  
 her nose strait whiche was wel semely; the ij browes  
 whiche were aboue the eyen appyeryng made shadowe;  
 hyr chekys rounde, whyte as the flour de lys, a lytel  
 her mouth small: tyssued with reed; & vnder the nose was her mouth 20  
 roundette, enhaunced in competent space, fro the chynne  
 al wel proporcyoned to the remenaunte of the hede:  
 with litel sholdres strayte & egalle: & tofore aboue the  
 her shoulders straight, and her gyrdle hir pappes were reysed after the facyon of ij 24  
 breasts like two apples. apples, rounde and euen as the coppe of a l[i]tel mon-  
 tain. And she was cladde wyth a robe of purple  
 meruayllously ryche fylled & pouldred with sterres of  
 fyn golde, whyche was made of one of the fayrre, & it 28  
 was of grete vertu for the persone that had it myght  
 neuer be poysoned of herbe ne of venym. And florypes  
 So fair is she that a sight of her would satisfy a man who had  
 fasted 3 or 4 days. was so fayre wyth hyr abyllments that yf a persone  
 had fasted iij or iiij dayes with out etyng, & he myght 32  
 see hyr he shold be replenysshed & fylled. & more ouer  
 she bare a mantell whiche was made in the yle of colchos  
 Her mantle was made by a fairy at Colchoa. of a woman of the fay-<sup>2</sup>rye (there as Iason gate the

<sup>1</sup> E iij, back.<sup>2</sup> col. 2.



- fliese of golde, as it is redde in the destructyon of troye  
 almoost at the begynnyng) whiche mantel had so swete  
 an odour that it was meruaylle. wherfor of the beaulte  
 4 of this damoyssel eche man meruaylled. & as I haue said  
 tofore she had wel herde the complaynt of the frensshe  
 men in pryson & in especyal of Olyuer of whome she  
 had grete pyte, and departed fro hyr chambre with xij  
 8 maydens hir subgettes, & entred first in to the halle  
 where as the paynyms were moche desolate for fyerabras  
 whiche was taken & many other grete lordes whiche  
 were deed. & whan the doughter had demaunded  
 12 tydynges they tolde hyr þat hir broder fyerabras was  
 taken & vaynquysshed; wherfore anone she made a  
 grete crye and syghed for anguysshe. thenne was al the  
 sorowe renewed for hyr sake emonge them, & whan she  
 16 had cessyd a lytel of wepyng she sente anone for brutamont  
 & sayd to hym, "what be they that I haue herde  
 speke in the pryson that ben so sorouful?" ¶ "Madame,"  
 said the porter, "they be frenssh men longyng to  
 20 Charles the Kyng whiche neuer cesse to destroye our  
 lawe, slee our peple, repreue our creaunce, and sette a  
 nought our goddes: & haue ben aydyng to slee Fyerabras  
 your broder. emong whom ther is one of grete  
 24 valure whyche is one of the best made men that euer  
 was knowen, and hath ben so myghty that he conquerd  
 in loyal batayl Fyerabras." Anone florypes had enuye  
 to here hym speke & sayd to brutamont: "I wyl speke  
 28 with hem; come and opene the pryson, for I wyl  
 knowe of theyr fayt." brutamont answerd and sayd:  
 "Madame, ye shal pardonne me: ye may not see them  
 by cause of the fylthe and dyschoneste of the place: it  
 32 apperteyneth not to you. and on that other syde your  
 fader hath deffended me that noo persone shal approche  
 the pryson. And I remembre me now wel that oftymes  
 by a woman I have knowen somme shamed & deceyued."

Floripas enters  
her father's hall,

and is told of her  
brother's capture.

She asks Brutamont who the  
prisoners are.  
(1216)  
He tells her. (1219)

Floripas wishes to  
see and speak with  
them, (1226)

but Brutamont  
refuses to open  
the door. (1223)

Floripas is enraged, (1234)

and with a staff

strikes him on the head and kills him, (1251) and throws him into the dungeon. (1257)

Floripas opens the door,

and asks the prisoners who they are. (1266)

Oliver answers her. (1268)

Floripas offers to release them if they will promise to do what she wishes. (1280)

Oliver promises. (1284)

whan floripes vnderstood she was for angre almoost fro  
 hyr self and sayd to hym : " O euyl glouton despytous,  
 oughtest thou to yeue me suche langage? I promyse  
 the that I shal make the to be payed shortly," & called 4  
 hyr chamberlayn whyche gaf to hyr a staffe, and she  
 made semblaunte to opene the pryson and brutamont  
 gaynsayed it, & sodeynly she, seying the porter wyth-  
 stonde hyr, gaf hym suche a stroke on the vysage pat 8  
 she made hys eyen flee oute of his heed, & after he fyl  
 doun & there she slew hym & threwe hym wythout  
 knowyng of the sarasyns in to the pryson where the  
 frensshe <sup>1</sup>men were : wherof they were sore aferde and 12  
 abasshed whan they herd hym, wenyng to them that it  
 had be the deuyl which wold haue tempted & deceyued  
 them. Thenne anone florypes dyd doo lyght a torche &  
 dyd do open the pryson & put in the lyght tofore hyr for 16  
 to see the prysonners, & cam nyghe to the pyler & sayd  
 to them : ¶ " O ye lordes, telle to me what ye ar & how  
 ye be named : hyde ye no thyng fro me." Olyuer  
 ansuerd & said : " My fayr lady, we ben of fraunce & 20  
 men of charlemayns, & haue ben brougt hyther to thad-  
 myral, which hath comaunded vs to be here in thys cruel  
 prison : & moche better were it for vs that he dyd vs to  
 be dysmembred & dye than tabyde in this place." the 24  
 curtoys florypes, not-withstandyng pat she was not  
 crystened, had so grete noblesse & so grete compassyon  
 and said to them : " I promyse you that I shal put you  
 out of this pryson, so that ye promette & swere that ye 28  
 shal helpe me to that that I shal say to you." Olyuer  
 ansuerd : " therof, madame, I you assure, & that ye  
 shal fynde vs all suche by effecte as ye shal desyre, &  
 faythful & trewe. For neuer were we other ne neuer 32  
 shal be. & be ye sure that we shall neuer fayle you as  
 longe as we shall haue lyf in our bodyes, so pat we be  
 furnysshed of armes & been <sup>2</sup>aboue for to meddle wyth

<sup>1</sup> col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> E iij, back.

the sarasyns, I shal make to them a grete dyscomfyte."

"vassal," sayd the doughter, "ye may auaunte you ouer moche: yet ye be there and wel ferre for to be oute

Floripas begs him to be quiet. (1293)

4 and yet menace ye them that ben at theyr lyberte. It is better a man wysely to be style than folysshly to speke." Gherard sayd to the lady: "Damoyssel, I shal saye to you one worde. he that is deteyned and strongly

Gerard excuses him. (1296)

8 empessed singeth gladly for to forge the payne and melancholye." And Floripes byhelde gherard the curtoys whyche excused Olyuer of that whyche he spake ouer hardyly, but thys was not grete meruaylle.

12 For of the Ioye that olyuer had whan the lady said to hym that they shold be put oute of pryson hym thought thenne to be out and armed at his free wylle. But the lady sayd to gherard: ¶ "In trouthe, syr, ye can wel

Floripas compliments Gerard. (1302)

16 say and excuse your felowe redyly. And I byleue veryly that ye can wel playe with maydens of eage in somme chaumbre vnder curteynes & dysporte you in loue: I trowe ye knowe how and what maner." Guillan  
20 the scot answerd and sayd: "by my sowle, madame, ye say soth, & of hym ye haue wel deuyned: for fro hens vnto iijC myle ye shal not fynde hys pere.

1 ¶ How the frensshe men were put oute<sup>2</sup> of  
24 pryson and were vysyted by the noble mayde Floripes and of the beaulte of hyr chaumbre: capitulo iiiij

28 **W**Han the fayr Florypes had spoken at hir playsyr wyth the barons prysonners she called hir chamberlayn and made hym to brynge a corde & a staffe bounden ouerthwart, & after lete it down. And whan  
the frensshe men sawe it they made fyrst Olyuer to goo  
32 vp, & the lady and hyr chamberleyn drewe hym vp by grete force: & after that the other wente vp lyghtly

Floripas sends for a rope,

and with it draws up Oliver,

and the others after.

<sup>1</sup> col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> Ed. outo.

Floripas leads them by an old disused passage to her chamber, (1319)

which was built by Methusaleh.

It stands on a rock surrounded by the sea, (1332)

and has a wonderful garden.

Maragond, Floripas' governess, recognises Oliver and the other French knights, (1352)

and threatens to tell the Emir. (1358)

Floripas pitches her out of the window. (1369)

ynough. and after she ledde them by an olde gate and secrete, and wythoute knowyng of ony paynym she made them to entre in to hyr chambre, wherof thentre was made meruayllously after the sarasyns werke. 4  
 About the chyef yate was made by grete scyence the heuen & the sterres, the sonne, the mone, the tyme of somer & of wynter; wodes, montaynes, byrdes, beestes, & fysshe were there paynted of all fygures and lykenesse by meruayllous facyon: & after somme scriptures the sone of mathusale dyd do make it. And thys chambre stood vpon a blacke rocke al enuyrouned wyth the see, and in one of the quarters <sup>1</sup>was a gardyn <sup>12</sup>pretoyre meruayllously fayr wherin floures ne fruytes faylled neuer, & there of al maladyes and sekenesses sauf onely of the maladye of deth was founden comforte and good helpe. There within grewe mandegloyre. 16  
 And with the fayre Floripes were in the gallerye these ladyes, Clarmondyne, florette, Florymonde, & many other fayr vyrgynes. And hir maistresse named maragonde sayd to Florypes: "A, madame, I knowe wel <sup>20</sup>these frensshe men. yonder goodly man that ye there see is Olyuer, whyche is sone to Reyner of genes and broder to Audeyne, one of the fayrest that is borne of a woman. And thys is he that hath vaynquysshed fyera- <sup>24</sup>bras thy broder. & that other is gherard of Mondidier, which oftymes hath be praysed & honoured. And there is willyam de scot: & the camuse whyche is the hyndmest is geffroy langeuyn. but I praye to my god <sup>28</sup>mahomet that he curse me yf I euer ete or drynke tyl I haue tolde your fader my lord thadmyrall." Floripes anone chaunged al her colour whan she herde these wordes, & moche secretly she reteyned hyr Ire ayenst <sup>32</sup>hyr & called thys woman to hir by the wyndowe, & gaf hyr so grete a stroke that she fyl to the grounde: and called her varlet whyche cam to <sup>2</sup>hyr prestly and threwe

<sup>1</sup> E v.

<sup>2</sup> col. 2.



- the woman in to the see. For Florypes redoubted moche hyr fader & his malyce. & whan thys olde woman tombled in to the see Florypes sayd to hyr :
- 4 ¶ “Now goo, thou olde & despytous wretche; thou hast thy guerdon. I am now sure that the frensshe men that ben here ne shal neuer be encombrede ne in daunger by the.” and herof the barons made grete loye ;
- 8 & thenne Floripes the noble lady came vnto the Frensshe men and kyssede them swetely, & whan she sawe oliuer, whyche was al bloody, and knewe wel that he was hurte she sayde to hym : “Syr Olyuer, ne doubte ye not for
- 12 I shal rendre you anone al hole and in good helthe :” & wente to the mandegloyre and took a lytel : & anone as oliuer had vsede it he was al hole & reduced in to good helthe. The barons beyng in this noble chambre
- 16 anone had good fyre, and after were fette to the table and wel pourueyed of al good vytaylle and delicyous metes, of whyche they had grete nede by cause of the grete hungre that they thenne had endured. and after
- 20 mete they had the baynes chauffed, And thenne they bayned and refayted them at theyr ease ; and at the comyng out of theyr baynes they were wel adoubed wyth mantels ryche of sylke & golde broudrede. & thenne
- 24 Floripes sayde : “lordes barons, ye knowe wel how I haue put my self in grete daunger to brynge you oute of pryson mortal, and ye be here in surete as ferre as no man hath herde vs. For yf of aduenture it were
- 28 knowen it shold turne vs to euyl. I am not in doubte Olyuer whyche is here present hath ouercomen my brother, to whome naturelly I ought to do reproof. I knowe you wel alle, be ye nothyng abashed : ye knowe
- 32 wel that ye haue promysed that my secrete shal be hydde emonge you.” and after the sayde Florypes sayde : “lordes, I shal say to you there is a knyght in fraunce<sup>2</sup> whome I haue longe tyme loued : he is named guy of

The French knights are delighted. (1374)

Floripas sees the blood from Oliver's wound, (1380)

and heals him with a draught. (1389)

The knights are supplied with food, baths, and clothes. (1395)

Floripas reminds them of what she has done for them. (1396)

Floripas tells them she has long loved Guy of Burgundy, (1411)

<sup>1</sup> E v, back.

<sup>2</sup> *Ed.* franuce.

whom she had  
seen first at Rome  
with Lucifer,  
(1414) and over-  
came him.

For his sake she is  
willing to become  
a Christian. (1423)

Gerard says they  
will do anything  
if she will give  
them arms.

Floripas gives  
them a damsel  
a-piece.

All this was very  
noble of Floripas,  
but shows the  
natural curiosity  
of women,

bourgoyne, whiche is the moost godelyest man that I knowe & is of the parentage of Charlemayn & of the myzty Rolland. ¶ On a tyme when I was at Rome I sawe hym, & sythe that tyme I haue gyuen to hym myn 4 hert. when my fader the admyral destroyed Rome, lucafar of bandas which was moche redoubteð emonge the Paynymys & the sayð guy of bourgoyne Iusteden togyder, but the sayð guy valyauntly smote hym down to 8 the erthe from hys hors, whyche moche plesyd me, And took in gree the valyaunce of hym in suche wyse that yf I haue <sup>1</sup>hym not to husbond I shal neuer marye. And for the loue of hym I wyl be baptysed 12 & byleue in the god of crysten men." With these wordes the frensshe men were moche Ioyous, and gyuen grete thankynges to god for the good wylle of thys fayre mayde. and Gherard de mondydyer sayd to hyr : 16 "Madame, I swere to you that yf we now were armed & were in the halle emonge the sarasyns we shold make on them a grete dyscomfyture." But florypes was wyse and sayd : "lordes, late vs thynke wysely on our 20 affayres. And sythe that ye be in surete take a litel reste. Loo, here vj maydens of grete noblesse : Eche of you take one for hys owne, for the better to passe wyth the tyme : & reste and take your playsyr, And I 24 shal warante you. For as for myself I shal neuer haue to do with man but wyth Guy of bourgoyne to whome I haue gyuen my herte." Neuertheles for to consyder wel this chapytre there was a grete werke comprysed 28 whan fyrst florypes the curtoys which was a paynym had desyre to speke wyth the frensshe men. alle this toucheth wel the desyre & wylle of wymmen for to knowe newe thynges and tydynges, but as moche as 32 touched the werke that she dyd ayenst the kepar of the pryson & how they were taken <sup>2</sup>oute That was the werke of a man wel approued, and it had ben grete

<sup>1</sup> col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> E vj.

damage yf these barons had abyden in pryson. But the  
 fayth of persones doth grete alegement of tormente, for  
 the sayntes of heuen by theyr holy fayth haue obteyned  
 4 heuen, and many other terryen men victorie of theyr  
 enemyes. and wyth good ryght he that fyghteth for the  
 fayth, and it happe that he be deteyned, the mercy of  
 god is nyghe for to delyuer hym. The cause wherfore  
 8 they were delyuerd fro pryson was come fro ferre, that  
 was of rome, for guy of bourgoyne whome she had in  
 loue, and was contente for to be baptysed and byleue in  
 god for to haue the sayd guy in maryage to hyr hus-  
 12 bond. wherfore it may not wel be comprysed how loue  
 in thys damoyssel was fyxed and comprysed of longe  
 affectyon, the which was cause of sauynge of the pry-  
 soners whyche were, as I haue sayd, in grete daunger.

and the knights  
 had to thank her  
 love for Guy for  
 their release.

16 ¶ How kyng' charles sente to Ballant thad-  
 myral, seuen peres of Fraunce whyche  
 wold' not haue goon : capitulo v

20 **T**He Duc of genes, fader of Olyuer, which myzt not  
 slepe ne ete ne drinke for the sorowe that he  
 had for <sup>1</sup>his sone, whan he myght no lenger  
 endure, he came to kyng charles, and sayd to hym :  
 "Syr Emperour, for the loue of god haue pyte on me !  
 24 ye knowe my sorowe : ought I to lose olyuer my sone,  
 for whome I am in contynuell anguysshe ? yf I haue  
 none other tydynges, I shal deye or ij dayes of melan-  
 colye, or of force I must put my self on the waye to goo  
 28 thyder." whan charles vnderstode hym, he was moeued  
 and full of compassyon for the melancolye of Reyner,  
 & sente for Rolland and sayd to hym : "Fayre neuewe  
 rolland, vnderstonde me. To-morne in the mornynge  
 32 thou must goo to Aygremore, & shalt say to ballant  
 thadmyral wythoute ony hydyng, that he delyuer to the

Reyner is in great  
 grief for his son,  
 (1423)

and says he must  
 go and find him.  
 (1431)

Charles tells  
 Roland that he  
 must go to Balan,  
 the next morning,

<sup>1</sup> e vj, col. 2.

and demand from  
him the relics and  
the release of his  
prisoners. (1436)

Roland remon-  
stratee,

as also does  
Naymes. (1446)

Charles says  
Naymes shall go  
too. (1452)

Basyn protests,  
and Charles orders  
him to go also,  
(1458)  
and likewise  
Terry, (1472)

Ogier, (1480)

Richard of Nor-  
mandy, (1460)

and Guy of Bur-  
gundy, (1488)

the crowne of Ihesu cryst & the other relyques for  
which I haue taken grete payne : And after aske of  
hym my barons whom he holdeth in pryson. And yf  
he wythsaye the, say to hym that I shal hym do be 4  
drawen vylaynously, & after hange hym by the necke,  
his eye[n] bounden as a theef." whan he had said, Rol-  
land answerd : " Syr kyng and fayre vncle, haue mercy  
on me ! I am wel sure that yf I goo, verayly I shal 8  
neuer see you." ¶ The duke naymes was there, whyche  
sayd : " syr emperour, take hede what ye doo. Rolland  
is your neuewe ; ye knowe of what <sup>1</sup> valewe he is of. yf  
he goo thyder, he shal neuer come ageyn." " And I 12  
assure you," sayd Charles, " that ye shal goo wyth hym,  
and bere my letters that I sende to thadmyral." Thys  
sayd, Basyn the genewey came forth, and sayd to hym :  
" & how, syr, wyl ye thus lese your knyghtes ? I am 16  
certayn that yf they goo as ye haue sayd, that there shal  
not one retorne." ¶ Charles sware by his eyen in his  
heed, that basyn shold goo wyth the other tweyne, and  
so ther shal be thre. Thyerry, duc of ardayne, sayd 20  
lyke to thother ; therfore he was ordeyned to goo also.  
Ogyer the danoys semblably sayd they ought not goo ;  
and therfore he was ordeyned to bere them felywshyp.  
Rychard of Normandy came to the emperour and 24  
sayd : " Syr kyng, I am al abasshed how ye haue noo  
pyte of your knyghtes, whyche wyllngly ye wyl make  
them to deye. I wote wel yf they goo thyder, ye haue  
lost them." " by the god on whome I byleue," sayd 28  
charles, " ye shal goo wyth the other ; and thenne shal  
ye be vj for to bere my letters to ballant thadmyral  
whome I soo moche hate." And after, he behelde guy  
of bourgoyne, and sayd to hym : " come to me : ye are my 32  
cosyn, and of my next parentage ; ye shall be the seuenth  
for to doo my message to thadmyral of spayne. <sup>2</sup> And  
ye shal say to hym that I purpose to baptyse hym, &

<sup>1</sup> e vj, back.

<sup>2</sup> e vj, back, col. 2.



that he holde of me his Royame, hys townes and hys  
 cytees, & that he delyuer to me the relyques for whome  
 I take on me soo grete payne and trauaylle. And yf he  
 4 gaynsaye it, say ye to hym that I shal doo hange hym,  
 and make to dye vylaynously." "alas!" sayd Guy of Guy begs off,  
but in vain.  
 bourgoyne, "ryght dere syr and emperour, I knowe now  
 wel that ye wyl lese me. yf I goo, I am sure I shal neuer  
 8 retorne." & thenne at euen they went al to souper.  
 And on the morne, assone as the sonne aroos, the seuen  
 barons aforesayd came tofore Charles, And syr Naymes  
 said for them al: "Emperour of noblesse, redoubted in  
 12 al places, we been here for tobeye thy commaundement.  
 We praye the that thou gyue vs lycence and congie for  
 to departe; & yf there be ony persone here present, or in  
 al thexcersyte, that hath trespaced to vs, we pardonne  
 16 hym, & semblably yf we haue offended to ony, In  
 thonour of god that it be pardonned to vs." with these  
 wordes all the frensshe men that were present began to  
 wepe for pyte. And charles sayd to the barons:  
 20 "Ryght dere and wel byloued, vnto god of heuen I  
 commaunde you; and the meryte of his holy passyon  
 and of the holy crosse be in your ayde & comfort."  
 And so they departed on theyr waye hastily, transport- who commends  
them to God,  
 24 yng them vnto the straunge contreye. and so they  
depart. (1503)

¶ How the admyral sente xv kynges sarasyns  
 to Charles for to haue ageyn fyerabras,  
 which were recountred by the peres of  
 28 fraunce, and' slayn: capitulo vj

**I**N aygremore was thenne ballant thadmyral, al  
 sorowful and angry, & had sente for xv kynges sara- Balan calls a  
council. (1512)  
 32 syns for to haue theyr counceyll, whiche at hys  
 commaundement came: & one maradas, the moost fyerce  
 of the xv, spake fyrst to ballant and sayd: "Syr admyral, Maradas asks

why they have  
been called toge-  
ther. (1516)

Balan tells them  
that they must go  
the next morning  
to Mormyonde,  
(1522)

and demand from  
Charles the sur-  
render of Fiera-  
bras, and homage  
for France. (1526)

Maradas pro-  
tests, but says  
they will go.  
(1538)

They arm them-  
selves, (1546)

and start. (1548)

wherefore hast thou sente for vs ?" ballant answerd and  
sayd : " lordes, I shal say to you þ<sup>e</sup> trouth. Charle-  
mayn of fraunce requyreth of me grete folye. For he  
wyl that I be subgette to hym, & that I holde al my 4  
londes of hym. but thys shal not be ; and he is a moche  
fole, me thynketh, to enterpryse suche folyes. It were  
better to hym to take hys playsyr to slepe, & reste in  
his chambres hys olde body, & praye god in his 8  
chyrches, and ete suche as he hath. Neuertheles I  
counceyl you that ye goo to hym to mormyonde where  
as he is lodged, and say to hym that I comaunde <sup>1</sup>hym,  
olde dotard, that he byleue in mahoun our god wyth- 12  
oute delaye ; & aboue that, for to sende and yelde to me  
ageyn my sone Fyerabras, for whome I am deteyned in  
grete anguysshe and sorowe. And furthermore I wyl  
that he holde of me al Fraunce and hys regyons : and 16  
yf he do not as ye shal deuyse, I shal goo fetche hym  
wyth an hondred thousand men armed. And yf by  
aduenture ye fynde in your waye ony crysten man, smyte  
of his heed wythout ony mercy : " whan thadmyral had 20  
sayd, Maradas answerd : " Syr admyrall, I knowe now  
wel that ye wyl haue vs destroyed, for the frenssh men  
ben moche felons. And yf we say that ye haue purposed,  
he shal sone make an ende of vs, for we shal be dys- 24  
membred. but byleue ye not that I say thys for coward-  
yse or for to eschewe your commaundement, but that I  
wyl accomplysshe it. For I haue suche courage, that yf  
by aduenture I medle wyth these crysten men, I shal 28  
put to dethe ten or I be wery. And yf I do not as I  
haue sayd, I wyll that ye do smyte of my hede." alle  
his felawes sayden that eche of them shold do as wel  
as Maradas ; wherefore wythoute more delyberacyon they 32  
wente to horse-backe, wel arme<sup>d</sup>, & grete speres in theyr  
hondes, with penouns <sup>2</sup>reysed puyssauntly, and Iour-  
neyed forth on theyr waye, and rested not tyl they

<sup>1</sup> e vij, col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> e vij, back.

- passed the brydge of mantryble ; & assone as they myght,  
they passed ouer. And the frensshe men afore named  
came and recountred those sarasyns. And fyrst, duc  
4 Naymes espyed them, & sayd to his felowes : " O lord  
god of heuen, what enterpryse hath these sarasyns made !  
See ye not them, how they come ayenst vs wyth grete  
puyssaunce ? aduyse we vs what is best to doo." Rolland  
8 sayd : " my lordes, ne doubtte ye noo thyng. Beholde,  
and see them ; they be not passyng xx or xxx ; late vs  
ryde strayte to them." They alle were of hys oppynyon,  
and ryde forth fast ayenst them. ¶ Of the partye of  
12 the sarasyns was Maradas puyssaunt & wel armed,  
whyche went and sayd to the frensshe men : " how be  
ye so Infortunat and cursyd to come and mete wyth vs,  
and ye be cristen ?" Duke Naymes ansuerd : " what  
16 someuer thou be, thou spekest vylaynnously and ouer  
folysshly : we be men longyng to þe redoubted emperour  
Charles, and goo in hys name to do a message to Ballant  
thadmyral." Maradas sayd to hym : " ye be in daunger :  
20 wyl ye defende you or doo otherwyse ?" Naymes  
ansuerd : " we wyl defende vs by the helpe of Ihesu  
our maker." maradas said : " which <sup>1</sup> of you dare Iuste  
ayenst me ?" " I am al redy," sayd Naymes. Maradas  
24 sayd : " thou art moche presumptuous ; For yf I had  
suche ten as thou arte, I wold confounde <sup>2</sup> them al wyth  
my swerde, and bere theyr hedes to thadmyral, wythout  
gretely to wery me." and after sayd to hys felawes :  
28 " herkene hyther, syrs, I wyl that no persone of you  
moene, For I allone wyl conquere them alle ; and after  
I shal present them to ballant thadmyrall." whan rolland  
had herde, he was almoost araged for anger, and after  
32 sayd to Maradas : " thou hast folylly spoken and thought  
thyng whyche thou shalt neuer see. or it be euen, þou  
shalt knowe what we can do. kepe the fro me, for I  
deffye the." And whan he had thus sayd, he broched

After they had  
passed Mantrible  
Naymes sees them  
coming, (1555)  
and is frightened.

Roland advises  
them to fight.  
(1563)

Maradas chal-  
lenges them, (1568)

and asks if any of  
them will fight  
him. (1576)

Naymes offers to  
do so, (1577)  
but Maradas  
mocks at him,  
and says he is too  
old. (1579)

Roland is enraged  
at this,

<sup>1</sup> e vij, back, col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> Orig. confonnde.

charges at him,  
(1589)

and cuts him  
down with  
Durandal. (1605)

The other Sara-  
cens try to avenge  
his death,

but are all slain  
save one, (1624)

who escaped and  
carried the news  
to Balan. (1627)

hys hors wyth his spores sharply. And they recountred  
soo harde with their speres square & sharpe, that it was  
grete meruayle that bothe were not dede with þ<sup>e</sup> stroke,  
theyr hawberks were al to-broken. And wyth theyr 4  
swerdes they smote the helmes rychely wrought.  
Rolland was so furyous, that he<sup>1</sup> helde durandal, and  
araught maradas vpon his helme, that he descerkled and  
departed it; & after by grete force recouerd hys stroke 8  
vpon hys bare hede, and clefte it vnto vnder hys brayne:  
and al dede ma<sup>2</sup>radas fyl down to therthe. whan the  
other sawe kynge Maradas dede, and that Rolland wolde  
haue borne awaye hys heed, they loked eche on other as 12  
al abasshed, and concluded to take vengeance on the  
frensshe men, and ronnen vpon rolland for to haue put  
hym to deth, but he deffended hym ouer meruayllously.  
And there-vpon that one partye came vpon that other, 16  
& helde them in bataylle so valyauntlye, in especyal  
the frensshe men ayenst the sarasyns, that alle the  
paynmys were slayne, & none saued of the xv, but one,  
whiche fledde whan he sawe his felowes dede, and went 20  
for to shewe how they were destroyed by the frenssh  
men, & neuer cessed tyl he came to thadmyral. To  
whome thadmyral sayd: "Syr kynge, ye be wel hasty  
to retorne! telle me now how ye haue done." That 24  
other sayd to hym: "syr admyrall, by mahoun, it gooth  
ryght euyl. beyonde the brydge of mantryble we  
recountred seuen glotons of fraunce, which were men of  
kyng Charles al enraged, and sayd that they came in 28  
hys name to do a message vnto you. & after, they ranne  
vpon vs, and haue doon theyr deuoyr so gretely ayenst  
vs, that al be dede sauf I, whyche am escaped wyth  
grete payne for to come and shewe to you." whan 32  
thadmyral vnder<sup>3</sup>stode thys, he was almoost dede for  
sorowe of the deth o<sup>f</sup> hys kynges aforesayd.

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* he he.

<sup>2</sup> e viij.

<sup>3</sup> e viij, col. 2



¶ Of the meruayllous bridge of Mantryble ;  
 of the trybute there payed' for to passe  
 ouer, and' how wyth fayr wordes the  
 4 frenssh men passed ouer the said brydge :  
 capitulo vij

8 **W**Han the frensshe men aforesayd had put to deth  
 the sarasyns, they were al trauaylled and wery,  
 and wente and rested them in a medowe al  
 grene and ful of swete floures : and after sayd the duc  
 naymes : " my lordes, I counceylle you that we retorne  
 to Charles, and say to hym how we haue doon ; & I wote  
 12 wel that he shal be wel contente whan he shall knowe  
 how we haue gouerned vs." Thenne Rolland answerd  
 and sayd : " How, Syr naymes, speke ye of retornyng ?  
 Speke not therof, For as longe as I may holde durandal  
 16 in my hond, by the playsyr of god I thynke not to  
 retorne. For we wyl doo our message to ballant thad-  
 myral, how someuer it be. and late vs do one thyng  
 wherof euery man shal speke. late eche of vs take one  
 20 of these hedes, and we shal presente them to thadmyral."  
 Naymes sayd to hym : " syr 'rolland, it semeth that  
 ye be oute of your wytte. For yf we do so, we shal be  
 anone slayn." Thyery and the other were of thoppyn-  
 24 yon of Rolland ; and so eche of them toke an hede, and  
 rode forth on theyr waye. Duc naymes was the fyrst  
 that wente & behelde the brydge of mantryble, whyche  
 was meruayllous, as ye shal here, and sayd to his felowes :  
 28 " lordes, ye shal vnderstonde that beyonde the brydge is  
 Aygremore, where we shal fynde thadmyral." Ogyer  
 the danoys sayd : " vs byhoueth fyrst to passe by thys  
 brydge, whych is moche daungerous. There ben xxx  
 32 arches of marble wel spacyous & brode, whyche been  
 soulded wyth leed and cymment, & with grete barres of  
 yron : vpon<sup>2</sup> whyche brydge been grete towres wyth

The French rest themselves, and debate what to do. (1649)

Naymes proposes to return, (1653)

but Roland will not agree,

and suggests each should take the head of one of the Saracen kings and present them to Balan, (1662)

to which they all agree.

Ogyer describes the bridge of Mantryble. (1678)

<sup>1</sup> e viij, back.

<sup>2</sup> *Orig.* wpon.

The walls of the bridge are ten ells, and 20 knyghts can go on it abreast.

The river under is called Flagot, (1699)

and runs so fiercely that no boat could live in it.

The bridge-ward is a giant, Galafre by name. (1700)

Roland says he is not afraid to cross, (1710) in spite of the giant,

but Naymes says he will manage to cheat him. (1717)

fayr pylers rychely ordeyned, & the walles ben of grete strengthe. For at the lowest may wel be mesured ten ellys a brede. hyt is soo brode that xx knyghtes may goo arme in arme at their ease. & there is a drawebrydge 4 for to drawe vp, whiche descendeth wyth ten grete chaynes of yron. And aboute on hye is an egle of golde moche replendysshante and shynynge lyke the sonne, that it semeth that it were a flame of fyre, whyche is 8 seen a large myle ferre. and the ryuer that passeth vnder is named fla<sup>1</sup>got, whyche is bynethe the arche by mesure xv foot, and renneth so Inpytuously as a quarel out of an arbalastre, in suche wyse that neyther bote ne galey 12 may passe ouer, for the grete cours of the water. And more ouer this brydge is kepte wyth a geaunte for thadmyral, whyche geaunte is named Galafre, one of the moost terryble of humayn people. And he holdeth a 16 grete axe of stele for to destroye them that wyl doo ayenst hys wylle. And who that wyl speke wyth thadmyral must nedes passe by hym." "Seygnours," sayd rolland, "doubte ye no thyng, I praye you: care 20 not for passynge ouer the brydge, For I swere to you that as longe as it shal please god to kepe my body, & that I may holde durandal in my honde, I shal not doubte ony paynym the valewe of a peny, what someuer he be. 24 And by god that henge on the crosse, I shal smyte the porter yf he come tofore me, what someuer shal happe." Duc naymes of bauyere reprysed hym: "Rolland, ye speke not wysely. It is not good to gyue a stroke for to 28 receyue therfore fyftene: late me do; For by the playsyr of god and of hys sayntes, I shal say to hym suche lesynges and other thynges that we shal passe wyth oute daunger." whan the frencshe men came tofore the 32 brydge, the porter toke an hondred knyghtes, & came & aualed the lytel brydge wyth as many guysarmes & other glayues of defence. The fyrst that went byfore was

<sup>1</sup> e viij, back, col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> f j.

duc naymes with hys whyte heeres, for he was older than any of the other. Anon the porter passed ouer & toke Naymes by the honde, & drewe hym ouer, & after  
 4 sayd to hym: "whyther wilt thou goo?" Naymes  
 ansuerd: "I shal say you the trouthe. we be men of  
 charles, the noble emperour, & goo to Aygremore to do  
 a message to ballant thadmyral. But certeynly he hath  
 8 quytte his contreye of fals peple, for it is not longe tyme  
 passed that on the felde we fonde xv gloutons, whyche  
 wold haue taken fro vs our lyf & our horses. Neuer-  
 theles we haue gouerned them in suche manere that  
 12 here ben the hedes. beholde them wel what they be, yf  
 ye byleue me not." whan the porter herde hym, he was  
 almoost oute of hys wytte for angre, & sayd to Naymes:  
 "vassal, vnderstonde me! ye must paye the passage of  
 16 the brydge tofore al thyng." Duc Naymes sayd:  
 "porter, demaunde what ye ought to haue, & we shal  
 contente you." "by mahoun," sayd the porter, "it is  
 not a lytel. For I aske of you xxx couple houndes,  
 20 after, an C maydens chaste & of good maners, an C  
 fawcons me<sup>1</sup>wed, an C palfroyes in good poynte &  
 rested, and for euery foot of the horses a marke of fyn  
 gold; & atte last I must haue ii[ij] sommyers charged  
 24 with golde & syluer. thus ought ye paye, or ellys come  
 not here. and he that may not paye the trybute tofore  
 deuysed, he must lese hys heed wythoute other excusa-  
 cyon." duc Naymes was not abasshed, Notwithstandyng  
 28 that he knewe the occasyon that the porter sought  
 that they shold deye, by cause that it was not  
 possyble to paye that he had deuysed: & ansuerd  
 to the porter in this manere, and sayd: "Syr porter,  
 32 yf I owe noo more than ye haue sayd, ye shal be  
 contente or mydday be passed. Our bagayge com-  
 eth after vs, and harnois more in nombre than an  
 hondred thousand, where there be maydens fayr, &

Naymes rides in front.

Galafre stops him and asks his business. (1726)

Naymes says they are messengers from Charles to Balan. (1727)

Galafre demands his toll,

30 couples of hounds, 100 maidens, 100 falcons,

100 steeds, and 400 marks of gold

and 4 packhorses laden with gold. (1740)

Naymes says that Galafre will find all this and more in their baggage, which is following them. (1748)

Galafre believes  
him and lets them  
pass. (1755)

Roland meets a  
Saracen,

and throws him  
over into the  
river. (1761)

Naymes rebukes  
him.

gentyl fawcons, & dogges grete plente, hawberks, helmes,  
and good sheldes wythoute nombre, And many other  
Iewellys noble and ryche: take of them as it shalle  
playse your wylle." ¶ The portyer supposed that he had 4  
said trouthe, and was wel contente, and lete the brydge  
doun, and after they passed ouer lyghtly. Rolland,  
which myght not forbere lawhyng, sayd: "In trouthe,  
syr Duc Naymes, ye haue wel spoken, for by lesynges 8  
we passe thys brydge." and rolland came <sup>1</sup> behynde alle  
the other; & whan they were a lytel forth vpon the  
brydge, Roulland encountred a Turke, and sythe sayd  
in his courage: "A, lord god of paradys, late me do a 12  
thyng wherof thou mayst be honoured, and alle thyng  
happe wel," and withoute sayeng of ony worde to his  
felowes, he lyghted doun from hys hors, and toke thylke  
turk by the myddel, and threwe hym hastely in to the 16  
ryuer. ¶ Duc Naymes looked behynde hym, and sawe  
the paynym falle, and was moche angry, and sayd: "lord  
god of heuen, I trowe the deuyll is in the body of Roul-  
land! he can haue noo pacyence in hym. and yf god 20  
helpe vs not, he shal cause vs al to be slayn and  
vylaynsly deye." For Rolland was so fyers of courage  
that he toke none hede of the tyme ne the place how to  
gouerne<sup>2</sup> hym, but wold alwaye auenge hym on his 24  
enemye where he myzt fynde hym.

¶ How the barons came and' spake to the  
Admyrall, and' how they dyd' theyr  
message: capitulo viii 28

The French  
knights enter into  
Aigremore. (1768)

**T**He barons afore sayd, whan they had passed the  
brydge and were nyghe vnto aygremore, where as  
ballant was, they entred in to the towne in <sup>3</sup> good  
ordynaunce, and wyth countenaunce of fyersnes and of 32  
noblesse. And they sawe in the stretes, fawcons and

<sup>1</sup> f j, back.    <sup>2</sup> *Orig.* gruerne.    <sup>3</sup> f j, back, col. 2.



other byrdes of proye vpon the perches, grete oxen and  
buefs slayn & flayn, fayre hangyng, and grete swyn  
strangled; and they recountred a sarasyn whome they  
4 demaunded where thadmyral was. And he shewed hym A Saracen shows them the way to Balan. (1772)  
to them, where he satte vnder a tree in the shadowe. and  
thenne they alyghted, and duc Naymes sayd: "my fayre  
lordes, I shal bere the letter and shal speke fyrst, and ye  
8 after." Roulland was there, and present hym, and wold  
by force haue spoken fyrst. & duc Naymes sayd to hym  
"Say not one word, for ye be al fro your self, wythoute  
hauyng<sup>t</sup> attemperaunce. but god do not to vs grete grace,  
12 ye shal make vs alle to deye or the day be passed." And  
herupon they entred and presented them al tofore They present themselves before the Emir.  
the admyral wythoute ony reuerence. And duc Naymes  
of bauyere spake fyrst in thys manere: "The maker of  
16 alle the world, to whom onely ouzt to be gyuen creaunce  
entyere and honoure, saue and kepe the noble kyng  
charlemayn, puyssaunt, stronge & wyse emperour, rol-  
land & olyuer, & al the other pyeres of fraunce, and  
20 confounde, fro the toppe of the hede vnto the plantes  
of the feet, the Admyral<sup>1</sup> here present, as moche as  
tofore yesterday hys subgettes were euyl pourueyed be-  
yonde þ<sup>e</sup> bridge of mantryble. we fonde fyftene glotons  
24 on the felde, which wold haue taken from vs our horses  
and do to vs vylonnye, but, god of heuen be thanked,  
they bought it gretely and dere." ¶ Whan the Admy-  
ral vnderstoode this langage, vnnethe he myght kepe Balan is enraged.  
28 hymself fro enragyng. And there tofore hym came  
the kyng that escaped, of whome I haue spoken tofore,  
and sayd to thadmyral in thys manere: "Ryght dere  
syr, thynke to aduenge you. These been the seuen  
32 glotons of whyche I tolde to you, whyche haue slayn  
your kynges, and haue doon to you suche vylonnye." The Saracen king, which had escaped, tells him who the French knights are.  
The admyral Ballant ansuerd: "late them be for thys  
tyme:" and sythe after sayd to Naymes the duc<sup>2</sup>, that

<sup>1</sup> f ij.

<sup>2</sup> Ed. dnc.

be shold<sup>d</sup> fynysshe hys message. And the duc ansuerd  
 that he so do wold<sup>d</sup> gladly, and<sup>d</sup> sayd<sup>d</sup> in thys manere :  
 “The grete noble kyng<sup>i</sup> of Fraunce commaundeth the  
 that thou rendre to hym the crowne, with whyche the 4  
 blessyd<sup>d</sup> Ihesu Cryste was crowned<sup>d</sup> wyth, and<sup>d</sup> the other  
 relyques for whome he hath taken grete trauaylle and<sup>d</sup>  
 payne ; & also his knyghtes whom thou holdest in  
 pryson folysshly. and<sup>d</sup> yf thou do not as I haue to the 8  
 deuysed<sup>d</sup>, Charles shal make the <sup>1</sup>to be hanged<sup>d</sup> by the  
 necke on a gybet and<sup>d</sup> strangled vylaynously.” Thad-  
 myral ballant, replenysshed<sup>d</sup> of an entencyon moche  
 outrageous, sayd<sup>d</sup> to Naymes the duc : “Thou hast 12  
 gretely defouled<sup>d</sup> me by outrage, and<sup>d</sup> I haue wylyngly  
 herde the. Goo forth and<sup>d</sup> sytte down by yonde pyler,  
 & these other shal speken whom I haue not yet herde.  
 Mahomet my god<sup>d</sup>, to whome I haue gyuen myself, 16  
 gyue me an euyl deth yf euer I ete or drynk tyl I see  
 thy hede flee fro thy sholdres.” The duc Naymes  
 ansuerd : “yf it playse god<sup>d</sup> my maker, & his blessyd  
 moder, þou shalt haue made a lesyng.” After hym 20  
 spake Rychard<sup>d</sup> duc of Normandye, & said : “vnder-  
 stonde me, syr admyral ! Charles the kyng, with his  
 berde florysshed, comandeth the by me, y<sup>t</sup> thou do the  
 baptyse for tamende thy ryght euyl lyf, & that thou 24  
 sende to hym the relyques that thou hast in thy puy-  
 saunce, & also that thou rendre to hym hys knyghtes,  
 whyche thou holdest wythout reson for prysoners. & yf  
 thou do not as thou hast herde, charles shal do hange 28  
 the by the necke on a gybet & strangle þ<sup>e</sup>, & shal neuer  
 haue mercy on the.” Thadmyral ballant supposed<sup>d</sup> to  
 haue knowen hym, & sayd<sup>d</sup> thus : “mahomet, in whom  
 I byleue, curse the ! thou resembllest wel Rychard of 32  
 normandye, whych slewe my <sup>2</sup>vncle corsuble. Now  
 wold<sup>d</sup> Mahoun the god<sup>d</sup> that he were here ! he shold<sup>d</sup>  
 neuer ete mete tyl he were dede. Goo and<sup>d</sup> sytte down

Naymes delivers  
 the message,  
 demanding the  
 sacred relics,  
 (1808)

and the release of  
 the prisoners.  
 (1810)

Balan in a rage

bids him stand  
 aside, (1826)

swearing that he  
 will have him put  
 to death.

Richard of Nor-  
 mandy delivers  
 the message (1846)  
 to the same effect.

Balan recognizes  
 and curses him.  
 (1860)

and bids him  
 stand aside with  
 Naymes.

<sup>1</sup> f ij, col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> f ij, back.

- by thy felowe, vnto I haue herde thy felowes." Aftyr  
 thys thenne came basyn the genewey, & stode tofore  
 ballant and sayd: "Ballant admyral, the noble charles,  
 4 aboue al humayn creatures redoubted, commaundeth  
 the to rendre to hym the relyques whyche haue been  
 requyred of the, or ellys he shal do hange and strangle  
 the as a theef proued." whan he had sayd thus, he went  
 8 and satte wyth the other. And after came thyerry, duc  
 of Ardayne, & dyssymyled his chyere & countenaunce  
 of manere. whan thadmyral sawe that he had the re-  
 garde so hydous, he was moche abasshed, and supposed  
 12 that he had ben a deuyll. And after, thyerry sayd: "herkene to me, admyral, & reteyne wel my wordes.  
 Charles, the noble emperour redoubted, commaundeth  
 the that thou sende to hym the relyques which thou  
 16 barest awaye fro Rome, & also sende vnto hym hys  
 barons whyche thou hast in thy power, or ellys be thou  
 sure that he shal do dysmembre the, & doo hange the  
 vylaynsly by the necke." Thadmyral answerd: "vas-  
 20 sal, I praye the to telle to me, and hyde it not, what  
 man is charlemayn, and of what force & strengthe<sup>1</sup> is  
 he, of the whiche I haue herde moche preysed &  
 vaunted?" Thenne the duc Thyerry ansuerd: "I telle  
 24 to the, admyral, & lete the wete, that Charles is noble &  
 hardy, curtoys and of good lyf. And be thou sure, that  
 yf he were present here wyth hys excersyte, moche sone  
 he shold gyue the a buffet vpon thy vysage. And on  
 28 that other syde, he setteth nomore by the than of an  
 olde hounde dede, or of a roten apple." Incontynent  
 tho ballant the admyrall bygan to lawhe for felonnye, &  
 after sayd to Thyerry: ¶ "My frende, by thy fayth  
 32 that thou owest to thy god, say to me now the trouth.  
 yf I were now in thy wylle and subgectyon, as thou  
 arte in myn, by thy fayth what woldest thou do wyth  
 me?" "by my fayth," sayd Thyerry, "I shal not lye.

After him Basyn  
repeats the mes-  
sage, (1864)

and after him  
Terry of Ardane,  
(1874)

at whose appear-  
ance Balan is  
frightened. (1888)

He asks Terry to  
describe Charles  
to him. (1892)

Terry tells him  
that Charles is  
noble and brave,

and cares no more  
for Balan than for  
a dead dog or a  
rotten apple.

Balan laughs

<sup>1</sup> f ij, back, col. 2.

and calls the fifth messenger.

Ogier presents himself and delivers the message, (1910)

and after him Roland repeats it fiercely. (1806)

Balan swears he will neither eat nor drink till Roland is hanged. (1820)

Roland mocks at him.

Guy of Burgundy comes forward,

I shold<sup>d</sup> doo hange the by the necke, and<sup>d</sup> strangle the vylaynsly on a gybet or it were yet nyght." ¶ "Vas-sal," sayd<sup>d</sup> the Admyrall, "thou hast sayd<sup>d</sup> grete folye. For by Mahommet my god<sup>d</sup>, in lyke wyse shal I doo of 4 the, as thou hast sayd<sup>d</sup> of thy self. Goo thou and sytte by thy felawes." ¶ Thenne after hym came the good<sup>d</sup> Ogyer the danoy<sup>s</sup> tofore hym, and<sup>d</sup> sayd<sup>d</sup>: "O Admyral of Spaygne, vnderstonde what Charles, the moost noble 8 of humayn creatures and moost ryche <sup>1</sup>wythoute comparyson, demaundeth of the. Rendre and<sup>d</sup> yelde to hym the relyques whyche thou hast borne awaye, or ellys he shal do dysmembre the, and<sup>d</sup> doo the deye shamefully." 12 Thadmyral, beynge al wroth, made hym to sytte wyth the other. After hym, rolland<sup>d</sup> the courageous came tofore Ballant thadmyral, wythoute doynge<sup>d</sup> to hym ony reuerence, and<sup>d</sup> sayd<sup>d</sup> to hym: "Thou sarasyn, vnhappy 16 & cursed, take hede to my wordes! Charles, the noble kyng<sup>d</sup> and<sup>d</sup> Emperour redoubted<sup>d</sup>, sendeth to the by me, that thou byleue in god<sup>d</sup> Ihesu cryst, the maker of al the world<sup>d</sup>, & in the glorious vyrgyn marie his moder; and<sup>d</sup> 20 do the to be baptyse<sup>d</sup>, and<sup>d</sup> thynke to rendre the relyques whiche thou occupyest and<sup>d</sup> atteynest ayenst hys wylle. And also see that hys barons be rendred<sup>d</sup> and<sup>d</sup> delyuerd hole and<sup>d</sup> in good<sup>d</sup> poynte. For yf thou do otherwyse 24 than I haue sayd<sup>d</sup> to the, Charles the valyaunte shal make the to be hanged<sup>d</sup> as a theef." Thadmyral sayd<sup>d</sup> to hym: "thou hast rebuked<sup>d</sup> and<sup>d</sup> blamed<sup>d</sup> me proudly, but I swere to the by Mahoun, my god, & by Terma- 28 gaunte, that I shal not ete tyl thou be hanged<sup>d</sup> & strangled<sup>d</sup>." Thenne Roulland<sup>d</sup> answerd: "for trouthe, sarasyn, yf thou abyde to that houre, thou holdest faste ouer longe. Thou shalt not do so, <sup>2</sup>For I doubte the 32 not the valure of an olde dede hounde & drowned<sup>d</sup>."

¶ Guy of bourgoyn came after hym tofore ballant thadmyral, and<sup>d</sup> sayd<sup>d</sup> to hym in thys manere: "Charles

<sup>1</sup> f iij.

<sup>2</sup> f iij, col. 2.



- commaundeth the that thou make to hym obeysaunce, and repeats the  
and that thou restore the relyques and hys barons ; and message,  
thenne shalte thou do as a wyse man : and yf thou wylt  
4 byleue me, I wyl wel counceyl the. Byleue in god Ihesu  
Cryste, whyche is almyghty, wythoute endeanð wythoute  
begynnynge. And yf thou bylenest my counceyl, thou  
mayst be in his grace. And lo ! what thou shalt do : take  
8 of thy robe, thy hosen, & thy shoon of thy body, and goo  
in thy sherte, and bere on thy body a sadel of an hors,  
and reste not tyl thou come before the face of Charles,  
and humbly presente thy self to hym, & crye for mercy to  
12 god thy maker almyghty, for thyn errors and oultrages.  
¶ And crye hym mercy in the honour of god almyghty ;  
and yf thou doo not thus as I haue sayd, he shal make the  
be hanged, brente, or drowned, and shamefully<sup>1</sup> to dye.”  
16 ¶ The Admyrall was more determyned and araged  
than he had been tofore, and sent anone for Brullant de  
Mommyere, Sortybrant de Conymbres, and for the  
other that were of hys<sup>2</sup> counceyl, and demaunded theyr  
20 aduys and counceyl vpon these thynges aforesayd.  
Anone sortybrant sayd to hym : “ Syr admyral, I  
counceylle you that anone they be dysmembred and  
slayn, and after ye may goo and ryde with your strengthe  
24 oueral, and come to mormyonde where charles is  
pensyf : yf ye may take hym, ye shal put hym to deth.  
¶ After ye shal descende in to fraunce, & doo you be  
crowned there as kyng.” “ by mahoun,” sayd ballant,  
28 “ ye haue wel sayd. Now be it doon after your deuyse :  
goo in to the pryson, & brynge wyth you the other theyr  
felowes, for to do after the enterpryse.” And thus as I  
haue sayd, Thadmyral was of entencyon to make of the  
32 frenshe men aforesayd, after that is tofore deuysed.

advising Balan to  
go humbly to  
Charles

and beg for  
mercy. (1940)

Balan is greatly  
enraged,

and holds a council  
to consider what  
is to be done with  
the messengers.  
(1956)

Sortibrant advises  
their immediate  
execution, (1961)

to which Balan  
agrees.

¶ How by the moyen of florypes al the  
frenshe men were saued, and lodged to-

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* shamefluy.

<sup>2</sup> f iij, back.

gydre, and' the relyques shewed', and other  
thynges : capitulo ix

Floripas appears and asks her father who the French knights are. (1977)

Balan tells her,

and asks her advice what he is to do with them. (1986)

"Cut off their heads, and burn them," says Floripas.

Balan assents, and proposes to do so at once,

but Floripas says it is dinner-time,

and asks for them to be given into her charge. (2000)

Sortibrant warns Balan that women are not to be trusted. (2013)

**F**loripes the curtoys, after that she had wel secretly herde al the debate toforesayd, she came out of hyr 4  
chambre, and salewed hir fader, & demaunded  
of hym: "What been these knyghtes sette there  
a<sup>1</sup>parte?" Thadmyral ansuerd: "my doughter, they  
be borne in fraunce: the whyche haue sayd to me 8  
wordes of grete Importaunce ful of reproches, and haue  
blamed me and offended gretely, more than I can telle  
you or say. What counceyl gyue ye to me that I ought  
to do wyth them?" The doughter sayd: "I shal say 12  
to you, my fader, that ye wythoute longe taryeng do  
smyte of theyr heedes, for they haue wel deserued it.  
And do smyte of theyr hondes, & brenne them in a fyre  
without your cyte." "my doughter," sayd the admyral, 16  
"ye haue ryght wel sayd: ryght soo shal it be doon.  
Goo ye in to the pryson, and brynge to me the other."  
"good fader," ansuerd the doughter, "it is tyme to dyne,  
and yf ye wyl begynne to do Iustyce, ye may not ete 20  
tyl mydday be passed." This doughter sought none  
other thyng but occasyon by fayr wordes, accordyng to  
the wylle of hyr fader thadmyral, for to brynge al the  
frensse men to-gyder wyth them that were prysonners. 24  
¶ And after sayd to hyr fader: "gyue to me these  
Frensse men! I shal make theym wel to be kepte;  
and after your dyner ye shall do Iustyce wyth lasse  
tedyacyon, and thenne your people shal be assembled." 28  
¶ To the whyche the Admyral consented, And was  
contente thyt hys doughter<sup>2</sup> shold haue them in kepyng.  
Alwaye sortybrant, which knewe the mutabylyte of  
wymmen & thynconstaunce, sayd to Ballant: "Syr 32  
Admyral, it is noo thyng couenable that vpon thys  
fayte ye ought to truste in a woman, by cause of theyr

<sup>1</sup> f iij, back, col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> f iiij.

mutabylyte, & ye haue oft herd say ensaumples. and  
also ye knowe the trouthe how many haue ben deceyued  
by wymmen." Moche angry & euyl content was floripes  
4 of the wordes of Sortybrant And sayd: "horson Tray-  
tour, desloyal, pariured, yf I thought not it shold torne  
me to ouermoeche blame, I shold gyue to the suche a  
buffet on thy vysage, that the blode shold auale down  
8 habundauntly." And after these wordes thadmyral was  
euyl contente of thys debate. And therupon she took  
the frensshe men & ladde them in to hyr chambre wyth-  
oute ony lenger taryeng. And goyng by the waye Syr  
12 naymes the duc sayd: "A god of heuen, kyng of  
eternal glorie, who is he that euer sawe a more fayrer  
lady in hys lyf? Moche wel shold he be Inspyred with  
the grace of god that shal haue hyr in hys courage in  
16 loue." Rolland was euyl contente and sayd to Naymes:  
"What hondred thousand of deuyls hath maad you to  
speke now of loue? It is not now tyme to speke of  
suche thyng." <sup>1</sup>Duc Naymes sayd thus: "Syr Rol-  
20 land, dysplese you not, For I was ones amerous." the  
douȝter sayd to them that they were not assembled  
to plede that one ageynst that other. and also sone as they  
were wythin the chambre, the doughter made to shette  
24 faste the yates, & anone rollandimette wyth Olyuer, and  
enterbraced eche other & kyssed wyth franke and  
tender herte in wepyng moche tenderly, and alle the  
other semblably; & Rolland sayd: "Alas, Olyuer, my  
28 faythful felowe, how is it with you sythe I last sawe  
you?" "Ryght wel," answerd Olyuer. and eche de-  
maunded of other of theyr feates, of the contreyes, and  
of theyr lordes & tydynges. Now ye may thynke that  
32 they were gladd eche of other that they were al  
toȝyder in good poynte by the moyen of Florypes  
the fayr lady, whyche dyd grete socours to crysten-  
dom, whan by hyr, hyr wysedom and dyscrecyon the

Floripas in a rage  
threatens Sorti-  
brant. (2016)

She conducts the  
French knights to  
her chamber.  
(2024)

Naymes is struck  
with the beauty  
of Floripas.

Roland and Oliver  
embrace each  
other. (2030)

captayns of the crysten fayth, as moche as toucheth the excersyte of bataylle to destroye the myscreauntes and paynymys, ben founden alle togyder in surete, whyche fyrst were comen in to the hondes of theyr 4 enemyes mortall.

And here we can see how great is the power of woman when she sets her heart on a thing.

Floripas asks of the French knights their promise to assist her in her desires, (2039)

to which they agree. (2043)

She asks Naymes his name: (2049) he tells her. (2051)

Then she asks Richard's name: (2056)

and after Roland's.

¶ But it is grete scyence for to eschewe the wylle of a woman, whan by effecte she putteth hyr entente<sup>1</sup> to a thyng, that her hert dyrectly draweth, and taketh 8 no regarde to the ende of her entente but onely that she may achyue hyr enterpryse and determynacyon. Florypes retched of noo thyng but that she myzt haue tydynges certeyn of guy of bourgoyne, to whome she 12 had gyuen hyr hert, and was contente to be crystened for the loue of hym. Thys fayr Florypes, whan she sawe these barons to-gydre, she sayd to them: "lordes, I wyl that ye alle of one accorde promyse to me the fayth 16 of loyalte that ye shal ayde and helpe me of that I shal demaunde you, & toward me ye shal truly bere and endeouyre you." "Ryght gladly;" ansuerd duc Naymes, "and also ye shal assure vs that we shal be here in 20 surete withoute ony doubte of ony man lyuynge." she was contente, & they were contente, and promysed fydelyte that one to the other. whan this was doon, the doughter came to duc naymes for to knowe what 24 he was, and demaunded of hym hys name. the duc sayd to hyr: "Madame, I am called Naymes of bauyere, Man and counceyllour to Charles the Emperour redoubted." "Alas!" sayd the dougter, "your kyng is 28 sory for you." After she came to Rycharde and demaunded of hym how he was named. he ansuerd to hyr: "dame, <sup>2</sup>I am Rycharde of Normandye." the doughter sayd to hym: "Mahomet curse the<sup>1</sup> thou puttest to 32 deth on a tyme corsuble myn vncl. But for the loue of these other thou shalt be in no daunger." Florypes came after to rolland, and prayed that he wold telle hys

<sup>1</sup> f iijj, back.

<sup>2</sup> f iijj, back, col. 2.



- name. "I am named rolland," sayð he, "sone to duc Myllon, & am neuewe to charles, sone of hys syster." Roland tells her. (2064)
- Anone the doughter cryed hym mercy & kneled down 4 to hys feet, and Rolland toke hyr swetely vp. ¶ After, the doughter sayð: "ye knowe what ye haue promysed to me. I shal say to you myn entencyon. It is trouthe Floripas tells the knights how she has long loved Guy of Burgundy. (2072)
- that I loue a knyght of fraunce aboue al them of the 8 world, whyche is named guye of bourgoyne, of whom I wold gladly haue tydynges." rolland sayð: "I swere to you by my hede that he is here in your syght, & that there is not bytwene you tweyne the space of foure foot 12 of mesure." "Seynours," sayð she, "I praye you that I may knowe hym, and that he be gyuen to me, for of hym is alle my playsyr." Rolland ansuerd and sayd: "syr Guy of Bourgoyne, come ye hyther to thys mayde and 16 receyue hyr Ioyously." Guy of bourgoyn ansuerd: "god forbede that euer I shold take wyf, but yf she were gyuen to me by Charles themperour." ¶ Whan Florypes <sup>1</sup>ynderstode hym, anone she chaunged colour, 20 and sware [by] mahommet hyr god that yf he gaynsayed it she shold make them alle to be hanged by the necke on a gybette. Rolland enhorted Guye that he shold do hyr wylle, and vpon that he aduaunced hym, & hath 24 graunted. Thenne florypes sayð: "the sone of god of crystyante be preysed and honoured, For I haue tofore myn eyen the moost grettest playsyr that euer myn hert desyred. For his loue I shal byleue in Ihesu Cryst, 28 & shal do me be baptysed:" & after, she approched to hym for to treate a lytel the desyre of hir hert, and she durst not kysse hym on the mouthe, but on hys chekes & chynne, by cause she was a paynym. Thenne 32 florypes Ioyously and by grete loue came vnto a cheste and opened it tofore the barons, and spredde a fayr cloth of sylke. And after she dysclosed and shewed the relyques of whyche I haue spoken tofore, emonge
- Roland calls on Guy to come forward and accept her as his wife (2095), but Guy refuses. (2096)
- Floripas swears that if he does not she will have them all hanged. (2102)
- Guy gives way. (2104)
- Floripas kisses him, (2112)
- and after produces the sacred relics, (2114)

the crown and  
the nails,

whome was the glorious crowne wyth whiche Ihesu  
cryste was crowned with in the tyme of hys passyon,  
and the holy naylles whyche perced hys holy handes  
and feet: and after sayd to Rolland: "Loo! here is the 4  
tresour that ye haue so moche desyred." Whan the  
frensshe men sawe thus tofore them the relyques, For  
Ioye they alle wepte <sup>1</sup>moche tenderly, and one after the  
other wente & kyssed them, knelyng moche humbly; 8  
& after, they were layed in to the cheste where as they  
had ben tofore.

which the French  
knights devoutly  
kiss. (2132)

¶ How Lucafer neuewe of the admyral vyo-  
lently entred' in to the chambre, & after 12  
was slayn of duc Naymes in blowyng of  
the cool: capitulo x

Lucifer enquires  
of Balan if it is  
true that Fiera-  
bras is a prisoner.  
(2147)

**B**Allant thadmyral beyng moche wroth & syttyng'  
at the table, A paynym fyers & proude, a specyal 16  
frende of thadmyral, named lucafer of bandas,  
sayd to thadmyral affectuously: ¶ "Syr admyral, is it  
trouthe that I haue herde say, that Fyerabras, your sone  
and my ryght dere brother, is taken and vaynquysshed, 20  
whiche was the beste knyght that euer was a-lyue?"

Balan says it is.  
(2152)

Thadmyral said to hym: "by my fayth I shal not  
hyde it fro you. A frensshe man hath conquerd hym  
—whome Mahoun confounde!" Brullant of Mommyere 24  
made grete deffence, and the kyng of Sulye. They bare  
them soo wel that they brought to vs fyue of the  
gloutons of fraunce, knyghtes of Charles, whyche ben in  
pryson. and sythe ryght now we haue other seuen whiche 28  
ben comen as messagers <sup>2</sup>fro the sayd charles, which  
haue vytupered and blamed vs gretelye in reprochyng  
our lawe & despysyng my goddes. Florypes my  
doughter hath conduyted them in to pryson." "Syr," 32  
sayd lucafer, "ye do grete folye. Wymmen al day for

but that he has  
twelve French  
knights prisoners,  
in charge of  
Floripas. (2165)

Lucifer says he is  
wroug to trust  
them to a woman,  
(2166)

- lytel thyng ben chaunged and torned fro theyr thougt.  
 neuertheles for the more surete, yf it playse you, and by  
 your comaundement, I shal goo to them, and shal knowe  
 4 what they be, and of what condycion." "Goo forth,"  
 said thadmyral, "ye say ryght wel, and make my  
 doughter to retorne wyth you." herupon lucafer, moche  
 proude and replenysshed wyth grete fyersnes, cam in to  
 8 the chambre where the dougter was and the frensshe  
 men, wythoute demaundyng to opene the dore but  
 lyfte vp his ryght fote, and smote it so strongly  
 wyth hys foot that the barres & lockes flewe vnto  
 12 the grounde. Whan Florypes saw that she was al  
 abasshed, And anone sayd to Rolland: "Syr noble  
 knyght, I am ryght euyl contente of the vyolence that  
 is thus done to me. this is he that shold be my husband  
 16 ageyn my wylle. I requyre you in as moche as ye  
 wyl do me playsyr that ye wyl auenge thys dyshonour,  
 For I complayne me wythoute makynge ouermoche euyl  
 semblaunte." to whome Rolland answered: "doubte  
 20 ye no thyng, madame, For, or he departe hens, he shal  
 knowe that he hath euyl doon. And I promyse you  
 that he bought neuer locke so dere ne of the prys as he  
 shal for the brekyng herof." Hereupon Lucafer entred  
 24 in to the chambre, and behelde the frensshe men al  
 armed wythout ony doubte that he had to them. And  
 came fyrst to duc Naymes whych was dyscouered and  
 bare hede, & wythoute other delyberacyon took hym by  
 28 the berde, and drewe hym to hym so boystously that  
 almost he had ouerthrowen hym, & after sayd to hym:  
 "of whens art thou, veyllard? hyde it not fro me."  
 The duke Naymes answerd: "paynym, I am of bauyere,  
 32 and that is my contree, and am specyal counceyllour of  
 Charlemayne, And al these barons that ben here been al  
 erles and grete lordes, and ben comen for to shewe to  
 ballant the admyral a message fro the sayd charles,

and that he will  
go see if they are  
safe. (2168)

He goes to Flori-  
pas' chamber,  
and bursts open  
the door with his  
foot. (2180)

Floripas calls on  
Roland to avenge  
this insult. (2186)

Roland promises  
to do so. (2195)

Lucifer enters,  
(2197)

and first seizing  
Naymes by the  
beard, (2204)

demands his  
name, (2207)  
which Naymes  
tells him, (2208)

redoubtēd Eimperour; & by cause that we haue not spoken to hys entencion he hath made vs prysonners. Neuertheles take your hande from my berde, ye haue holde me longe ynough; And be ye sure that I say not 4 al that I thynke." ¶ The paynym ansuerd: "I am contente thy folye be pardonned the; but I demaunde of the by thy loyalte, what maner folke ben they of <sup>1</sup>fraunce, and of what enterpryse, and what playes vse 8 they whan they been in your royaume?" "In trouthe," sayd the duc, "Whan the kyng hath dyned, who that wyl may goo playe where hym lyst. Somme ryde oute on horsback, & somme goo in to the feldes and 12 synges, other make good chere at tables, at the chesse, & other playsaunte games. and in the morne euery man gooth gladly & hereth masse at the houre whan it is sayd, and been wel charytable to gyue almesse to p<sup>e</sup> 16 poure peple largely and customably. Also whan they goo to bataylle they been fyers and hardy, and been not lyghtly vanquysshed. Suche been the peple in the contreye of crystente." lucafer began to lawhe and 20 sayd: "by my god Mahoun, vylayne & olde dotard that thow arte, thow spekest folysshly. It is no thyng so of your feat, ne frensshe men be of no valure but yf they can blowe at the grete cole." "In 24 trouthe," said the duc, "I herde neuer therof." the Paynym ansuerd: "I shal teche you the manere," and he approched to the duc nyghe by a grete fyre, and in goyng Rolland made sygne to the duc that he 28 shold bere hym wel. Anone lucafer toke the grettest bronde that was on the fyre, And blewe so sharply that the fyre flewe alle aboute habundantly, and after <sup>2</sup>said to duc naymes that he must also blowe. The Duc took 32 the bronde, and knewe wel the manere that the paynym wold hurt hym, and approched to hym, and blewe the bronde so puyssauntly that it fyl al on a flame and came

and asks him to let him go. (2214)

Lucifer asks him to describe the French and their games. (2216)

Naymes says some hunt, (2221)

some play chess or tables, (2224)

and that they are all brave and hard to conquer.

Lucifer asks him if he knows the game of the "grete cole?" (2230)

Naymes says, "No."

Lucifer takes a coal and shows him how to blow it. (2236)



- to the vysage of the Paynym, in suche wye that it brente  
 al hys berde. Whan the paynym sawe that, he was  
 almoost out of his wytte for angre. The Duc Naymes  
 4 wyth that smote hym wyth the bronde in the necke  
 that he brake the bone, and so raught hym wyth so  
 grete myght that his eyen flewe oute of hys heed to the  
 grounde, and sayd to hym: "Fals creature that thou  
 8 arte, Whome I bysêche god confounde, thou wendest to  
 haue made me to muse in thy folyes. Now lye there  
 wyth sorowe." Rolland said to hym: "by my fayth,  
 syr duc, ye can wel playe and blowe atte cole. blessyd  
 12 be that arme that gaf that stroke!" ¶ "Lordes," sayd  
 duc Naymes, "yf I haue maad hym to vnderstonde hys  
 folye ye ought not to blame me. ye haue seen how he  
 truffed wyth me." Florypes the curtoys came ner vnto  
 16 duc Naymes, And sayd: "Certes, syr, ye be worthy to  
 be honoured. I see wel that Lucafer hath no more  
 charge to playe wyth you at the cole; he is now at his  
 ease; I see wel that he remeueth not. And I wote  
 20 now <sup>1</sup>that he neuer shal haue grete desyre to espouse  
 me. For by force he wold haue had me and my fader  
 had gyuen me to hym, but neuer wold I haue suffred it,  
 but rather haue myn hede smyton of, or suffred vylayn-  
 24 ous deth."

Naymes blows  
 one so as to burn  
 Lucifer's beard,  
 (2243)

and then kills him  
 with the brand.  
 (2248)

Roland praises his  
 play. (2253)

Floripas thanks  
 him, (2256)

and declares she  
 would never have  
 married Lucifer.

- ¶ How, by the counceyl of floripes, the frensshe  
 men dyslodged' thadmyral fro his paleys  
 wyth grete bataylle, and' how by enchaunte-  
 28 ment a gyrdle was taken awaye fro the  
 douzter: ca. xj

- Florypes was wyse, and had consyderacyon that  
 -Lucafer, whyche was dede, was wel byloued wyth  
 32 thadmyral, and sayd to the frensshe men: "lordes,  
 knowe ye for trouthe that my fader loueth more thys

Floripas reminds  
 them that Lucifer

was Balan's  
greatest friend,  
and would surely  
be missed,

and advises them  
to arm them-  
selves, (2270)

and suddenly  
attack the Sara-  
cens. (2275)

They arm, and  
start out two and  
two at night fall.  
(2280)

Roland in front,

first slays Cor-  
suble, (2289)  
and Oliver Cold-  
roe. (2291)

The Saracens fly.  
(2299)  
Some jump out of  
the windows,  
(2300)

man than ony man lyuyng<sup>1</sup>. he abydeth for hym to  
come to dyner, & wyl not be at ease tyl he shal be  
retorneð. and yf by aduenture he knowe what is doon  
ye shal be here encombred and assaylled, and al the 4  
golde of the world shal not redeme you but that ye shal  
be dede. Wherefore I counceyl you that ye doo arme  
you and put you in poynte. take lyztly your helmes and  
your sheldes, For people that been armed be moche re- 8  
doubted of other vnarmed. therefore I wyl not that ye  
<sup>1</sup> be closed ne shette herin, Whan ye come in the paleys  
where thadmyral is, See that ye bere you and behaue  
you soo that ye be maysters and lordes of the place, 12  
and thenne shal ye be wel lodged." Whan the dough-  
ter had thus sayd, they were ryght wel contente, &  
prestly armed them, and gyrde their swerdes aboute  
them, And two & two yssued oute of the chambre, and 16  
goon corageously as lyons, boystously as wulues hungry,  
in suche wyse as they that wold abyde them ought sore  
to doubte and haue grete fere. And they went oute  
at the tyme that the sonne wente vnder, & bytwene 20  
nyght and day. And the formest of them in the waye  
was rolland, and the other folowed hym ryzt fyersly for  
to fyght. Roulland cryed to hys felowes that eche  
man shold do hys parte, & slee al the paynyns and sara- 24  
syns that they fonde in the paleys, whyche faylled not.  
Roulland smote corsuble mortally; Olyuer put to deth  
the Kynge Coldroe. Ther was not one but that they  
alle bare them wel. The soupper whyche was wel 28  
appoynted anone was turned vp so down & caste to the  
grounde; cuppes of golde and of syluer flewe and  
sowned in the place; Sarasyns goon to therthe slayn and  
dysmembred: Other lepe out of the <sup>2</sup> wyndowes, whyche 32  
after were founden dede: Other were all to-hewen,  
sholdres & legges smyton of. Thadmyral, all araged, put  
hym self to flyght oute of a wyndowe and lepe down in

<sup>1</sup> f vj, back, col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> f vij.

- to the depe dyche. Rolland went, after whyche had hym gretely at the hert, & supposed to haue smyten hym, And atteyned the marble stone of the wyndowe in suche  
4 wyse that his swerde entred a foot depe. "Brother," sayd Olyuer, "the admyral is escaped fro you." "Certeyn," ansuerd Rolland, "thereof am I euyl contente." Neuertheles they dyd so grete portement and bare them  
8 so wel that they were lordes & maysters of the chyef toure of the castel & palays. And after shetted fast the yates and were alle sure wythoute daunger. Sauf they myght haue noo mete. This passed a lytel whyle  
12 the Admyral was in the dyches al affrayed, and yf there had not be somme for to haue drawn hym oute he had neuer departed; and began to crye to his men that they shold come to hym to drawe hym oute. Brullant of  
16 mommyere and sortybrant of conymbres drewe hym out. And after that sayd Sortybrant: "Syr Admyral, byleue me another tyme: Alwaye atte tayl of an olde dogge kepe you." Thadmyrall answerd: "I praye you  
20 scorne me nomore, I shal <sup>1</sup>wel aduenge me or two monethes be passed. Doo sowne to assaulte for tassaylle the toure." Sortybrant sayd: "it is reson that your wylle be doon; but the nyzt is ouer nyghe; by myn  
24 aduys it is better to abyde tyl to morowe, And thenne your excersyte shal be assembled for to werke more surely." thadmyral was contente, and sayd by grete dysplaysaunce: "Ha, fayr Lucafer! neuer shal I see you  
28 more, I haue loste alle my ioye. O ye frensshe men, accursed be ye! ye haue taken hym awaye fro me, but by Mahoun my god, to whome I haue gyuen my lyf, to morne shal the syege be layed tofore the toure. And I  
32 shal neuer departe for none euyl wether that shal come, Ne for thyng that may be, tyl the toure be taken and the walles layed on the erthe. And I shal make the frensshe men to be drawn at the taylles of my horses;

Balan escapes by a window. (2311)

The French are masters of the castle, (2321)

but have no food. (2325)

Balan, who had fallen into a ditch, calls for help. (2330)

Sortibrant and others rescue him. (2335)

He swears vengeance.

Sortibrant advises him to wait for daylight. (2352)

Balan laments over Lucifer. (2355)

He is sure the  
French knights  
cannot hold out,  
as they have no  
provisions, (2365)

nor can Charles  
send them any  
help. (2367)

In the morning  
the Saracens  
assemble, (2369)

they cover four  
square miles.

Balan engages  
Marvin, "a moche  
fals theef," to  
steal the magic  
girdle. (2387)

Marvin agrees.  
(2397)

And after I shal make florypes the putayn to be brente  
in a fyre openly, and I am wel sure that they shal yelde  
them, For they be not vytaylled scars for foure dayes.  
And of that other parte I knowe wel they may haue no 4  
socours of no man whatsomeuer he be. For we holde  
the stronge brydge of mantryble, & they may haue noo  
socours but yf it come ouer that brydge; & of that other  
parte, charles shal <sup>1</sup>haue noo tydynges of his barons ne 8  
shal not knowe whether they be dede or a-lyue, or in  
lyberte or in subiectyon." & here vpon they concluded  
and went to their lodgys tyl on the morne. And on the  
morne erly, thadmyral sente for al hys subgettes & 12  
concluded to laye the syege, and sware to holde it  
seuen yere longe but yf he had of them his wylle.  
Thenne come there so many paynyns in the contreye  
aboute that theyr lodgyses helde foure myle of space. 16  
ye may thynke in what daunger the frensshe men were,  
whyche were but twelue persones onely, and had none  
other conduyte ne comforte but to be wythin assyeged  
in grete peryll of famyne. Neuertheles alwaye where 20  
as the sarasyns dyd gretely theyr deuoyr for to entre,  
yet they coude no thyng gryeue them. Thadmyral called  
one marpyn, a moche fals theef emonge alle humayn  
creatures, & sayd to hym: "Marpyn, by the berde that 24  
I bere on my chynne yf thou mayst do soo moche as for  
to stele awaye the gyrdle that Florypes bereth, I shal  
rewarde and gyue to the largely of my golde & syluer,  
& thou shalt be my grete frende. For yf I may haue 28  
it, I am sure that the frensshe men shal sone be dede  
for hungre, and thenne may they nomore greue me."  
¶ That gyrdle was of suche vertu that <sup>2</sup>as longe as it  
shold haue dured wythin the toure, they wythin shold 32  
neuer haue be famyne. "Syr," sayd the theef, "abyde  
tyl it be nyght, & I swere to you that to morne,  
or the sonne aryse, I shal shewe to you the gyrdle, &

<sup>1</sup> f vij, back.

<sup>2</sup> f vij, back, col. 2.



- shal delyuer it to you." & herupon, whan it was nyght,  
 he entred secretlye in to the dyches, whyche were ful of  
 water, and passed ouer, and after whan he was at the  
 4 fote of the toure, moche subtylly with his engynes he  
 mounted vp in to the wyndowes, & entred in to the  
 toure, and took a candel, & after cam to the chambre of  
 Florypes, & fonde it faste shette. But with fals & dya-  
 8 bolyke wordes he opened it; and whan he was wythin,  
 he sawe that al þe barons were fast a-slepe, and he made  
 so enchauntements that for no thyng they myght  
 awake. and thenne he came to Florypes, and serched so  
 12 pryuely that he took the gyrdle, & after gyrde hym self  
 wyth-al. and after thys he behelde the doughter al naked,  
 whiche was moche fayre; & was enclyned anone to haue  
 defouled hyr, & began to take hyr aboute the necke,  
 16 whyche sodeynly awoke, & began to crye moche strongly,  
 and called hyr maydens & the barons. Wherefore the  
 maydens came anone al abasshed & aferde. & whan they  
 saw marpyn the thief as blacke <sup>1</sup>as a moore, the moost  
 20 hardyest of them began to flee. Anon as Guye of Bour-  
 goyn herde the voys of florypes, he came to hyr wyth  
 hys naked swerde in his honde, and escryed to hyr that  
 she shold not be aferde of ony thyng. And he came  
 24 so wel to poynte, that yf he had not come, the thief had  
 defowled florypes. but as sone as the thief herde hym,  
 he sprange oute of the bedde wyth grete haste, and  
 Guye of bourgoyne recountred hym, and gaf hym so  
 28 grete a stroke that he clefted hym by the myddel, and  
 cutte a two the gyrdel, and the candel quenched. The  
 other barons came after, and whan they sawe the werke,  
 & the thief dede, they threw the body in to the see  
 32 wyth the gyrdle. And whan it was knowen that he had  
 stolen the gyrdle, and was loste wyth hym in the see,  
 there was moche sorowe for the losse of soo noble a  
 Iewel. And Florypes wepte ryght sore, sayeng that

At night he crosses  
the moat, (2403)

climbs into the  
tower, (2406)

and comes to  
Floripas' cham-  
ber. (2408)

He sends the  
French knights to  
sleep by enchant-  
ment. (2411)

He attempts to  
ravish Floripas,  
(2428)  
who cries for  
help. (2431)

Guy hears her  
cries, (2441)

runs to her cham-  
ber, (2442)

and cuts down  
Marvin with his  
sword. (2448)

He throws his  
body into the sea,

and the girdle is  
lost. (2464)

the losse of the gyrdle may neuer be recouuerd. Neuertheles the barons wyth fayre wordes comforted hyr, in suche manere that they alle were contente.

¶ How the barons were assyeged' in the toure 4  
wyth Florypes and hyr maydens, which  
suffred grete hungre, and' how the god-<sup>1</sup>des  
by them were confounded': capitulo xij

Balan is surprised  
at Marvin's not  
returning. (2482)

W han the day was comen, and thadmyral sawe not 8  
Marpyn thenchauntour retorne, he was moche  
abasshed, and demaunded brullant, Sortybrant, and hys  
other lordes, counceyl what he shold doo, consydered  
that Marpyn was not retorne. Sortybrant sayd: "Syr 12  
admyral, knowe ye for certayn that the theef is deed,  
sythe he is not retorne and comen; but I counceyl you  
that ye doo sounne your trompettes for tassemble your  
subgettes, for tassaylle the toure and confounde the 16  
cristen men." And wyth slynges and other engynes  
they doo caste stones & dartes enuenumed, but—blessyd  
be god!—the frensshe men doubted them no thyng  
After they had contynued the syege a whyle, brede and 20  
wyn began to faylle to the barons and maydens, in  
suche wyse that they had noo thyng to ete. Thenne  
the sorowe of the maydens, whyche were so fayre &  
ful of compassyon, was ouer grete, and were al desolate. 24  
And emonge the other, the noble florypes was moche  
dysplaysaunte for the necessitye of the frensshe men, of  
hyr self, and of hyr damoysselles. often tymes she  
swowned & fyl to grounde <sup>2</sup>as dede: Guy of bourgoyne, 28  
hyr spouse that shold be, took hyr vp moche swetely,  
and recomforted hyr to hys power, & sayd to hys  
felawes: "My brethern & lordes, ye see the necessitye  
that we suffre; it is now thre dayes passed syth we had 32  
ony brede. And yet it greueth me more for these

Sortibrant says he  
is surely dead,  
(2484)

and advises Balan  
to order the  
assault to begin.  
(2485)

The French de-  
fend themselves  
well, (2492)

but their pro-  
visions begin to  
fail. (2496)

Hunger begins to  
be felt, especially  
by the women.  
(2497)

Guy of Burgundy  
proposes to his  
fellows

damoysselles than for my self, And I say you for trouthe  
that I may no lenger endure but yf we do otherwyse.  
And be ye sure, that I had leuer to put my body in  
4 auenture to be hurt and wounded mortally, than I shold  
abyde here wythin enclosed wyth thys melancolye.  
Wherfor, I say, late vs goo oute for to gete somme  
vytaylle; for better is to vs to deye wyth honour than to  
8 lyue with shame." Al the frenssh men were of thop-  
pynyon of guy. There vpon Florypes sayd: "My  
lordes, I wote now wel that your god is of lytel power,  
whan he gyueth to you none ayde ne comforte; And I  
12 say you wel, that yf ye had adoured our goddes, they  
had pourueyed for you mete and drynke." Tofore that  
she had fynysshed hyr wordes, Roulland ansuerd and  
sayd: "Madame, I praye you that ye shewe to vs  
16 your goddes that ye speke of. And yf they haue the  
power that ye say, that they may gyue to vs mete and  
drynke, & that they do soo moche that the <sup>1</sup>puyssaunce  
of fraunce come hyther for to socoure vs, we shal al  
20 byleue on them wythout varyengi." The mayde sayd:  
"Anone ye shal see them," & Incontynent after that she  
had taken the kayes, she ladde the barons vnder the  
erthe, and shewed to them the goddes of the sarasyns,  
24 whiche were in a place moche noble, precyous, and ryche.  
And there were in grete mageste, Appolyn, Mahoun,  
and Termagaunt, the god Margot, and Iupyn, and many  
other, whyche were alle massy of fyn golde of Arabye,  
28 enorned wyth many Iewellys, Odoraunt of bame and  
encence; and many other tresours were there assembled.  
Guy of bourgoyne sayd, whan he sawe soo grete  
tresour: "A! lord god, who wold haue wende that  
32 in thys place had be so grete rychesse assembled?  
Wold god that Rycharde of normandy had now Iuppyn  
in hys cyte of Roan, For he shold wel accomplysse  
wyth it the chyrche of the holy Trynyste. And that

to make a sortie  
to get food. (2514)

Floripas says that  
if they would be-  
lieve on Mahomet  
they would have  
food enough.  
(2528)

Roland asks to see  
her gods. (2531)

Floripas leads  
them to the  
shrine, (2535)

where were  
Appolyn, and  
Mahomet, Termagaunt,  
Margot, and  
Jupiter, (2539)

and great trea-  
sure.

Guy wishes they  
had all that gold.  
(2547)

kyng charles had thother goddes, he shold repayre ageyn þ<sup>e</sup> chyrche of rome whyche is destroyed. And with the remenaunte he shold make men ryche, and to sette them in good poynte." Florypes ansuerd and sayd: 4

Floripas rebukes him, (2559) and says they ought to worship her gods.

"Syr Guye, ye speke vylaynsly ayenst the goddes; crye them mercy & adoure them, <sup>1</sup>to thende that they enclyne them to you to doo you comforte." guy sayd vnto hyr: "I can not praye to them, Madame, for I 8 see theyr eyen al a-slepe, and ye shal see that they may not here ne see." and therwyth he smote Iupyn, And Ogyer danoys smote margot, that they flewe to the erthe, and were anone alle to-broken. Wherefore Roulland 12 sayd to the doughter: "In trouthe, madame, I see that ye haue goddes that be not worth. Of them that been fallen to therthe I see not one of them remeue, ne make semblaunte to releue hym." Fro thenne forthon Florypes 16 had al theyr goddes in despyte, and byleued in Ihesu Cryste, sayeng thus: "I see, syr Roulland, that ye say the veray trouthe; but yf euer I byleue on them, I wyl that my body come to an euyl ende. and with good 20 herte I requyre that god that was borne of a vyrgyn, of whome ye haue enformed me, that he sende to you socours of fraunce, and that we fynde maner to gete vytalle for to satysfye our hungre." 24

Guy says they are all asleep. (2564)

He smashes Jupiter, and Ogyer smashes Margot. (2567)

Floripas is converted, and begins to pray. (2576)

¶ How the peres of Fraunce went out of the toure, and dyd a grete bataylle, In which they recouerd' twenty sommyers charged' of vytaylle: capitulo xiiij 28

She faints with hunger. (2584)

<sup>2</sup> **W**Han Florypes had sayd, she fyl down to the erth a-swoune for sorowe & anguysshe. Wherefor guy of bourgoyn wept moche soroufully for the loue of hyr. H[e]reupon Olyuer the 32 courageous came tofore them and sayd: "My lordes,

<sup>1</sup> g j.

<sup>2</sup> g j, col. 2.



- I you assure, by the god that suffred deth for creatures humayn, I had leuer that my body were quartred and smytyn in pyeces than I shold suffre this pryson, but  
 4 that I shold fyght quykely wyth the paynymys;” & semblably sayd rolland. Wherefore, wythout other delyberacion, they sette theyr sheldes in good poynte, and mounted on horsback, and aualed the brydge, &  
 8 wyth a stedfast courage made them redy. & whan they were alle afore the toure of marble, Rolland sayd to the other: “Syr Naymes, or ye, syr Ogier, it byhoueth that one of you<sup>1</sup> abyde for to kepe the place, that at the  
 12 retornyng we may entre surely.” ¶ The Duke Naymes coude take noo pacyence, but that he answerd thus: “Syr Roulland, thynke not that I be so vnhappy of persone ne of lygnage that euer I shold be reproched,  
 16 and that euer I shold be your portyer. I wyl not doo so in noo wyse: though I be olde, yet can I torne myn hors. For I am harde of <sup>2</sup>synewes, and haue myn herte wel assured, and wyl be hardy. ynough for to smyte  
 20 vpon myn enemyes whan tyme shal requyre, ne doubt ye no thyng therof.” Rolland ansuerd: “syr, ye say wel, ye shal come wyth vs. Thyerry or geffroy, that one of you two shal abyde.” but it was not their playsyr  
 24 to abyde enclosed. Neuertheles, at the request of Rolland, thyerry abode with geffroy, whyche shetted the yates surely after that the other barons were wythoute, whyche, eche with his shelde tofore hym and swerde in  
 28 hys hande, wente mustryng them tofore the castel. Thadmyral lokyng out at a wyndowe, knewe the frensshe men, Wherfor hastely he sente for brullant and Sortybrant to come to hym wyth other, to whome he sayd:  
 32 “my barons and subgettes, the frensshe men ben comen, and me semeth they wyl fyght. yf they be not al slayn, i shal be euyl contente. Wherefore do soiwne your hornes for tassemble your peple; ye tary ouer longe.”

Oliver proposes a sortie, (2598)

to which all agree.

They sally out. (2615)

Roland wishes Naymes or Ogier to remain behind to guard the gate. (2618)

Naymes refuses,

and says, though he is old yet he can still fight. (2620)

Thierry and Geoffrey agree to remain. (2631)

Balan sees them coming, (2638)

and bids Sortybrant assemble his men to resist them. (2645)

<sup>1</sup> orig. yon.

<sup>2</sup> g j, back.

The Saracens  
attack them,

but in a little  
while more than  
100 are killed.  
(2656)

Clacion, Balan's  
nephew, comes  
up with 15,000  
men. (2664)

Roland cheers on  
his companions.  
(2670)

All the Saracens  
are afraid of him.  
(2679)

After the battle  
the French  
knights meet 20  
pack-horses, laden  
with provisions  
for Balan. (2692)

They kill the  
escort. (2703)

And assone as they had so doon, a grete multytude of sarasyns were there assembled, & came and assaylled the frensshe men. But rolland, that helde durandal in hys honde, with his felowes came vpon the mastyn 4 sarasyns by suche a furour, that in a lytel whyle moo than an hondred were slayn. <sup>1</sup>For vnhappy was he that came to socoure the sarasyns. Thenne came Clacyon, whyche was neuewe to the admyral, with xv 8 thousand fyghtyng men.—And know ye for certayn, that in that tyme in spayn was noo sarasyn more doubted than he.—Whan the barons sawe hym come, Rolland escryed gherard, Ogyer & Guy: “O noble 12 knyghtes! in thonour of god, eche of you do so his deuoyr that at thys tyme, wyth vycторыe, we may obtayne vytaylle for the maydens in the toure.” That sayd, Rolland smote his hors wyth hys spores, and wyth 16 durandal smote a fyers Paynym named Rampyn soo myghtely, that he clefte hede and body at a stroke; wherof they þat were there present were abasshed. & thenne the sarasyns doubted so strongly rolland, that 20 there was not a man durst put hym self tofore hym, but.. yf he thought to deye. Gherard of mondydyer sayd: “My brethern & lordes, Who wyl here-after haue playsyr & be honoured, it is tyme that he shewe hym, 24 for often by one vnhappy man a valyaunt man is in daunger.” Wherfor with that word al these barons were moche more feruent than they had be, to thende that euery man shewed hym self suche as he ouzt to 28 be. & after that þ<sup>e</sup> batayll was fynnyshed for that day, as god wold, the barons fonde by <sup>2</sup>the tour aforesayd a grete auenture, For they sawe passe by the castel xx sommyers laden wyth vytayl, that is to say, brede, wyn, 32 venyson, & other vytaylles ynow, and a paynym conduyted them of margote vnto the sarasyns: but Incon-tynent the ledars of the sarasyns and of theyr vytayl

<sup>1</sup> g j, back, col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> g ij.

were slayn anone of the barons, & the duc Naymes & Wyllyam the scot conduyted & ledde them forth. And Rolland and the other came & auoyded the place, and drive them inside the castle gates. (2704)

4 in suche wyse that they were dryuen in to the tour; but this thyng was not doon without daunger and grete payne.

¶ How guy of bourgoyn was taken of the sarasyns, beten vylaynously, and' demaunded' of thadmyral, and the complayntes that Florypes made for hym, & other maters: capitulo xiiij

12 **A**S I haue sayd tofore, the barons of fraunce, thus as they wente in theyr repayre, and ladde the sommyers afore sayd, there came so grete habundaunce of men of armes of the partye of kyng' Claryon, that it was

16 merueylle. There was thenne an harde and stronge recountre, in so moche that duc basyn was slayn, & Aulbery hys <sup>1</sup>sone. For whan he sawe his fader deye, The Saracens press heavily on the French. (2706)

20 and abode. and yet thys was not the moost harm, For Incontynent he fyl vpon hym, and there he was slayn

24 vnder hym of the paynyms, & sodeynly he was enuyronned of moo than an hondred knyghtes sarasyns, whyche took hym, & took of hys helme fro hys hede, & after bounde hys eyen, so that he saw nothyng, and Basyn and Aubrey are slain, (2730)

28 ledde hym forth, hys handes bounden behynde hym at his backe. and whan guy sawe hym thus deteyned, he began to crye wyth an hye voys: ¶ "O Ihesus, veray god, whych hast made & formed me! whyther goo I now, and led away blindfolded. (2743)

32 that am euyl fortunéd? O Ihesus, comforte me! O noble Charlemayn, ryght noble emperour, and myn He prays and cries for help. (2749)

<sup>1</sup> g ij, col. 2.

Clarion mocks  
Guy. (2753)

The French are so  
hard pressed that  
they have to take  
refuge in the  
castle. (2776)

Floripas enquires  
after Guy. (2781)

Roland tells her  
he is a prisoner.  
(2783)

Floripas swoons,

and after declares  
she will surrender  
the castle if Guy  
be not rescued  
before two days.  
(2792)

vnclē, thou shalt neuer see me!" The kyng<sup>t</sup> claryon  
sayd<sup>t</sup> to hym: "Fayr frende, no thyngē shall auayle  
the, thy cryeng ne thy brayeng<sup>t</sup>. I shal delyuer  
the al lyuyng<sup>t</sup> to the admyral of spayn thys day, And<sup>t</sup> 4  
to-morne thou shalt be hanged<sup>t</sup>." But now ye may  
wel thynke how the other peres of Fraunce, hys  
felowes, were euyl contentē whan they sawe the Erle  
Guye soo prysonner. ¶ Neuertheles<sup>1</sup> they dyd grete 8  
feates of armes or they were constrayned to entre in to  
the tour, & assone as they were descended, & the yates  
barred, eueryche went to dyner: and thenne floripes  
cam anon to rolland, & said<sup>t</sup> to hym: "syr rolland, I 12  
requyre you that ye say to me where is syr guye of  
bourgoyne my husbond become. I wote wel, whan ye  
departed hens, that he went wyth you emonge thother.  
Ye ought to bryngē hym to me ageyn. I shal neuer be 16  
Ioyous at the hert tyl I knowe where he is." Rolland<sup>t</sup>  
ansuerd<sup>t</sup>: "ha, Florypes, curtoys lady! in hym trust ye  
no more, for certes ye haue lost hym. ye shal neuer see  
hym; the paynyns haue ledde hym maulgre vs, & we 20  
knowe not what they wyl do wyth hym." florypes heer  
yng these wordes, for sorowe & anguysshe fyl to the erth  
alle a-swoune more than iiij tymes as dede; but rolland,  
whych wepte for hyr, oft releued hyr: & whan she was 24  
rysen, she began to crye with an hye voys: "O barons  
of fraunce, by that god<sup>t</sup> that maad heuen & erthe, yf I  
haue not guy of bourgoyne, to whome I ought to be  
maryed<sup>t</sup>, I shal yelde thys toure<sup>r</sup> or the nexte day be 28  
passed<sup>t</sup>. O holy vyrgyn marye! I shold be espoused to  
hym, and for loue of hym be baptysed and<sup>t</sup> be crysten.  
Alas! our loues haue sone faylled<sup>t</sup>. This sorowe hath  
made me<sup>2</sup> wel to forgete the hungre that I haue had<sup>t</sup> 32  
these iij dayes. Alas! I am vnhappy." Rolland<sup>t</sup>  
myght not see the melancolye of thys Florypes, but  
promysed<sup>t</sup> hyr to make hyr glad<sup>t</sup> wythin ij dayes, for

<sup>1</sup> g ij, back.

<sup>2</sup> g ij, back, col. 2.



thenne atte ferthēst she shōld see syr guye at hyr  
 playsyr, and that she shōld no thyng<sup>1</sup> doubte therof ;  
 “for knowe ye surely,” sayd rolland, “I had leuer to  
 4 be quarterd than he shōld not come ageyn, & he shal  
 be rendred to you, or his deth shal be sore auenged. &  
 madame, ye knowe wel that your sorow & wepyng may  
 not brynge hym ageyn, & ye wote wel that it is thre  
 8 dayes passed syth we ete. we haue purchaced vytayl for  
 vs & these damoysselles, of whome ye see the pyte, late  
 vs take pacyence of the lytel quantyte, & be we contente  
 to entreiene the lyf :” for ye ouȝt to knowe that they  
 12 myght not recouure the sommyers with vytaylle, by  
 cause of the trouble of guy of bourgoyne, whyche was  
 deteyned prysoner. After that Rolland had said thys,  
 the barons and the damoysselles thanked god of al, and  
 16 fedde them suffysauntlye, in praysyng and lawdyng  
 god deuoutelye.

Roland promises  
 he will rescue  
 him, (2804)

and advises her to  
 take some of the  
 food which they  
 had won. (2812)

Now late vs speke a lytel of Guye of bourgoyn,  
 whiche was ledde tofore the admyral. moche troubled,  
 20 dyscolourd, & chaunged of vysage was the sayd Guye  
<sup>1</sup>by cause he had not eten in thre dayes tofore, & for p<sup>o</sup>  
 daunger that he felte hym to be in the handes of his  
 enemyes. & there tofore the admyral he was al des-  
 24 poyled of his armes ; & thenne appyered his body wel  
 membred, & ballant demaunded what was his name &  
 who he was. the baron<sup>o</sup> ansuerd : “Admyral, I fere not  
 to say the trouthe ; I am called guy of bourgoyn, sub-  
 28 gette to the crowne of fraunce, & cosyn germayn to  
 rolland the valyaunt, which is the man that ought wel  
 to be doubted.” ballant ansuerd : “I knowe the wel  
 ynough. it is more than vij monethes goon that my  
 32 douȝter hath had the in grete loue, which dyspleseth me  
 gretely : & I know wel that she loueth the more than  
 ony man lyuyng ; & I for that loue haue lost many men  
 of grete facion, & am put out of my tour, the chyef

Meanwhile Guy  
 is led before  
 Balan, (2820)

who demands his  
 name. (2826)

Guy tells him.  
 (2829)

Balan recognizes  
 him as his daugh-  
 ter's love,

and the cause of  
 all his trouble.  
 (2836)

Balan demands  
the names of the  
knights in the  
castle. (2838)

Guy recounts  
their names.

A Saracen gives  
him a blow on the  
mouth. (2850)

Guy seizes him  
with one hand,  
and with the other  
breaks his neck.  
(2856)

The Saracens fall  
on him and beat  
him nearly to  
death. (2860)

strengthe of al my contreye. but yf al be yolden to me  
ageyn shortly, þou shalt be quarterd in short tyme, &  
dysmembred. & more-ouer I demaunde þat thou say to  
me the trouthe, who been they that ben enclosed in the 4  
tour, of whom we haue ben assaylled with so daunger-  
ously." Guy ansuerd: "gladly I shal say to the. Be  
thou wel sure that rolland the valyaunte is there,  
Olyner, his felowe, ryght courageous, Thyerry, duc of 8  
Ardayne, Rychard of Normandye, Gherard<sup>1</sup> of Mun-  
dydye, Naymes duc of bauyere, & basyn the genewey,  
whom ye haue slayn; but, by the grace of god & helpe  
of charles, his deth shal be to you dere solde." Thad- 12  
myral was ryzt euyl contente of the menaces of Guye;  
Wherfore a moche fyers sarasyn took hys fyste and  
smote guye on the vysage in suche wyse that the blood  
yssued oute of hys nose & mouth habundantly. wyth 16  
that stroke, guy was sette a-fyre for angre and furour,  
and lefte not for to be forthwith quartred, & he was not  
holden, but that he toke that same sarasyn by the heyre  
wyth one of hys handes, and wyth that other hande he 20  
smote hym vpon the grete bone of þe necke behynde,  
that he brake it, And wythoute moeuyng of hande or  
foot, he fyl down deed to the grounde tofore the admyral.  
¶ Ballant was soo euyl contente wyth that stroke, that 24  
he was al enraged for the deth of the paynym, as for  
the mysprysyng that guy had doon in hys presence to-  
fore his eyen, and cryed with a loude voys that he shold  
be taken. & assone as he had sayd the worde, the sara- 28  
syns as wulues enraged, whyche wyth theyr feet and  
handes al to-bete hym, in suche wyse that he knewe not  
where he was, And had slayne hym yf the admyral had  
not commaunded theym that<sup>2</sup> he shold not be put to 32  
deth in suche manere.

<sup>1</sup> g iij, col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> g iij, back.

¶ How the paynyns had' purposed' to haue  
hanged' Guye of bourgoyne, seeyng' the  
crysten men, whyche socoured' hym

4 myztely : capitulo xv

- A Fter that guye of bourgoyn was wel bounden and  
straytly, Thadmyral sente to come to hym brillant  
of mommyere, Sortybrant of conymbres, and for many  
8 other of his counceyl, and sayd to them : " my frendes,  
I praye you that ye gyue to me counceyl what I ought  
to do wyth thys prysonner, whyche dothe me so grete  
reproche & despysyng, as ye see and knowe." "Syr,"  
12 sayd Sortybrant, "I shal gyue to you good counceyl.  
yf ye wyl byleue me, ye shal doo reyse vp a galowe tree  
nyghe to the dyches of the toure, in whych been the  
prysonners of fraunce, & to-morne ye shal do hange this  
16 prysoner ; & see that ye haue in a secrete place, nyghe  
vnto þe said galowes, v thousand turkes, wel armed & in  
good poynte : and I am sure that the frey[n]sshe men be  
so hardy and oute of mesure, that, whan they shal see  
20 their felowe for to be hanged, they shal come oute for  
to socoure hym ; & your peple that shal be hydde in  
the busshement shal come out on them & take them.  
Thenne shal ye haue them al surely, for to do wyth, your  
24 playsyr." this counceyl was approued by thadmyral to  
be good, & was therwyth wel content ; wherfore, wyth-  
oute takyng of ony other delyberacyon, the galowes  
were made as afore is sayd. & ryght nyghe to the place  
28 was a lytel wode, & lete put therin secretly xx M  
fyghtyng men, & comanded them to be gouerned by the  
kyng claryon & other capytayns. & after, thadmyral made  
guy of bourgoyne to be ledde with xxx sarasyns vnto  
32 the galowes, whyche cessed not to bete and smyte on  
hym with grete staues, whyche greued hym sore : &  
they bonde his handes behynde hys backe moche

Balan calls a  
council. (2869)

Sortibrant advises  
him to have Guy  
hanged, (2884)

in front of the  
castle,

and to set an  
ambush for the  
French if they  
should try to  
rescue him. (2880)

This advice is  
approved. (2891)

20,000 Saracens  
are placed in  
ambush, (2902)

and Guy is led  
bound to the  
gallows. (2905)

He calls on his  
companions for  
help. (2911)

Roland, from a  
window, sees the  
gallows, (2913)

and tells the  
others. (2917)

Naymes guesses  
the object of the  
gallows. (2922)

Floripas implores  
Roland to rescue  
Guy, (2928)

for she can never  
survive him.

straytly. & whan he felte a grete corde aboute his necke,  
and hys eyen bounden, & sawe no thyng whyther he  
went, Thys thynkyng, wyth an hye voys he began to  
crye: "O redemptour of the world, my maker and my 4  
god, for whos name I am in payne, and goo to deye an  
euyl deth, the meryte of thy passyon take my soule in  
to thy kepyng, for the body taketh hys ende! And lyke  
as I haue nede of thy helpe, So I beseche and requyre 8  
the to counceyll and comferte me. ¶ O noble barons  
of fraunce, ye shal neuer see me: yf ye suffre me to  
be hanged, it shal be to you grete shame. O Roulland,  
fayr cosyn, remembre me! or ellys shal ye neuer see me 12  
on lyue." he thus sayeng, and other pyetous wordes,  
Rolland was in a wyndowe, and behelde ouer a lytel  
roche, and sawe the galowes reysed. Wherefore he came  
to hys felawes and sayd: "I meruaylle moche what 16  
thys meneth, that I haue seen the galowes sette vpon the  
dyches. I wote neuer to what purpoos it is doon."  
Whan the other had seen it, Duc Naymes sayd to them,  
that withoute faute they were made for to hange on 20  
guye of bourgoyne. & forthwith they saw hym comyng  
al despoyled, and was ledde toward the galowes; & they  
knewe wel that yf he were not socoured and rescued,  
that he shold be hanged & put to deth. Whan the 24  
fayr florypes herde them plede, she came to them for to  
wete what it was; and after whan she sawe the galowes  
reysed, and guy, hir loue and tocomyng husbond, so  
shamefully ledde, ye may thynke in what estate she 28  
was reduced; and began to crye: "O noble knyghtes,  
shal ye suffre guy of bourgoyn your felawe to be hanged  
tofore your eyen? Truste ye none other, that yf he deye,  
by the same god that fourmed me I shal lepe out of the 32  
wyndowe, & shal deye in despe<sup>r</sup>acyon." and after she  
came to rolland, & kneled down on both hyr knees, and  
kysed hys feet humbly, in sayeng: "Syr Rolland, in



thonour of god I requyre the that it may playse the to  
take the payne for to rescowe & socoure my loue guye,  
and ellys I am a loste woman. Thynke for to arme  
4 you, and I shal goo and make redy your horses, for the  
tyme is ouer short; so that by the playsyr of god ye  
shal be there in tyme." Thenne Rolland & his felowes  
armed them moche hastely, and gyrde theyr swerdes  
8 and sheldes, and wente oute of the toure, and on hors  
backe sprange oute. And or they rode ony fether,  
rolland sayd: "lordes, at thys houre lyeth our deth &  
our lyf in suche wyse, that yf we haue not good con-  
12 duyte & <sup>1</sup>loyal, we shal neuer retorne. We ne ben but  
x, & the paynems ben Innumerable & of grete force. In  
thonour of god I praye you, that alwaye we holde vs to-  
gyder, & that eche take hede of other as moche as he may,  
16 For yf we be deuyded, we shal sone be taken and hanged.  
And on that other parte, yf one of vs falle to the grounde,  
that prestly he be reysed, And not to leue hym for lyf  
ne deth, And that none faylle other. And I shal be he  
20 that shal brynge you to-gyder by thayde of god; for I  
swere <sup>2</sup>to you by my lyf, that as long as I may holde  
durandal, and may kepe the lyf in my body, ye shal  
haue of me a good deffendour and waraunt." and in  
24 lyke wyse sayd al the other. Florypes answerd: "my  
lordes, ye may tarye ouer longe;" & she went in to hyr  
chambre, and opened a coffre, in whiche was the crowne  
of Ihesu Cryste, and moche reuerently they kyssed it  
28 & sette it on theyr heedes. Wherfor with a good  
courage they yssued out, noo thyng dretyng the puy-  
saunce of the paynmys. & after, Florypes and hyr  
damoyssellys lyft vp the brydge, & shette fast the toure.  
32 ¶ The noble peres of fraunce, fayr and in good orden-  
aunce, wente toward the galowes alonge the medowes,  
& the paynmys were vnder the galowes, and were besy  
to brynge vp guy of bourgoyn, which had hys eyen

She urges them  
to lose no time.  
(2929)

The French arm  
themselves  
hastily, mount,  
and prepare to  
start. (2938),

Roland warns his  
companions to  
keep together,  
(2944)

and to be ready,  
each to help the  
other. (2946)

Floripas brings  
out the sacred  
crown, (2960)

which the knights  
kiss, (2962)

and then pass out  
of the gates. (2966)

<sup>1</sup> orig. boyal.

<sup>2</sup> g iij, back.

Guy is on the point of being hanged, (2972)

but Roland puts the Saracens to flight, (2976)

and kills 20 of them.

The ambush breaks out. (2989)

Roland charges Cornyfer, (2996)

and slays him, (3008)

and then rides to the gallows, (3010) unbinds Guy,

who takes the arms and horse of a Saracen. (3032)

The French are hard pressed.

bounden, & hys handes also, and a grete corde aboute hys necke. and whan Rolland sawe that, he hasted hys hors, & the other after, & began to crye to the paynmys sayeng<sup>t</sup>: “ha! trayters, mastyns! It shal not be as ye 4 thynk: ye haue begonne suche a thyng wherof ye shal repente.” Of thys bruyt which was made so Impetuously, the moost hardy of xxx that helde guye began to flee; and they were so hastely poursyewed that xx 8 of them <sup>1</sup>were slayn. here vpon they that were in the wode camen out, makyng a grete bruyt; and al afore came Cornyfer, a meruayllous paynym, vpon a morel of grete facyon, And began to crye: “ha! ye frensshe 12 men dysmesured! come ye for to socoure hym that is Iuged by thadmyral to be hanged? ye haue enterprysed a grete folye; For al ye shal be hanged wyth hym.” Whan rolland herde the paynym so say, he was moche 16 angry, & helde durandal in hys hande, & came ageynst hym as a wulf enraged. Neuertheles the paynym smote on his shelde daungerously; but after that he was recoured, he atteyned and smote the paynym so 20 pyussantly that he clefte hys heed doun to the body. and after that he was dede, rolland came rennyng vnto the galowes, and vnblynfelde & vnbonde syr guye of bourgoyne, and bad hym holde hym by hym tyl he was 24 armed. & after that Roulland had slayn another paynym, Guye, beyng in thassuraunce of thother peres of fraunce, he armed hym Incontynent with tharmes of that paynym by the helpe of hys felowes, & mounted vpon the Paynmys 28 hors. but thys was not doon wythoute grete payne and meruayllous deffence that they made, for anone al the sarasyns that were in the wode came vpon the ba<sup>2</sup>rons of fraunce, and dyd grete Inconuenyents. Neuertheles, by 32 thayde of god, the barons were of so good gouernement & of so entyer courage, of so meruayllous deffence and pyussaunce, that at that tyme they put soo many sarasyns.

<sup>1</sup> g iiij, back, col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> g v.

to deth, that the place was al encombred, and al were  
 empresshed to goo further. Emonge whome guye of  
 bourgoyne dyd meruaylles: for after that he was  
 4 armed by the conseruacyon of hys felowes, he dyd  
 gretely hys deuoyr, & sayd to the sarasyns: "O ye  
 traytres mastyns, I shal shiewe you in thys Iourney  
 that I am escaped fro your handes." & by thus fyght-  
 8 yng they made the sarasyns to withdrawe a grete  
 bowe draught. They thus fyghtyng, on that other  
 syde were moo than ten thousand sarasyns redy to  
 empresshe them the passage, that they myt not wyth-  
 12 drawe them. Wherefore Rolland, holdyng durandal in  
 hys honde, seeyng that, called al hys felowes and sayd  
 to them: "lordes, it is noo tyme now to wythdrawe vs,  
 but of necessity we must auance vs for our owne con-  
 16 seruacyon: yf we may gete the brydge, doubte we no  
 thyng, & thenne may we wel saue vs." "Roulland,"  
 Sayd Guye of bourgoyne, "Ye knowe wel that in the  
 toure we haue noo thyng to ete, & yf we were<sup>1</sup> wythin,  
 20 how shold we lyue? yet had I leuer to haue my body  
 daungerously wounded in fyghtyng vpon the sarasyns,  
 than to deye for hūgre were wythin, & wythoute  
 daunger. and yf it be the wylle of god that in thys day  
 24 we shold deye, al be it at hys playsyr, and we shal take  
 it a worth, as good and trewe knyghtes of god." Al the  
 other barons were of hys oppynyon, & goon forth in grete  
 purpoos for to bere them valyauntly. They beyng in  
 28 thys purpoos to bere them valyauntly, as sayd is,  
 Florypes was in a wyndowe of the toure, and sawe Guye  
 of bourgoyne hyr loue, wherof she was moche Ioyous,  
 and cryed to hym wyth an hye voys, that hit wold  
 32 plesse hym to come to hyr, sayeng, that yf she lyued, for  
 the prowesse of the barons that hyr fader thadmyral  
 shold ones be in hys daunger. Wherfor Ogyer the  
 danoyss sayd: "Lordes, haue ye not herde how nobly

Guy performs  
 marvellous feats.

The Saracens be-  
 gin to give way.  
 (3041)

Roland calls on  
 his companions to  
 make an effort to  
 gain the bridge,  
 (3052)

but Guy reminds  
 him that they  
 have no pro-  
 visions, (3055)

and says it is  
 better to die  
 fighting than be  
 starved. (3058)

All the others  
 agree. (3061)

Floripas from a  
 window cheers on  
 Guy. (3080)

she speketh. She is wel worthy that we doo for hyr. And knowe ye that I shal not be at ease yf we thus retorne." Thenne, wythoute more langage, the frensshe men ronnen vpon the sarasyns hastely, of whome 4 Roulland was alwaye formest, and made soo grete bruyt and descomfyture of paynyns, that they eschewed & made them to flee tofore him as <sup>1</sup>the byrde tofore the sperhawke. Guye of bourgoyn came with a grete cours 8 ageynst a paynym moche fyers, named Rampyer, and attayned hym so harde on the sometete of the heed, that he cleft hym to the myddel of hys body. Wherefore whan Roulland sawe hys grete valyaunce, he said to 12 hym : "Guy, fayr cosyn, I haue wel seen how ye haue menaced the paynym. Ye haue so doon that Florypes the fayr lady ought to loue you and holde you ryzt dere."

The French make  
a charge, and

scatter the Sara-  
cens as sparrows  
before the hawk.  
(3101)

Guy slays Ram-  
pire.

Roland praises  
his valour. (3109)

¶ How the peres of Fraunce aforesayd' were 16  
pourueyed' of vytaylles, and' after assyeged'  
and' foughten by the paynyns : ca. xvj

Floripas reminds  
the knights that  
they have no food.  
(3116)

The Saracens are  
driven back.  
(3123)

The French meet  
with 20 pack-  
horses, laden with

WHan Florypes the curtoys, beyng wyth hyr damoysselles in the toure, sawe the barons of 20 Fraunce to be assured tofore the castel, she cryed to hem hyely : "O ye lordes, I praye you to remembre to gete somme vytaylles or ye come entre herein, to thende that we deye not for famyne. Olyuer vnderstode wel the 24 damoyssel, and also roulland, whyche sayd that she had wel spoken, and in tyme : "for yf we entre in to the castel, we may not departe wyth our ease," and ther- upon al the barons with one <sup>2</sup>courage goon ageynst the 28 sarasyns, & smote on them & brake theyr aray, in suche wyse pat they made them to voyde the place, & to wyth- drawe and goo backe a grete dele. and thus as they retorned vnto the toure, a ryght good aduenture came 32 ageynst them. For xx sommyers passed forth by, which certeyn paynyns ledde, whyche al were charged wyth

<sup>1</sup> g v, back.

<sup>2</sup> g v, back, col. 2.



wyn, brede, and flesshe habundauntly. And anone they  
 that ledde them were slayn and put to deth, And thenne  
 the barons enforced them for to lede them hastelye, and  
 4 so conduyted them tyl they brought them in to the  
 toure. & in the waye as they retorned, they fonde the  
 body of basyn whyche had be slayn the day byfore,  
 which they took vp, and brought wyth them in to the  
 8 toure, and were there in surete. For they lyfte vp the  
 brydge, and entred, and after aualed the drawe brydge,  
 and made faste the yates, and surely. And thus were  
 they wel vytaylled for ij monethes & more. ye may  
 12 wel wete that thadmyral was not ouer Ioyous whan he  
 sawe that Guye of bourgoyn whyche had ben in his  
 subgectyon was wyth hys felawes, And also whan he  
 knewe that they were furnysshed wyth vytaylle so  
 16 habundantlye. Wherfor ryght angry and euyl contente  
 dyd doo calle hys counceyl, and demaunded brullant  
 of mommyere, and Sortybrant of Conymbres, and other  
 of hys counceyllours, sayeng to them : " My barons, ye  
 20 knowe that these frensshe men haue ryght euyl gouerned  
 vs. They haue garnysshed the toure wyth brede, wyn,  
 and other vytaylles : and yf by aduenture it come to the  
 knowleche of kyng Charles, we shal be enpesshed, for  
 24 he shal come & socoure them, and we shal come make  
 to hym contynuel resystence, For hys puyssaunce is  
 ouer grete, ye knowe it wel. Wherfore I am in grete  
 thought and melancolye what we may best doo."  
 28 To thys, Sortybrant answerd & sayd : " syr admyral,  
 I counceyl that euery man be armed, and in grete  
 poynte, for to sette vp the engynes to assaylle the toure  
 & breke it, & after to make sowne and to trompe vp a  
 32 thousand trompes and hornes Impetuously. And whan  
 the Frenssh men shal here them, they shal be so aferde  
 that we at our playsyr shal mowe entre in to the toure."  
 Brullant of mommyere answerd to hym & sayd :

provisions, (3136)

which they drive  
 inside the gates  
 of the castle.

On their way they  
 take up the body  
 of Basyn. (3150)

Balan is furious

and calls a coun-  
 cil, (3163)

to consider what  
 is to be done.

Sortibrant advises  
 him to frighten  
 the French by

blowing of trum-  
 pets, &c.

Brillant says he  
is a fool,  
for the French are  
not likely to be so  
easily frightened,  
(3184)  
for there are in  
the castle Roland,  
and Oliver,  
and Gerard,  
Terry,  
Naymes,  
Guy, and 5 others.

“Sortybrant, frende ! ye speke of a grete folye. Byleue  
not *pat* the frenssh men that be within the toure ben  
of soo feble condycyon that ye shal make theym aferde  
wyth blowyng<sup>1</sup> & sownyng<sup>1</sup> of hornes. <sup>1</sup>Certeyn ye 4  
haue nothyng to fere them wyth, And I shal say to  
you the reason. The flour of the barons of fraunce is  
there wythin : the moost puyssaunt & the moost noble  
Rolland<sup>2</sup> is there, whych is so puyssaunt and courageous 8  
that who-someuer Ioyneth to hym, he putteth hym to  
deth : And there is the counte olyuer : knowe ye not of  
his grete fyersnes, whyche conquerd Kynge Fycrabras,  
the myghtyest of all the paynymys ? And I swere to 12  
you by Mahoun that he is in theyr companye. For I  
haue herde say also that there is the counte of mondy-  
dyer, Gherard<sup>3</sup>, whyche hath doon to vs grete dommage.  
Also there is thyerry, the duc of ardayne, and another 16  
fals olde olde knyght that named hym self Naymes, duc  
of Bauyere, semblably Guy of bourgoyne, whyche was  
taken from vs whan he was ledde to be hanged. And  
other ther be whyche I haue not named. There ben 20  
but xj, for one of them was slayn, and ye knowe wel  
they ben alle of grete resystence.

Roulland<sup>2</sup>, the <sup>2</sup>neuwe of charles, is of soo grete  
fyersnes that he doubteth no man lyuyng<sup>1</sup>, ne stroke ne 24  
shotte that is gyuen hym : and doute ye not, that, yf  
they were al suche as he is, that ben in the castel, they  
shold chace vs oute of thys royame or they <sup>3</sup>shold slee vs.  
And I knowe wel that theyr god waketh for them, for 28  
he hath ryzt wel kepte them. Our goddes ben accursed  
and vnhappy, For it is longe sythe that they haue ony  
thyng holpen vs.” ¶ Of these wordes that brillant  
thus sayd, thadmyral was passyng<sup>1</sup> angry, & sayd to 32  
hym : “ye haue ryght euyl and folysshly spoken.” and  
so sayeng, he wold haue smyton hym wyth hys staf,  
but the kyng Sortybrant wythdrowe the stroke, sayeng<sup>1</sup> :

<sup>1</sup> g vj, col. 2.    <sup>2</sup> orig. nenewe.    <sup>3</sup> g vj, back.

“Syr admyral, leue your angre, and<sup>l</sup> late vs thynke for to assaylle thys toure, and late vs so do that these fals frenssh men be vaynquysshed<sup>l</sup> and<sup>l</sup> smyton in pyeces.”

but Sortibrant prevents him. (3213)

4 and<sup>l</sup> thus as he had said, thadmyral made to come hornes, trompettes, and<sup>l</sup> other Instrumentes for to sowne & to make bruyt and<sup>l</sup> noyse, in suche wyse that al the sarasyns were there assembled, that they helde þ<sup>e</sup> space of a myle 8 longe aboute the toure. After, thadmyral made to come a man Ingenyous & enchauntour, whyche was named Mahon, that made two meruayllous engynes, & with couertures surely made kept them that were there vnder,

The Saracens are assembled; they cover a square mile of ground. (3221)

12 that they myght not be hurte of the frensshe men. And<sup>l</sup> by the moyen of these engynes they conquerd<sup>l</sup> the fyrst wardes of the castel. wherfore the frensshe men, furyous and<sup>l</sup> <sup>1</sup>wode as lyons, came to the yates of the 16 toure, & the maydens also al armed<sup>l</sup>, whiche with the barons dyd<sup>l</sup> so wel theyr deuoyr, that he that was raught and<sup>l</sup> smyton by them, was so terrybly hurt, that he ouerthrewe and fyl down dede. For they were aboue on 20 hye, and<sup>l</sup> threwe down grete stones, dartes of yron, & other mortal engynes, wyth whyche they made contynuel resystence.

By means of engines they win the outer defences of the castle,

but the French drive them back. (3230)

¶ How the toure was broken and<sup>l</sup> brente by 24 enchaument, & the barons in grete peryl of deth, and<sup>l</sup> restored<sup>l</sup> by assaulte maad<sup>l</sup> on the Paynyns: capitulo xvij

28 **T**He Paynyns perseueryng<sup>l</sup> in thassault afore sayd<sup>l</sup>, Thénchauntour came tofore the admyral, and<sup>l</sup> sayd<sup>l</sup> to hym: “Ryzt dere syr, I haue made myn engynes al redy, by moyen of whyche I shal delyuer to you the frensshe men: make your men of armes to goo a parte, 32 & that I may haue somme to awayte on me.” And<sup>l</sup> whan they were alle redy as he had<sup>l</sup> deuysed<sup>l</sup>, he sette them rounde aboute the tour. And<sup>l</sup> by hys crafte and<sup>l</sup>

The engineer says he has his engines ready. (3250)

He sets the walls  
of the castle on  
fire. (3289)

The French are in  
despair, (3284)

but Floripas bids  
them fear nothing,

and with a pre-  
paration extin-  
guishes the fire.  
(3292)

Balan swears  
vengeance on his  
daughter. (3297)

Sortibrant says  
the French must  
soon give in,

for they have no  
more shot nor  
stones. (3302)

By a furious  
assault the Sara-  
cens break down a  
large part of the  
walls. (3314)

Floripas cheers  
the French,

arte he made a flamme of fyre so meruayllous, that þ<sup>e</sup>  
pylers of marble & other stones bygonnen to brenne &  
make fyre at vtteraunce, <sup>1</sup>wherfore the frensshe men  
were so perturbed that the one sayd to the other, that 4  
by force they must yelde the toure, for they had no  
moyen to saue theyr persones. Wyth thys, florypes  
sayd to them: "lordes, esmaye you nothyng yet vnto  
the tyme ye see more." And anone she wente, & took 8  
somme herbes and other medecynes, & dyd tempere  
them in wyn, For she knewe the manere how that fyre  
artyfycially brente the stones. thus she made this  
beurage; and whan it was caste vpon the fyre, it brenned 12  
nomore. Wherfore the admyral wende to haue been  
out of hys wytte for angre. But Sortybrant tolde hym  
that al was quenched by the moyen of floripes his  
doughter; wherfore thadmyral was of entencion to 16  
make hys doughter to deye of an euyl deth. The kyng  
Sortybrant sayd that he shold do sowne his hornes and  
trompettes, and recommence the assaulte al newe, and  
at that tyme by force the frensshe men shold be vayn- 20  
quysshed: "For I am sure," sayd he, "that they haue  
nomore to caste oute vpon vs. For they haue nomore  
shotte ne stones, but al is faylled to them." And  
thassaulte was made as it was ordeyned Impetuous, that 24  
it semed derke for the shotte of arowes, of dartes,  
stones, & other engynes: in suche wyse that the <sup>2</sup>grete  
quarters of the murayl & walles fyl and tumbled down to  
the erthe. the barons of fraunce moche abasshed, sayd 28  
one to another, that thenne they must nedes be vayn-  
quysshed, For they sawe parte of the walles & the  
pryncipal of the castel falle down. And they beyng in  
grete thouzt, Florypes sayd to them thus: "Lordes, 32  
dysmaye ye noo thyng! thys toure is stronge ynough  
for to kepe vs yet. And of that other parte, the tresour  
of my fader is herin, which is in grete wedges and

<sup>1</sup> g vij.

<sup>2</sup> g vij, col. 2.



- plates of golde & buyllyon. late vs goo fetchē it, And<sup>1</sup> as wel may we slee the paynims therwyth, as wyth stones, and<sup>2</sup> better." Thenne Guy of bourgoyn, hyr loue, and advises them to use her father's gold for missiles. (3327)
- 4 came to hyr wyth grete Ioye, & kysse<sup>3</sup> hyr moche amercously and swetelye. And<sup>4</sup> after she wente & opene<sup>5</sup> the toure and<sup>6</sup> place where the tresour<sup>1</sup> was Innumerable, and<sup>7</sup> wyth grete quantyte therof they wente to the The French do so, (3334)
- 8 batylments of the toure, and<sup>8</sup> threwe vpon the paynims, in suche wyse that they made grete dyscomfyture. And<sup>9</sup> more-ouer the paynims, seeyng<sup>10</sup> the golde falle on them in suche habundaunce, anone they cessy<sup>11</sup> their and the Saracens leave off the assault and fight amongst themselves for the gold. (3340)
- 12 fyghtyng ayenst the frenssh men, And<sup>12</sup> for the concupyscence of that golde they faught and<sup>13</sup> slewe eche other. Wherefore thadmyral was so dysplaysaunt & <sup>2</sup>angry that he wende to haue dye<sup>14</sup>, and<sup>15</sup> began to crye
- 16 wyth an hye voys: "O ye barons sarasyns, leue ye thassaulte, whiche torneth to me grete dommage Innumerable. For I see that my tresour wasteth & is loste, which I haue wyth grete payne <sup>3</sup>& dylygence assembled<sup>16</sup>,
- 20 And<sup>17</sup> had<sup>18</sup> recomaunded<sup>19</sup> it to my god mahon, and<sup>20</sup> had<sup>21</sup> made hym kepar of it, whyche how hath faylled<sup>22</sup> me. but by my soule, yf I may take hym, and that he come in to myn holde, I shal make hym wepe." The kyng
- 24 Sortybrant answer<sup>23</sup>: "Syr Admyral, be ye noo thyng amercuayllyd of your tresour, ne wroth ayenst Mahon, for Sortibrant comforts him,
- he may nomore do; they may wel take it fro hym, for he is a-slepe; I byleue none other: for in tyme passed and says Mahoun must be asleep,
- 28 he hath wel watched<sup>24</sup> & kepte it; but those frenssh men ben so wyly theues pat they haue stolen it fro hym subtylly." Thadmyral beyng<sup>25</sup> al angry bycause the nyght came on repayred<sup>26</sup> with his peple toward hys
- 32 souper. After thys, whan thadmyral was sette atte table, Roulland<sup>27</sup>, whyche was in the hye toure surely with his felowes, laye in a wyndowe for to ease hym;

<sup>1</sup> orig. tresour. <sup>2</sup> g vij, bk. <sup>3</sup> orig. payue.

<sup>4</sup> orig. And' repayred'.

Roland from a window sees Balan at supper, (3358)

and proposes a sortie. (3363)

They all arm and start. (3364)

Balan sees them coming, (3369) and sends for Espoulart, his nephew, to meet them. (3372)

Espoulart charges Roland;

he is unhorsed, (3386)

but is soon up again.

Roland stuns him, catches him up, and carries him away on his horse. (3392)

Balan calls for a rescue. (3397)

and as he thought & was pensyf, he sawe thadmyral syttyng<sup>t</sup> at the table through the wyndowe, and after cam to the other barons and sayd to them: “<sup>1</sup>my lordes and brethern, I see that the Admyral is wyth 4 hys pryncypal barons at souper, and thynketh to holde hem wel at his ease. and me semeth it shold<sup>t</sup> be grete honour and prowesse to vs to make hym leue<sup>2</sup> his repaste.” The other barons, hys felowes, were of hys 8 accorde, & hastely they armed<sup>t</sup> them and put them in poynte, and fayr yssued out, comyng<sup>t</sup> to the place where the admyral was. but the admyral, whiche was subtyl, apperceyued theyr feat, and sente hastely for a 12 paynym, whiche was moche fyers, and was hys neuewe. And sayd<sup>t</sup> to hym: “Espoulart, cosyn, peradventure the frensshe men purpose to dystrouble vs at our souper, Therefore depesshe the, and be redy anone, and doo so 16 that they be taken & destroyed.” and anone he was redy. And forthwyth Espoulart took hys hors, and came ayenst the barons, holdyng<sup>t</sup> in hys honde a dart of stele. And fyrst he encountred<sup>t</sup> Rolland<sup>t</sup>, and hytte hym in his 20 shelde in suche wyse that of the stroke he was al astonyed<sup>t</sup>; but it came soo to passe that it touched<sup>t</sup> not hys flesshe, ne he was not hurte. After this, Rolland came vpon the paynym, and gaf hym a good stroke that 24 he made hym ouerthrowe fro hys hors; but the turke was so valyaunte, and a man of so grete myght, <sup>3</sup>that moche lightly he remounted<sup>t</sup> vpon hys hors. And Roulland came to hym, & smote hym wyth hys swerde in suche 28 wyse that the paynym wyst not where he was. And as he was fallyng<sup>t</sup> doun of hys hors, Rolland moche puyssauntly caught hym, & layed<sup>t</sup> hym thwart vpon hys hors, and bare hym awaye. The admyral, seeyng thys, al in a 32 rage escryed hys peple that they shold socoure hys neuewe. but they wyst not what to doo, For in defendyng<sup>t</sup> them many of them were slayn and hurte

<sup>1</sup> g vij, back, col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> orig. lene.

<sup>3</sup> g viij.

wythoufe nombre; wherfor of veray force the other  
 paynynms must retorne: & rolland cessed not to renne  
 tyl that he was at the toure. And whan al the barons  
 4 of Fraunce were wythin, they shette the yates wel surely,  
 and had noo feare of ony empesshement.

but the French all  
 escape into the  
 castle. (3410)

¶ Here begynneth the thyrd' partye of the  
 second' book which conteyneth xvj chapy-  
 8 tres, And' speketh how the barons of  
 fraunce were socoured & the paynynms  
 confused'.

¶ Of the moeuynge of the peres of fraunce for  
 12 to goo shewe theyr affayres vnto kyng'  
 Charles; And' how Rychard of Normandye  
 was ordeyned' for to goo: capitulo primo

16 **T**He peres of fraunce beyng' thus assyged and  
 deteyned, as I haue said afore, had taken a turke  
 moche fyers, and grete frende of the admyral,  
 whome they gaf to florypes for to do wyth hym as it  
 plesed hyr: & they demaunded of hyr what man he

20 was, & of hys estate. Florypes ansuerd: "he is sone  
 of myn aunte, & neuewe to thadmyral, and he is ryche  
 & hath grete puyssaunce. And yf ye wyl doo grete  
 dysplaysyr to my fader, put hym to deth." The duc

24 Naymes moche wyse sayd to hyr: "Madame, it is not  
 behoeful to put hym so to deth; but sythe he is a man  
 of auctoryte, and hath audyence wyth your fader, we  
 been the more Ioyous. and I shal say to you wher-

28 fore: yf peraduenture one of vs were taken of our ene-  
 myes, by the moyen of this man he myght be rendred  
 and chaunged for hym." And of thys conclusyon were  
 contente al the peres of fraunce. Thenne after thys,

32 Rychard of Normandye called the other his felawes,  
 and sayd to them: "ye knowe wel how we ben here

They ask Floripas  
 who their prisoner  
 is. (3444)  
 She tells them he  
 is Balan's  
 nephew. (3448)

Naymes proposes  
 to kecp him to  
 exchange for any  
 of them which  
 might be taken.  
 (3452)

Richard of Normandy proposes

that they should send a message to Charles for help. (3425)

Naymes says that no one dare go on the message, (3427)

for the country is all covered with Saracens.

Floripas says they had better enjoy themselves as well as they can. (3435)

Thierry again proposes to send a messenger to Charles. (3456)

Ogier asks who will venture on such a dangerous expedition. (3459) Roland offers to go, but Naymes protests. (3467)

enclosed in thys toure. And I am wel sure that at the laste we must nedes faylle, and deye by these Sarasyns. We haue noo moyen by whyche we may saue our lyf; and me thynketh that it shold be good that we shold<sup>1</sup> conclude to sende to themperour, to thende that he shold come and socour vs, or ellys of vs shal sone be an ende." The duc Naymes ansuerd and sayd: "Syr rycharde, me semeth ye speke of a grete folye. For 8 there is noo man here wythin, that wyl take vpon hym for to do this message that ye speke of. For ye see that the contree is al couerd with sarasyns. for assone as he shal be oute fro vs, it is Impossyble to escape 12 wyth hys lyf. And be ye sure, but yf god doo for vs and shewe hys grace, we shal neuer departe fro hens." herupon Florypes sayd: "I can not say at thys tyme none other thyng, but that we lede the moost Ioyous 16 lyf that we may, as longe as we shal mowe endure. Ye haue here fayre maydens, eche of you take one at hys playsyr." Thenne Rolland and his felowes, for these wordes of Florypes were reioyced, and thanked & 20 preyseed hyr affectuously. Thyerry the duc of Ardayne, whyche was moche angry, sayd: "My brethern and my lordes, I am in grete thought, For we be faste shette here wythin, and knowe wel that in shorte tyme we 24 shal be dyscomfyted: we haue therof experyence ynough tofore our eyen. late us soo conclude that our fayte may be notefyed vnto charles, that he or hys pussyaunce<sup>2</sup> may come socoure vs." ¶ Ogier ansuerd and sayd: 28 "for to sende to charles, there is none here soo hardy that dare presume it ne take it on hym." "Yes," said rolland, "I shal do it, and shal enterpryse it myself to goo to hym to morn, and shal doo my deuoyr." The 32 duc naymes, or he had fynysshed hys wordes, ansuerd and sayd: "Syr rolland, dysplayse you not, for emonge vs ye are the moost vncouenable for to goo thyder: for

<sup>1</sup> g viij, bk.

<sup>2</sup> g viij, bk, col. 2.



whan the Paynmys shold knowe it, we shold not be redoubted as we be. And whan we haue you wyth vs, we been in surete, and our enemyes in drede of vs."

4 Guyllam profred hym self to goo forth gladly, Soo dyd Gherard; Semblably guye abandonned hym self to goo wyth good affectyon, but Florypes wold neuer consente therto. ¶ Neuertheles, after many dysputacyons, rychar

William and Gerard offer to go, (3471) as also Guy, but Floripas will not let him go. (3477)

8 sayd for conclusion: "My lordes, ye knowe that I am of grete parentage, & haue a sone of grete noblesse, suffysaunt to bere armes, and as I suppose, he shal be valyaunte. And yf it happene that in doynge thys message

At last Richard says he will go, (3480)

12 I be taken & slayn of the paynmys, After my deth he may receyue & hold, myn herytage in my name, and doo seruyce to Charles. And I ought wel to doo it, for to doo playsyr to Charles aforesayd. <sup>1</sup>For whan he had

16 gyuen to me my lande, and possessed me in my contrey, I wold not accepte it but by one moyen, which is suche, that yf it happed, a strange man not subgette to my contreye, & that he were bonde, & of thral condycyon,

20 and yf he duellyd a yere in my londe, that after he shold be free al his lyf, & many other thynges:" & thenne thus it was concluded that rychar shold goo forth on the message. But Rolland maad hym to

to which they all agree. (3499)

24 promyse tofore his departyng, that he shold not tarye in any place, ne soiourne nowhere, vntil the tyme that he were with Charles, but yf he were greued in hys persone or deteyned prysoner. Rychar promysed it &

28 sware, as it is afore sayd. Thenne Rychar, after his oth made, sayd that, "now we haue not to sorowe, but the maner how I shal mow departe and passe forth, that the men of armes see me not; for yf I be knowen by

They consult how he is to get away unseen. (3509)

32 them in any wyse, It shal be Impossyble to me to resyste them." Rolland sayd: "by my fayth, I shal say myn opynyoun here vpon. I counceyll that to morn erly we be wel armed, and we shal goo out and make a cours

Roland suggests that they should make a sortie,

and distract the  
attention of the  
Saracens while

Richard steals  
away in the other  
direction. (3529)

The knights weep  
over Richard's  
danger. (3527)

Richard bids them  
fear nothing,

for by God's grace  
he will soon bring  
succour.

vpon the sarasyns, & do gretely our deuoyr, & they shāl  
be besy with vs for to defende them & hurte vs.  
Rychard shāl departe & passe forth & leue<sup>1</sup> vs, & we shāl  
remyse vs to-gyder for to retorne in surete. in the mene 4  
whyle Rychard, that knoweth wel the region, shāl mowe  
be wel ferre forth on his waye tofore they shāl know  
ony thyng therof; and if it playse god & hys swete  
moder, he shāl saue hym self, by suche manere, that in 8  
shorte tyme we shāl haue Ioye & consolacyon that we  
shāl hastely goo out surely." Thys sayeng, the peres of  
fraunce, seeyng that thys thyng was not yet achyueuē  
surely, begonnen al to wepe tenderly for the pyte of 12  
theyr affayre. The noble duc<sup>2</sup> rychard, seeyng his  
felowes wepyng for hym, sayd to them: "my lordes, ne  
doubte ye noo thyng! yf god gyue me the grace, to  
whom I comaunde my self, that I may passe thys hoost 16  
and thys contreye, and in especial that I may fynde  
myself a-lyue by-yonde the brydge<sup>3</sup> of mantryble, I may  
wel ensure you that I shāl brynge you socours in suche  
wyse that by the grace of god ye shāl sone be delyuerd." 20  
The barons ansuerd to hym: "Ihesus, by hys myght and  
pyssaunce, graunte you wel to goo, & better to retorne!"  
After this conclusyon they sayd nomore: the nyzt cam  
on, & eueryche of them went to hys repayre, vnto atte 24  
morne for to begynne to complysshe theyr enterpryse.

¶ How after that rychard was departed, kyng  
claryon, a ryght myghty kyng, ranne after  
hym, the whyche was slayn by the sayd 28  
Rychard valyauntly, & of other thynges:  
capitulo ij

But a great disap-  
pointment was in  
store for them.

¶ Rete gryef and annoye cam to þe peres of fraunce  
whan Rychard of Normandy shold departe for 32  
to goo to kyng charles. On the morne whan

<sup>1</sup> h i, col. 2.    <sup>2</sup> orig. dul.    <sup>3</sup> orig. brydde.    <sup>4</sup> h i, back.

they came to the gates of the toure, in whych they were  
 in, they fonde grete multytude of peple sarasyns, whyche  
 kepte the passage that none of the frensshe men shold  
 4 yssue out. Wherefore by the space of ij monethes they  
 coude not fynde the moyen to yssue oute; but on a day  
 emonge al other, whan thadmyral was on huntyng<sup>1</sup> a  
 lytel waye of, & that on a nyght the garde of the  
 8 bridge was forgotten, Thenne the barons armed<sup>t</sup> them  
 & mounted<sup>t</sup> on horsback, and<sup>t</sup> wente out rennyng vnto  
 theyr lodgynges; but assone as they were seen of the  
 paynymys, they blewe vp hornes & trompettes, & began  
 12 to sowne so terrybly, that anone peple Innumerable were  
 there assembled for to renne vpon the peres of Fraunce.  
 and<sup>t</sup> thus whan they were al enclosed<sup>t</sup> wyth theyr  
 enemyes, & that euery man was besy for to fyght, The  
 16 duc Rychard<sup>t</sup> al in wepyng<sup>t</sup> commaun<sup>1</sup>ded to god<sup>t</sup> hys  
 felawes, And secretly departed<sup>t</sup>, and<sup>t</sup> took hys waye at  
 al aduenture. & tofore that his felawes were at theyr  
 lodgyng<sup>t</sup>, many of the sarasyns were hurte & slayn. and<sup>t</sup>  
 20 in this maner they reentred<sup>t</sup> in to the toure surely, and<sup>t</sup>  
 mounted in to the bataylement, & sawe a-ferre duc  
 rychard<sup>t</sup>, whyche thenne had passed beyonde all the  
 hoost; and<sup>t</sup> in wepyng<sup>t</sup> they recommaunded<sup>t</sup> hym swetely  
 24 to god<sup>t</sup> many tymes. Rychard<sup>t</sup> of Normandye thus  
 rydyng<sup>t</sup> allone, had<sup>t</sup> feare alwaye that he shold be  
 assaylled<sup>t</sup>. whan he had<sup>t</sup> ferre ryden vnto a toppe of a  
 montayn, his hors was sore chauffed, & bledde habun-  
 28 dantly. Thenne he doubted enterly that he shold be  
 empesshed<sup>t</sup>, and lyfte vp his mynde to heuen & sayd<sup>t</sup> :  
 “ O lord<sup>t</sup> god<sup>t</sup>, my creatour, to whom alle my wylle is  
 ordeyned<sup>t</sup>, thys day preserue my body from myn  
 32 enemyes, in suche wyse that I lose not my lyf,” &  
 blessid hym self with the signe of the crosse many  
 tymes. he beyng in that place, the day appyered wel  
 clerely; & fyrst, brullant of mommyere apperceyued

For in the morn-  
 ing they found  
 the castle sur-  
 rounded by Sara-  
 cens, (3540)  
 so that for two  
 months they had  
 no chance of  
 going out. (3459)

At last an occa-  
 sion offers, and  
 they sally out,  
 (3567) and attack  
 the Saracens.

While they are  
 thus engaged  
 Richard steals off.  
 (3580)

His horse breaks  
 down. (3612)

In despair he  
 prays to God for  
 help,

and crosses him-  
 self.

<sup>1</sup> h i, back, col. 2.

Brillant and Sortibrant see him, (3628)

and tell Clarion,

who mounts and rides after him. (3640)

followed by other Saracens. (3645)

Richard, looking round, sees the Saracens coming after him. (3653)

He is almost in despair.

hym, & after, sortybrant of Conymbres, whyche were bothe to-gydre, the whyche wente hastely to Kyng Claryon, a moche myghty paynym, neuewe of thadmyral, and<sup>t</sup> brillant sayd<sup>t</sup> fyrst to hym: "Syr Claryon, see ye 4 yonde messenger, <sup>1</sup>one of the prysoners of fraunce, whyche is departed fro his felawes, & gooth toward Charles for socours? And yf ye see not for remedye, there may come therby harme to vs; for yf he recounthe theyr 8 affayres to the kyng charles, It may happen to retorne to vs grete dommage." Also sone as claryon herde these tydynges, anone he armed<sup>t</sup> hym, & mounted<sup>t</sup> vpon 12 hys hors, the moost merueyllous that euer was seen, For for to renne xxx leghe he wold<sup>t</sup> not be wery; & took hys shelde & his swerd of stele square & sharpe, & ranne toward Duc Rychard<sup>t</sup> as he had<sup>t</sup> be enraged<sup>t</sup>, & other sarasyns folowed<sup>t</sup> after hym. Rychard<sup>t</sup> mounted<sup>t</sup> 16 on hys hors, wythoute knowyng<sup>t</sup> that he was poursyewed<sup>t</sup>, & sayd<sup>t</sup>: "O my Creatour, holy Trynyte, gyue to me consolacyon & grace, that I may see Charles the myghty Emperour, to whom I am sente for the rescows & com- 20 fort of my felawes, whiche ben in the toure, sorouful and sore greued<sup>t</sup>, and that I may make them Ioyeful," & thus as he was in this thougt he loked<sup>t</sup> behynde hym, & sawe the sarasyns come hastely after hym, whyche 24 were by comyn estymacyon moo than xiiij M, Of whom the Kyng<sup>t</sup> Claryon, neuewe of the Admyral, vpon the courser tofore sayd<sup>t</sup>, came tofore the other a grete waye. Neuer<sup>2</sup>theles, Rychard beyng on a lytel montayn, & 28 byhelde the hoost of the paynyms came ageynst hym with grete courage, ye may wel ymagyne in what estat his hert was. what thyng mygt he thynk that they wold do wyth hym, & what tidynges his felowes shold 32 haue of hym, whan he was there allone for tabyde & susteyne the furour & malyce of so moche peple? Thus ymagynyng<sup>t</sup> that he myght not flee, Anone was claryon

<sup>1</sup> h ij.

<sup>2</sup> h ij, col. 2.



- vpon the sayd<sup>d</sup> coursour, whyche ranne faster and<sup>d</sup> more  
 swyftlyer than a grehounde; the whyche coursour was  
 alle whyt on the one of hys sydes as a flour delys, & on  
 4 that other syde as rede as fyre enflammed, The tayle  
 after the facion of a peacock, the croupe behynde som-  
 what reysed<sup>d</sup> & dropped, as smal as of a partryche; grete  
 thyes & shōrt feet, & platte & rōunde, wyth lytel eeres;  
 8 the mane of the necke whyt, his nosethrylles large &  
 ample; he was tofore moche brode, & had eyen grene &  
 clere, a lytel heed, a brode fronte, with a smal mosel; &  
 he was saddled with a saddle of yuorye, & the raynes of  
 12 þ<sup>e</sup> brydle entrelaced with gold; styroppes of fyn gold;  
 the poytral wel enorned & rychely. & was gyrde with  
 iij stronge syngles, & had on hym moo than an C of  
 smal bellys of fyn golde, sownyng<sup>r</sup> moche melodyously.  
 16 & þ<sup>e</sup> paynym <sup>1</sup>smote hym with the spores moche  
 sharply, in suche wyse that the hors made a leep more  
 than xxx foot longe. And<sup>d</sup> after escryed<sup>d</sup> duc Rycharð  
 the noble knyght, sayeng<sup>r</sup> wyth an hye voys: "by  
 20 Mahoun, my souerayn god, thou messenger shalt neuer  
 achiyeue thyn enterpryse, For wythoute goyng<sup>r</sup> ony  
 ferther, thou shalte here ende thy lyf." whan rycharð  
 vnderstode hym, alle the blode in hys body was moeued  
 24 & chaunged<sup>d</sup>, & ansuerd: "Sarasyne, wherfore arte thou  
 of suche entencion ayenst me? What haue I trespaced  
 to the? I neuer offended the, ne robbed<sup>d</sup> thy tresour.  
 I requyre the by loue that thou dystrouble me not; and<sup>d</sup>  
 28 yf thou suffre me to passe, I shal take it for a grete  
 seruyse, & I promyse to the that ones it shal be re-  
 warded<sup>d</sup> to the by me." The paynym answerd<sup>d</sup>: "cer-  
 tain, frensshe man, thou spekest of grete folye; & of  
 32 mahoun be I cursed yf I doo ony thyng<sup>r</sup> for the. I shal  
 not suffre the to passe for half the tresour of the world."  
 Also sone as Rycharð knewe hys entencyon, he auauenced<sup>d</sup>  
 ayenst hym, & the paynym came to Rycharð, & wyth

In front comes  
Clarion on a  
horse, half white,  
half red, (3659)

with a peacock's  
tail,

a white mane,  
and green eyes.

His breast piece  
is hung with little  
gold bells.

Clarion calls on  
Richard to sur-  
render. (3673)

Richard asks him  
to let him go, as  
he has never done  
him any harm.  
(3684)

Clarion declares  
he will have his  
life. (3686)

Clarion cuts at  
Richard, but does  
him no harm.  
(3688)

Richard smites  
Clarion on the  
neck, and cuts his  
head off. (3704)

He takes Clarion's  
horse, (3705)

and lets his own  
go, bidding it an  
affectionate fare-  
well. (3713)

The Saracens  
coming up try to  
catch Richard's  
horse, but in vain.  
(3730)

hys swerde he smote hym hard vpon hys shelde; but  
it was so harde that it wente not thurgh. here-vpon  
richard, which was ful of grete yre ayenst the paynym,  
by effectuel deth came to hym wyth hys <sup>1</sup>swerde which 4  
was trenchaunte, & as the hors lepe forth, the paynym,  
lyfte vp his hede, & richard attayned ouerthwart the  
necke so ryzt in a Ioynte, that he smote of his nede, in  
suche wyse that it flewe ferre fro the body, ye, wel a 8  
spere lengthe, & he put þ<sup>e</sup> trunke of the body to the  
erthe al dede; & forthwyth he descended fro hys hors,  
& mounted vpon that the good courser of the Paynym,  
whyche was the best hors of the world. Thenne 12  
Rychard myght wel say that he was neuer soo wel  
pourueyed of an hors; For he was so myghty, that yf  
he had born vij knyghtes armed vpon hym, he wold  
not haue swette a droppe of water; & for to swymme & 16  
passe a depe ryuer, ther was noo hors lyke hym. & after  
that he was thus horsed at his ease, he said to his owen  
hors by moche good affection: "O gentyl hors doulstyn,  
for the I am sorouful that I may not conduyte the in 20  
to som place at my playsyr. I praye to God of heuen  
that he drawe þ<sup>e</sup> in to suche a waye that pou mayst  
come in to the hondes of crysten men & serue them. in  
many grete bataylles & euyl passages thou hast wel 24  
serued me, & of thy grete seruyce, as moche as apper-  
teyneth to me I thanke the gretely." & here vpon he  
wente and rode forth hys waye. And anone the sara-  
syns that followed after, came <sup>2</sup>& fonde the kyng 28  
Claryon deed, theyr mayster, of whos deth they were  
so surprysed of melancolye & of sorowe, that they coude  
doo none other thyng but fyrst to renne for to take  
Rychards hors. But there was none soo hardy to ap- 32  
proche hym ne sette honde on hym, but the hors maad  
grete deffence, & took hys waye rennyng for to retorne  
to the place that he was departed fro.

<sup>1</sup> h ij, back, col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> h iij.

¶ How Rychards hors cam & passed' thurgh  
 thexcersyte of the admyral, & was seen &  
 knowen of the peres of Fraunce, in soo  
 4 moche that they thought that duc Rychard'  
 had' been deed'; & how the brydge of  
 Mantryble was kepte: capitulo iij

8 **R**ychard of Normandye wyth his swerde in hys  
 fyste rode hastely, & the sarasyns whych ranne  
 after hym came and fonde theyr kyng deed, of  
 whome the hede was on that one syde of the waye, &  
 the body on that other. It byhoueth not to recoun-  
 12 the sorowe that they were in, whan the chyef of alle the  
 sarasyns of myght and parentage was descomfyted and  
 slayn; and for thyng that they coude do, they coude not  
 reteyne Rychards hors. & the fyrst that sawe the hors  
 16 come reanyng was thadmyral, whiche called gorant,  
 sone of kyng' grehier, & also sortybrant of conymbres,  
 & sayd to them: "by my god appolyn, whan I wel  
 aduyse and remembre me, I ought wel to loue my  
 20 newewe Claryon, and holde hym dere emonge al other.  
 I see wel that he hath put to deth the messenger of the  
 Frensshe men: that it is trouthe, ye may see his hors  
 that yonder cometh." and thadmyrall commanded that  
 24 he shold hastely be taken. but whan the hors saw that  
 they wold haue taken hym, he ranne and smote out, &  
 cessed not tyl he cam to the yate of the castel in  
 whyche the barons of Fraunce were enclosed. & whan  
 28 the frensshe men sawe thus the hors come, whyche was  
 longyng to rychard, they were al affrayed and moeued,  
 and came & opened the gate, and anone he entred in;  
 and after that the yate was shette, they arenged them  
 32 aboute the sayd hors, for compassyon of sorowe, wepyng  
 pyetously. ¶ And Duc Naymes spake fyrst and sayd:

The Saracens find  
 Clarion's body,  
 and lament over  
 him. (3724)

Balan sees Rich-  
 ard's horse run-  
 ning loose, (3740)

and thinks that  
 Richard has been  
 killed. (3742)

He orders the  
 horse to be  
 caught, (3744)

but none can  
 catch him.

The knights admit  
 him inside the  
 gates,

and lament over  
 Richard's death.

They are all in  
great grief, (3754)

“Ha, Richard of Normandye! I praye to god that he be in thy comfort and that he haue pyte of thy soule. I knowe wel that for thy deth we shal neuer haue socoure, Ne of thy partye we shal neuer haue none 4 helpe.” Roulland and Olyuer heryng these <sup>1</sup>wordes, & also the other, wepte bytterly. here-vpon came florypes the curtoys in grete heuynes, and sayd to them :

but Floripas com-  
forts them. (3763)

“Lordes, in the honour of god, leue your lamentyng 8 and sorowe : we knowe not yet the trouthe of the mater.” thus as they were in these grete thoughtes, the Sarasyns came, whyche had lefte Rychard ryde forth,

The Saracens re-  
turn bearing the  
body of Clarion.  
(3775)

And in grete sorowe & torment brouzt the body of kyng 12 Claryon. And whan thadmyral sawe them come, he beyng in the ethroclytes in hys entendement, cryed and sayd : “and how is it ? is myn neuewe in good poynte ?”

The sarasyns ansuerd : “Syr admyral, we may not lye 16 to you. Claryon is dede, it nedeth nomore to demaunde therof.”

Balan swoons on  
hearing of his  
nephew's death.  
(3785)

Thadmyral heryng thoo wordes, fyl down to therth al in a traunse, and he swouned more than iiij tymes as he had been dede. thus emonge al the sara- 20

There is great  
grief over Clarion.  
(3792)

syns was a grete wepyng, & made grete sorowe. The sarasyns thus makynge thys lamentacyon, the barons of fraunce herde and vnderstood them, & specially florypes, which knewe better the langage. & after that she 24

knewe the cause of theyr sorowe, she came to the barons, and sayd to them in spekyng to rolland : “Syr, knowe

Floripas explains  
to the knights  
what has hap-  
pened. (3800)

ye wherfore the sarasyns demene suche sorowe ? it is trouth that Rychard your messenger <sup>2</sup>hath slayn the 28 kyng claryon & wonne his hors, to whom is none lyke ne pareylle of bounte in al the world. & as wel for þe

deth of claryon as for the losyng of the hors, they demene & make al thys sorowe & torment that ye see & 32 here. Wherfore I praye you that euery man doo hys deuoyr, to lede a good lyf and to make good chyere.”

Olyuer sayd to rolland Ioyously : “O my felawe of

<sup>1</sup> h iij, back.

<sup>2</sup> h iij, back, col. 2.



armes, ye knowe not how glad I am of these tydynges  
 that we here, & I ensure you by my soule that I am  
 as sure to passe thys daunger that we be in, as though  
 4 I were in the strengest castel of fraunce. blessyd be  
 richard of god, for he hath borne hym nobly!" and  
 semblably sayd al the other his felawes. After that  
 richard rode thus, thadmyral made a man to come to  
 8 hym named Orages, & made hym to take a dromedary  
 hastely, & comanded hym to bere his lettres to galafre,  
 which kept the stronge brydge of mantryble: "I charge  
 the to renne as faste as the dromydary may bere the, to  
 12 mantryble, and say to Galafre wherfore he suffred the  
 messagers of charles to come ouer the brydge, the  
 whyche haue doon to vs so moche greuaunce and en-  
 noyaunce, as thou can wel telle to hym. & I swere by  
 16 mahon my god, that he dyd a grete folye. & sythe on  
 that other parte the <sup>1</sup>messenger of the frensshe men  
 goeth thyder, and yf he recounthe his message to Charles,  
 it myght happen he shold put me in subgectyon, Ther-  
 20 fore say to galafre that he kepe soo wel the brydge, that  
 noo persone passe: and say to hym more ouer, that, yf  
 he do otherwyse, I shal put oute hys eyen, and make  
 hym deye shamefully." "Syr admyral," sayd Orages  
 24 the messenger, "I shal do your commaundemente; and  
 I assure you I shal ryde as moche waye in one day as  
 that other shal do in foure dayes. for, for to ryde an  
 hondred leghes contynuelly, I shal neuer be very."  
 28 And thus he departed from the admyral vpon a dromy-  
 dary, & taryed not tyl he came to mantryble, and spake  
 to Galafre, sayeng: "Galafre, I shal not hyde fro the  
 that the admyral is not contente wyth the, by cause thou  
 32 suffredest the frensshe men to passe ouer the brydge,  
 whyche haue doon to hym grete dommage, for they be  
 lodged in the chyef toure, & holden in their subgectyon  
 the goddes, with floripes his douzter, and haue slayn

Balan sends a  
 message to Gala-  
 fre, the bridge-  
 ward of Mantrible,  
 (3825)

that he is to allow  
 no one to pass the  
 bridge,

on pain of death.  
 (3845)

Orages starts on a  
 dromedary.

He arrives at  
 Mantrible and  
 delivers his  
 message, (3860)

that he is on no  
account to let  
Richard pass.  
(3875)

Galafre in a rage

tries to strike  
Orages,  
but is prevented  
by the by-stand-  
ers. (3834)

He sends 15,000  
men to look out  
for Richard. (3898)

many of the moost valyaunte of the courte of thadmy-  
ral. & the cause wherfore I am thus hastelye come, is  
thys : After me cometh a messenger, whyche is one of  
the barons of Fraunce, whyche gooth for to fetche ayde, 4  
vnto Charles theyr <sup>1</sup>kyng<sup>1</sup>; the whyche hath slayne  
kyng<sup>1</sup> Claryon. wherfore kepe wel thys passage that he  
passe not. For yf thou doo otherwyse, thou shalt not  
conne fynde the manere to saue thy lyf, but that thou 8  
shalt deye vylaynsly." Of these wordes Galafre was  
perturbed<sup>d</sup> and replenysshed of yre, & for hys angre  
he made moche foule chyere, and began to scumme at  
the mouth lyke a bore enchaffed, and took a staffe, and 12  
had smyton the messenger yf it had not be letted by  
them that were presente. ¶ Neuertheles he mounted<sup>d</sup>  
vpon a tourrette, and with the sowne of a trompette he  
assembled many men of armes, whyche were in nombre 16  
xv M, whyche were anone of horsback, and passed the  
brydge. And whan they were ouer, it was anone lyfte  
vp, and they wente and rode here and there for to  
recountre þ<sup>e</sup> messenger of the frenssh men, yf by aduen- 20  
ture they myzt fynde hym.

¶ How rychard of normandye passed the ryuer  
of flagot by myracle, by the moyen of a whyt  
hert which cam tofore hym : [ca.] iiij 24

Richard is in great  
doubt how to pass  
Mantrible.

He sees the Sara-  
cens covering all  
the country,

and begins to pray  
for help. (3904)

**R**ychard<sup>d</sup> of Normandye, messenger of the frensshe  
barons prisoners, rode in grete doubte, ye may wel  
R<sup>u</sup>thynke and ymagyne, how he onely by <sup>2</sup>hym self  
myght passe the stronge and daungerous brydge. And 28  
in rydyng<sup>1</sup> he behelde behynde hym, and sawe al the  
contree couerd<sup>d</sup> wyth men of armes. thus byholdyng<sup>1</sup>  
theym he was sore troubled<sup>d</sup> in hys mynde, [&] began to  
crye : "O Ihesus, kyng<sup>1</sup> of glorye, at thys tyme be thou 32  
kepar of my body, & conseruatour of my soule, For I

see wel the declýne of my lyf. yf I put my self to fyght,  
 I shal haue my hede smyton of; and yf I entre in to  
 this hydous ryuer, I shal not conne passe ouer. Thus  
 4 at thys tyme I muste nedes deye. And yf I by force  
 retorned to my felawes, I shold make a grete defaulte to  
 therle Rolland, to whom I haue promysed<sup>1</sup> faythfully  
 to doo my deuoyr for to doo my message. Wherefore,  
 8 my god, my maker, I wote not what to say, but that thy  
 wyлле be fulfilled and doon of me. thou knowest myn  
 entencion: after the same gouerne me!" he beyng<sup>2</sup> nyghe  
 the ryuer, the sarasyns maden grete bruyt in comyng<sup>3</sup> to  
 12 hym, emonge whom a neuewe of the admyral auauuced<sup>4</sup>  
 hym to renne ageynst hym, & cryed wyth an hyghe  
 voys: "O messenger, what someuer thou be, thyнке for  
 to dye! thou hast now ryden ouer ferre; now is þ<sup>e</sup> houre  
 16 come that the deth of kyng claryon shal be aduenged."  
 These wordes so herde of rychard were <sup>2</sup>not to hym  
 ouer playsaunt; but he was euyl contente, and sodeynly  
 he spored his hors ayenst hym, holdyng<sup>5</sup> a swerde in  
 20 hys honde, square & sharpe, whych he had conquest of  
 Claryon: and came to hym, and smote hym so daunger-  
 ously ayenst the breste, that it perced thorough the  
 shelde in to hys body, that he fyl down to therthe al  
 24 deed; & after took hys hors by the brydle, whyche was  
 ryche of golde, and went to the ryuage of the water, and  
 byhelde it that it ranne lyke a quarel out of a crosbowe,  
 and rored lyke thundre, in suche wyse that galeye ne  
 28 other engyne myght not goo surely vpon hyt.

By the time he  
 gets near the  
 river the Saracens  
 are close upon  
 him. (3922)

Mandysee calls on  
 him to turn and  
 fight. (3929)

Richard turns and  
 kills him, (3932)

and takes his  
 horse.  
 He rides to the  
 bank of Flagot,  
 which runs like a  
 bolt from a cross-  
 bow.

He commends  
 himself to God.  
 (3949)

¶ Thenne by grete contrycion of hert he recom-  
 maunded hym self to our lord, that he shold preserue  
 hym from deth tyl that he had sayd hys message to the  
 32 Emperour Charles. Thenne god of heuen, that neuer  
 leueth hys seruantes at their nede, shewed vnto hym a  
 grete token of loue that he had to Charles. for Rychard  
 of Normandy beyng<sup>2</sup> in thys medytacyon and thought

<sup>1</sup> orig. pormysed'.

<sup>2</sup> h iij, back, col. 2.

God sends a milk-white hart,  
which goes before  
Richard. (3955)

The water rises  
till it is level with  
the banks.  
The hart enters  
the river,

and Richard fol-  
lows it. (3962)

The Saracens dare  
not follow him.

The river sinks to  
its usual level.

Galafre lets down  
the draw-bridge.  
(3976)

Richard is now  
safe,

and rides on  
slowly.

for to passe ouer, god sente a whyte herte which passed  
tofore rycharð: & in comyng ye ought to wete that the  
ryuage of the water was moche hye, ye, as hye as a man  
from bynethe myght caste vp a stone wyth hys honde. 4  
And the ryuer began to aryse<sup>1</sup> soo hye that it flowed  
ouer the banke, and the herte entred in to the water;  
and Rycharð loked behynde hym, & sawe many sara-  
syns come in a grete multytude for to put hym to deth; 8  
and thenne he recommaunded hym to god wyth good  
hert, and made the sygne of the crosse vpon his body,  
hauyng in hys hert the holy name of Ihesus, that he  
myȝt perseuere fro drede in suche wyse that he myght 12  
passe ouer the ryuere; and soo toke the water &  
folowed the hert. The paynmys seyng that, were al  
abasshed and troubled, and there was not one that durst  
folowe hym. Fro Incontynent the water aualed, and 16  
retorned in to hys former estate and beyng. Thenne  
the paynmys made grete duel and sorowe by cause they  
myȝt not haue the messenger. ¶ Galafre, whyche that  
was moost wroth & werst contente, cam to the bridge 20  
and aualed the chaynes, and commanded the paynmys,  
vpon payne of deth, that they shold not cesse tyl that  
rycharð were taken, or ellys they shold be all in the  
Indygnacyon of thadmyral, and in daunger to be loste. 24  
Rycharð of Normandye came ouer in good poynte, and  
deuoutelye thanked god of the grace that he had sente  
to hym, and descended fro hys hors for to vngyrde and  
lose hys sadle. 2 And after resengled hym, and took his 28  
hors and rode forth at hys ease, and ladde that other  
hors on hys ryght syde. & doubted thenne nomore,  
For in shorte tyme he supposed to fynde the excersyte  
of kyng Charles. The paynmys seeyng thys, retourned 32  
soroufully, & wente to vname them, For other thyng  
coude they not do.

<sup>1</sup> h v.

<sup>2</sup> h v, col. 2.



¶ How charles was in purpoos to retorne,  
wythout goyng ony ferther, by the coun-  
ceyl of ganellon traytour, and his felowes ;

4 & other maters : capitulo v

- I**N as moche as rychard rode, whyche was moche  
wery ; and out of grete thought Themperour Charles  
was passyng moche pensyf & sorowful for hys barons,  
8 whyche were deteyned of thadmyral. And he, seeyng  
that he had no tydynges, he sente for to come to hym  
Ganellon, Geffroy, dantesuyle, aubert, machayre, and  
many other. and emonge the other, cam reyner, fader of  
12 Olyuer, to whome he sayd : “ lordes and frendes, I am  
in moche grete trybulacyon. the cause is ynough ap-  
parent, whyche is of my specyal barons, whyche were  
sente as messagers to ballant, thadmyral. I see that  
16 <sup>1</sup>no persone reporteth ne bryngeth ony tydynges from  
them ; wherfore knowe ye, that of my dede that I dyd  
I despyse my self. Thenne by more strenger reason  
the other ought more to despyse me. And I you en-  
20 sure that I shal neuer regne more, but shal leue alle.  
Take ye there, loo ! the crowne of mageste, take it !  
For I depose my self from hens forth.” Ganellon was  
there which was Ioyeful, what someuer semblaunt he  
24 made, and sayd : “ syr emperour, yf ye byleue me, I  
shal gyue to you good counceyl. ¶ Anone comaunde  
that our lodgys and habytacyons here be take vp, &  
that euery man trusse hys gheer vpon the sommyers,  
28 and thynke to retorne. For yf ye goo ony ferther, ye  
shal neuer retorne. The contree of Aygremore is moche  
stronge ; And sythe that, ballant the admyral is of grete  
fyersnes, and wyth that, he hath alle the paynymys &  
32 sarasyns capytayns in to hys ayde ; And by cause that  
Fyerabras hys sone is deteyned by you, & maad crysten,  
so moche more is he affectyoned ayenst you : And on

Meanwhile,  
Charles is in great  
trouble about his  
knights. (4004)

He calls his  
barons,

tells them his  
trouble,

and declares his  
intention of re-  
signing the crown.  
(4015)

Ganelon advises  
him to give orders  
for a return home,  
(4025)

for Balan is too  
strong for them,

now that the  
douzeperes are  
dead.

In time, he says,  
their children will  
be grown up,

and then Charles  
can return and  
conquer Spain.

Charles swoons  
for grief.

He mourns over  
his disgrace.  
(4054)

He asks his barons  
for their opinions.  
(4069)

All Ganelon's  
friends support  
his advice, (4081)

and declare they  
will go no further  
(4084)

that other parte your barons be not a-lyue, I ensure  
you : Retorne we in to Fraunce. We haue lefte there  
many of our chyl dren and parents that shal wxe grete ;  
and<sup>1</sup> or it be twenty yere, they shal bere armes. And<sup>4</sup>  
thenne they with vs <sup>1</sup>shal come in to spayne, for to con-  
queste the londes and<sup>1</sup> seynouryes that we haue enter-  
prysed<sup>1</sup>, And<sup>1</sup> shal recouure the holy relyques, of whome  
I haue grete pyte. And<sup>1</sup> more ouer ye shal reuenge the 8  
deth of Roulland, the noble erle, for whom ye haue thys  
melancolye ; For certayn ye shal neuer see hym." Whan  
Charles herde these wordes of Ganellon, he was smyton  
wyth soo grete sorowe, that after, he fyl doun<sup>2</sup> in a 12  
swoune, And<sup>1</sup> spake not the space of a grete houre ; and<sup>1</sup>  
in wepyng bytterly he sayd<sup>1</sup> to hym self : ¶ "O poure  
caytyf and<sup>1</sup> vnhappy, what shalt thou do ? yf thou re-  
torne, þou shalt be dystionoured<sup>1</sup>. yet were it better to 16  
lose the lyf than to be thus shamed<sup>1</sup>." After that he  
was comen to hymself, he sayd<sup>1</sup> to hys barons that were  
there : "Loo ! ye see the counceyl that ganellon gyueth  
to me, whych in no wyse may playse me. yf I retorne, 20  
wythout takyng vengeance of my noble barons which  
ben thus deteyned<sup>1</sup>, there shal neuer man sette by me,  
but I shal be shamed<sup>1</sup>, and<sup>1</sup> wyth good<sup>1</sup> ryght." Machayre,  
aulbery, and<sup>1</sup> geffroy, and<sup>1</sup> other, moo than an hondred, 24  
whych al were parentes & traytres wyth Ganellon the  
moost parte, & also were moche myghty to-gydre, sayd<sup>1</sup>  
alle wyth one consente : "Syr emperour, purpose <sup>3</sup>ye  
not to do otherwyse than ganellon hath sayd<sup>1</sup>, For he 28  
hath spoken wysely ; and therfor conclude ye to retorne  
in to fraunce wythout gooyng ony fether on. we ben  
xx thousand<sup>1</sup> that haue made oth to-gyder that, for ony  
thyng that ye say or do, we shal. not goo noo fether. 32  
For sythe that Roulland is dede, they haue loste theyr  
comforte, & hym that was chlyef of the conseruacyon of  
their persones." Charles, al heuy, answerd<sup>1</sup> : "O god of

<sup>1</sup> h v, back, col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> orig. donn.

<sup>3</sup> h vj.

heuen, how am I determyned? yf I retorne wythoute  
to auenge my barons, I shal doo pourely, sythe they  
haue susteyned & borne vp the crowne Imperyal and  
4 my wylle, and I now to retorne wythoute to auenge  
them—He that gaf me suche counceyll, loueth me but  
lytel, I see wel.” Reyner of genes, fader of Olyuer,  
aroos vp and sayd: ¶ “O Emperour, yf thou byleue  
8 these wordes that haue ben said to the, thy gouernaunce  
shal be so euyl, that by them al fraunce shal be wasted  
& brought to nought. And who someuer haue damage,  
they retche not, but passe ouer lyghtly.” Thenne they  
12 that were of the partye of the traytres cam forth and  
sayd: “Reyner of genes, ye haue lyed of that whiche  
ye haue sayd. And yf it were not by cause the kyng  
is present, ye shold lose your hede and it shold be  
16 smyton of. we knowe wel what ye be: your fader  
garyn was neuer but a pour man and of lowe condy-  
cyon: Alle your lygnage ne ben but people of nought.”  
¶ The duc Reyner myght not suffre thys Iniurye, but  
20 came to hym, and smote hym wyth hys fyst in suche  
wyse that he ouerthrewe to grounde; and there were  
made many reproches and ylle talent, in so moche that  
yf the kyng had not be present, and made the pees and  
24 tranquylte, they had slayn eche other. For anone there  
were moo than a thousand of the lygnage of ganellon.  
But fyerabras, which was present, blamed themstrongely;  
And on that other syde the kyng sware by hys crowne  
28 that yf there were ony persone that began bataylle or  
fyght, that he shold do hym be hanged as a theef at-  
taynt, of what someuer estate that he were. and by thys  
they were aferde for to offende, and was nomore spoken.  
32 Not-withstandyng that, the councyl was taken emonge  
them, that they shold pnt Reyner to deth as sone as  
they shold be in Fraunce. Charles sent for them to  
come to hym, and said to them: “ye haue done to me

Rayner warns  
Charles not to  
trust Ganelon or  
his friends. (4096)

Ganelon's friends  
abuse Rayner,  
(4103)

who knocks  
Alorys down.  
(4117)

A great disturb-  
ance ensues,

which is quieted  
by Fierabras and  
Charles. (4136)

Ganelon's party  
vow vengeance  
against Rayner.

<sup>1</sup> h vj, col. 2.

Charles orders  
Alors to beg  
Rayner's pardon  
on his knees.  
(4149)

Geoffrey d'Haute-  
ville advises  
Charles to follow  
Ganelon's advice.  
(4163)

Charles gives way,

and orders the  
retreat home to  
France, (4189)

to the great grief  
of Rayner and  
others. (4195)

a grete shame; but yf it be not amended now tofore  
me, I shal do opene Iustyce. Alwaye nedes must the  
kyng be obeyed." in suche wyse that alory<sup>1</sup> on hys  
knees cryed duc Reyner mercy, but he wold neuer haue 4  
doon it yf it had not been for to appease the furour of  
kyng charles; & thus they maað the pees. And after  
themperour sayd his oppynyon, that yf he torned backe  
that it shold be to hym grete dyshonour. Therfor cam 8  
geffroy daulteuylle, fader of Ganellon, whyche sayð:  
"Syr Emperour, I am olde, and haue seen moche thyng,  
wherfore me semeth that ye ought to byleue me as wel  
as ony persone of your companye. ye knowe wel that I 12  
and Ganellon my sone haue alwaye loued you, And, how  
that it be that he counceylleth you to retorne, hath good  
ryght. I haue now my body alle to-brused for beryng  
of armes; and be ye sure, that tofore that twenty yere 16  
be passed, the chyl dren that be now in fraunce shal be  
grete & myghty to bere armes, and they shal be so grete a  
companye, that lyztely ye shal mowe conquere spayn, and  
auenge the deth of rolland and of hys other felowes." 20  
Whan Charles vnderstode these wordes, he wepte byt-  
terly, & saw that by force he must ayenst hys wyll  
retorne in to fraunce, and leue hys enemyes. Wherfore  
by the sowne of trompettes was cryed the retraytte. 24  
And anone the artylleryes were assembled and the  
harnois trussed, wherof<sup>2</sup> the companye of traytres were  
Ioyous, and many of the other were euyl contente, &  
in especyal Reyner, whych retourned withoute hys sone 28  
Olyuer, wherof ye may wel thynke in what estate was  
hys hert, by cause he hath<sup>3</sup> loste al hys comforte.

¶ How after the complaynte of Charles,  
Rychard come vnto hym, whyche tolde to 32

<sup>1</sup> h vj, back.

<sup>2</sup> h vj, back, col. 2.

<sup>3</sup> orig. hast.



hym thaffayres of the peres of Fraunce :  
capitulo vj

- 4 **W**Han charles was mounted on horsback, and in  
wage for to retorne, he took remors of Rolland,  
Olyuer, and of other, how he lefte them with-  
oute to do otherwyse his deuoyr : he taryed sayeng :  
“ O vnhappy that I am, I may wel sorowe whan I now  
8 leue the men that I loue best in the world, and retorne  
fro them, whan I ought by good ryght to auenge them.  
I shal be reputed for a fool, & sore blameð. O Rolland,  
how I haue loued you ! may euer your vnelle so longe  
12 lyue that he may see your deth auenged ? God deffende  
that euer I bere crowne on my hede, seen the pouerte  
of my fayte.” thys sayeng, almoost he fyl a swoune to  
the erthe for the dysplaysaunce that he had : <sup>1</sup>moche  
16 heuynes had he that tyme. “ Alas ! ” sayð Charles,  
“ Rolland, I was moche euyl auysed whan I consented  
that thou sholdest goo to thadmyral ! wel am I cause of  
al your perdyceyon ! ” In makynge thys heuynes, the  
20 hoost made soo grete bruyt to retourne, that it was mer-  
uaylle. & thus as they began to ryde forth, The em-  
perour loked toward the eest, and from ferie he sawe  
rychard come rydyng vpon an hors sore rennyng, and  
24 helde in his hande a swerde al naked. wherfor the Em-  
perour sente for to come to hym the moost grettest  
lordes of hys companye, and made thoost to tarye and  
goo no ferther forth. “ I see,” sayð he, “ yonder comyng  
28 a man on horsback, which maketh grete haste, and  
ledeth on hys ryghtsyde a fayr courser, as me thynketh ;  
and he semeth by hys rydyng that he is Rychard of  
normandy. Now I praye to god almyghty that thys  
32 day he sende me tydynges of rolland and of the other  
barons, that they be alyue.” Thenne the hoost taryed,  
and anone came richard, whyche maad hys hors to lepe

Charles laments  
over the loss of  
his barons ; (4207)

he swoons from  
grief. (4221)

The army pre-  
pares to start  
home. (4227)

Charles sees  
Richard coming,  
(4229)

and orders a halt.  
(4253)

He recognises  
Richard. (4247)

Charles enquires  
of Richard how  
Roland and the  
others are. (4257)

Richard tells him  
how they are  
besieged by Balan,  
(4263)

that they have  
Floripes and the  
sacred relics,  
(4271)

and have sent him  
to beg Charles to  
come to their  
help. (4276)

The king is  
pleased,

and says if they  
can hold out for  
six days he will  
deliver them.  
(4300)

moche gentlylly tofore the kyng, whome he salewed  
moche humbly. And thenne charles sayd to rychard  
of normandye : " Sone of noble baron, how is hyt wyth  
you ? what is bycomen of my neuewe Rolland and of 4  
myn other <sup>1</sup>barons ? be ye come allone ? be they alyue  
or dede ? telle me, I praye you." Rychard ansuerd :  
" Syr Emperour, Rolland & the other, whan I departed  
fro them, were al hole and in good poynt, and been 8  
in aygremore, in a stronge toure, bysyged by ballant the  
admyral of spayne and fader of Fyerabras ; & there been  
aboute them an hondred thousa[n]d sarasyns. And  
knowe ye for certayn that thadmyral is a man moche 12  
fyers & terryble, whyche hath sworn by his god mahoun  
and Termagaunt, that he shal neuer departe fro thens but  
that they shal be hanged by the necke. And on that  
other syde your barons haue wyth them floripes, the 16  
curtoys doughter of thadmyral, the fayrest that euer  
was seen, the whyche hath in hyr kepyng the relyques  
that ye soo moche desyre to haue. and sende you worde  
by me that ye shold come and ayde them for to saue 20  
theyr lyues. And yf it please you to remembre them,  
ye shal mowe conquere the contreye of spayne, & other  
goodes ynough." Grete consolacyon had kyng Charles,  
And thenne he conceyued wel that Ganellon was a 24  
traytre and ful of wyckednesse, And neuer after hys  
counceyll ne sayeng shold be herde ne alowed in hys  
courte. For he sawe wel, that as for hym it abode not  
2 but Rolland and hys felowes shold haue dyed. " Now 28  
gentyl Rychard," sayd the kyng, " is the toure in  
whyche they been bysyged, stronge & wel garnysshed  
of vytayl for to defende them ony whyle ? yf they may  
holde vj dayes, I shal make thadmyral to dye, and al 32  
hys complyces." " Syr," answerd Rychard, " I shal  
say to you the trouthe. they haue noo vytayl but they  
gete it with the swerde. thadmyral is meruayllously

<sup>1</sup> h vij, col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> h vij, back.

fyers and ful of cruelte, and hath of people a multytude  
 Innumerable, the whyche holde the space of two myle.  
 the town is stronge, where he habyteth, & also there is  
 4 on thys syde of the toun the brydge of mantryble, where  
 the passage is moche daungerous. and the walles of that  
 eyte ben made of marble cymented and fortifyed with  
 toures, and there renneth a ryuer ryzt hydous, whyche  
 8 is named flagot, and is of depthe of ij speres of lengthe,  
 & renneth so fast and brayeth, that there is noo bote ne  
 shyppe may passe theron. and the brydge is half a myle  
 longe, And in the myddes there is a toure<sup>1</sup> of marble  
 12 so stronge that it may not be beten doon; & the yate is  
 garnysshed & kepte wyth barryers of yron fast locked.  
 ¶ The portyer that kepeth thys plase is a paynym hydous  
 and grete, massyf, stronge and <sup>2</sup>felonous, whyche bet-  
 16 ter resembleth the deuyll than ony man or persone. he  
 is as blacke as pytche boyled, & hath x thousand  
 knyghtes in his companye. wherfore I wote wel that by  
 force we may not passe; For by ony assaulte that may  
 20 be doon to them, they doubt it not. And yf we passe  
 not by engyne and subtyllte, we may not goo ouer the  
 brydge; For by force we may noo thyng do. but it  
 byhoueth vs to passe in guyse of marchaunts; And  
 24 somme of vs shal be wel armed vnder our clothes; and  
 there aboute we shal were a mantel of cloth, & theyr  
 swerdes vnder, And there shal come after vs grete som-  
 myers charged with marchaundyses. And ye wyth al  
 28 the chyualrye shal tarye in a lytel wode, & that euery  
 man be in grete poynte. & after whan we haue goten  
 the fyrst gate, I shal soun & blowe myn horne, And  
 wyth motye ye shal come on. And thus we shal haue  
 32 the passage, by the playsyr of god, and we shal come to  
 our entencion." Thys counceyl was wel approued by  
 the kyng Charles, whyche ofte blessyd richard by cause  
 he had so wel sayd, & thenne he resembled al his peple.

Richard tells him  
 that the tower is  
 surrounded by the  
 Saracens,

and that he will  
 have to pass the  
 bridge of Mantri-  
 ble, (4309)

which is kept by  
 a giant,

as black as pitch,  
 with 10,000 men.  
 (4321)

He proposes a plan  
 by which they  
 may pass it by,  
 disguising some  
 knights as mer-  
 chants. (4345)

Charles approves  
 of the plan. (4356)

<sup>1</sup> orig. tonre.

<sup>2</sup> h vij, back, col. 2.

Five hundred  
French knights  
disguise them-  
selves as mer-  
chants, (4369)

and start on,

while the others  
lie hid in a wood.  
(4400)

The standardes were reysed, and the loryflam dyscouerd. Rychard took hys hors, and gaf it to duc Reyner, And wente & <sup>1</sup>bonde heye and grasse to-gydre, and made trusses vpon many sommyers, in the guyse of mar- 4 chautes. euery man wel armed vnder hys cloke, & swerde gyrde, and so take theyr horses, to thende that they shold not be espyed: and were in nombre v hon- 8 dred knyghtes, alle men of grete facyon, and dryue to- fore them the sommyers for a good enterpryse. Rychard went tofore as chyef enterprenour, duc howel of Nautes foloweð, Guye de vallee, Ryoll du mauns, Duc Reyner, fader of Olyuer, & other, whyche rode forth wythout 12 taryeng. And Charles wyth alle hys baroznye abode in a wode, as tofore I haue maad mencyon.

¶ How by the moyen & counceyl of Rychard of Normandye, wyth iij other barons, the 16 strong brydge of mantryble was wonne, not wythoute grete payne; And what maner man galafre was: capitulo .vij

Richard and his  
party ride on,

driving the pack-  
horses before  
them. (4395)

His companions  
are frightened at  
the sight of the  
river and the  
strength of the  
bridge. (4405)

**T**Hemperour charles, with an hondred thousand men, 20 abode in the wode tofore sayd, & Rychard of nor- mandye, hoel of Nautes, Ryoll, and Reyner, & other peple whyche were valyaunte of theyr persone, were on the waye to goo toward man-<sup>2</sup>tryble, and ladde wyth 24 them a quantyte of sommyers charged. whan the felowes of Rychard sawe the ryuer of flagot so roryng, And thentree of the cyte of mantryble so stronge, the brydge soo daungerous to passe, & the yates barred and en- 28 chayned so wyth yron, they were moche abasshed. For, for to come thyder by assaulte, alle the pyssaunce of crystendom myght not entre by that place, but they aualed the brydge and chaynes of yron. Ryol de 32 maunded of Rychard: "What may there be of this

<sup>1</sup> h viij.

<sup>2</sup> h viij, col. 2.



place?" And he ansuerd: "knowe ye that thys is the strongest cyte that is bytwene thys and Acres. And there been in the same cyte moo than a thousand men of armes." Hoel of Nautes was alle afrayed, And commaunded hym self to god, prayeng hym to kepe theyr persones. Rychard sayd: "lordes, I wyl goo before, & shal speke fyrst; and whan we haue passed the fyrst yate, see that ye take of your clokes for to smyte vpon the paynims: & for ony thyng that happeth, see that the one of you faylle not the other." Ryol ansuerd: "doubte ye not that whan I am emonge the sarasyns but that I shal doo my deuoyr that it shal appyere: and yf I doo not as I say, I wyl that ye reclame me recreaunte, and repute me as rebouted." After these wordes they hasted theyr sommyers toward the brydge; & galafre sawe them fro ferre, and stode restyng hym nygh to the fyrst gate, & helde in his honde a grete axe of fyn stele bended and affyled that there was noo syde but it cutted. Thys paynym was grete, and fourmed so hydously, and of suche representacyon, that he semed better a deuyl than a resonable persone. he had eyen al enflammed lyke fyre, & he was as blacke as boyled pytche; hys necke large & grete, his nose half a fote longe, his eeres so grete that they myzt conteyne wel half a busshel of whete, hys armes longe & croked, & his feet stode ouerthwart; & as of the remenaunte of hys body, was lothely ynough. Ballant thadmyral loued hym moche, & was his neuewe, and for the grete confydence that he had in hym he gaf to hym the kepyng of the brydge of mantryble, by cause that it was the moost strengest passage that was in al the marches of that contreye. And the sayd paynym was conestable of al the londes of thadmyral, wherfore it was necessarye that none of the frensshe men shold haue be knownen of hym. For yf there had ony be knownen, there shold

Richard encourages them, and tells them to follow him. (4413)

Galafre sees them coming. (4427)

He is as hideous as a devil,

pitch-black, with flaming eyes, his nose is six inches long, and his ears big enough to hold half a bushel of wheat.

Balan loved him greatly

and had made him constable of all the country about. (4445)

Galafre challenges  
the French  
knights. (4451)

Richard tells him  
they are mer-  
chants on their  
way to the fairs,

and bearing pre-  
sents to Balan.  
(4456)

Galafre says that  
twelve Frenchmen  
had passed the  
bridge without  
paying toll, (4475)

as well as a  
messenger,

who had slain his  
cousin Clarion,  
(4487)

wherefore Balan  
had ordered him  
to let no one pass,

nener none haue escaped but he shold haue ben dede. Thus, thenne, whan they were <sup>1</sup>at mantryble, Rychard passed afore. and whan he was at the entre of the gate, Galafre came to hym & sayd: "vassal, what are ye? 4 wherfore come ye hyther?"

¶ Rychard, whyche was wyse, chaunged his langage, & began aragon, and sayd: "Syr, I am a marchaunte whyche cometh fro Taraston wyth these other mar- 8 chauntes, & brynge grete quantyte of draperye, and wyl goo to the fayres, by the helpe of mahon, to whome we goo to present our marchaundyses; and yf we were at Aygremore, we shold soiourne there, and gyue to thad- 12 myral somme precyous yestes that we here brynge. These other marchauntes that ben here wyth me ben al esclaues, and knowe not the langage, wherfor, fayre syr, we praye to aduyse vs what we may best do, & by what 16 waye we ought to goo." Galafre ansuerd: "knowe ye, that I am kepar of the brydge and of the passages that been fyfty myle here aboute. But not longe sythen passed hereby xij glotons of fraunce, whiche were mes- 20 sagers of the emperour Charles, which yet owe to me theyr trybute for theyr passage. Neuertheles my lord thadmeral kepeth them in pryson, And one of them that other day escaped precyly away as a theef, whiche 24 rode vpon an hors the best that euer I sawe, & <sup>2</sup>passed ouer thys rennyng water; whyche also slewe my cosyn the kyng Clarion, for whome I am in grete melancolye. now wold god Mahon that he were now here vpon thys 28 brydge, I shold cleue hym vnto the myddle of his bely wythout to haue any mercy or pyte on hym.

Syth that tyme thadmyral doubteth of treason, For his sone fyerabras whyche hath renyed mahon and the 32 paynym lawe for to become crysten. And he commaunded me thre tymes that I shold not suffre any persone, lord, knyght, ne seruytour, to passe, And that

I shold<sup>d</sup> serche wel al for to knowe the condycyon of  
theym that come thys waye. Therefore I wyl knowe  
what ye be." Rychard heryng thys, bowed<sup>d</sup> his hede :

unless he is  
known. (4501)

4 Ryol du mauns, Hoel of Nauntes, and<sup>d</sup> Reyner of genes  
goon forth ouer the brydge. whan galafre saw them, he  
began to doubte, and<sup>d</sup> sayd<sup>d</sup> to them that there shold<sup>d</sup>  
nomoo entre, and<sup>d</sup> auauenced<sup>d</sup> hym and<sup>d</sup> drewe vp the  
8 brydge; and there were nomoo wythin but foure, whyche

Raoul and two  
others pass on to  
the bridge. (4509)

Galafre raises the  
bridge, (4514)

he dred<sup>d</sup> not, and<sup>d</sup> sayd<sup>d</sup> to them in grete fyerste : "ye are  
ouer bolde & hardy to entre herein wythout my com-  
maundemente, And<sup>d</sup> therfor ye four shal be sette in

12 pryson, and<sup>d</sup> the other that come after you also. And<sup>d</sup>  
to-morn I shal sende you prysoners <sup>1</sup>to my lord<sup>d</sup> thad-  
myrall, he for to doo with you his playsyr. Take of your  
mantellys or clokes, for I wyl see what ye haue there

and calls on them  
to surrender.  
(4517)

16 vnder, For ye seme people for to do euyl." Thus say-  
eng, he toke noel by the cloke, & drewe hym therby  
foure tymes aboute : "By god<sup>d</sup>," sayd<sup>d</sup> Ryol, "I may no  
lenger tarye to see hym do thys Iniurye to my cosyn ;

20 yf I suffre lenger, be I confounded<sup>d</sup> !" And<sup>d</sup> therwyth  
he threwe of his cloke, and<sup>d</sup> smote vpon the paynym ; but  
he was so strongely armed<sup>d</sup> that he myght do hym no  
harme, sauf that he smote of a lytel of hys ere. Rychard<sup>d</sup>

Raoul strikes at  
him,

24 and Reyner semblably caste of theyr clokes, and<sup>d</sup> eche  
of them with a swerde in theyr hondes smote to-gydre  
vpon Galafre, and gaf hym many strokes ; but the heed<sup>d</sup>  
ne the body they myght not hurte, For he was armed<sup>d</sup>  
28 with the hyde of on olde Serpente harde and<sup>d</sup> maylled<sup>d</sup>.

and cuts off a piece  
of his ear.

The others cut at  
him, but cannot  
hurt him. (4541)

¶ Thys Paynym was angry, and<sup>d</sup> supposed for to haue  
smyton Ryol, and<sup>d</sup> enhaunced hys axe that was grete  
and<sup>d</sup> heuy and<sup>d</sup> also sharpe. but Ryol sawe the stroke

Galafre cuts at  
Raoul with his  
axe, (4552)

32 come, and was habylle, and<sup>d</sup> lepte a syde, and<sup>d</sup> the stroke  
smote vpon the grounde in suche wyse that hyt claffe a  
marble stone on whyche the stroke lyghted<sup>d</sup>.

but misses him.

Rayner knocks  
Galafre down with  
a branch of a tree.  
(4563)

1000 Saracens  
assemble. (4573)

Richard lets  
down the bridge,  
and the 500  
knights enter.  
(4581)

Then he blows his  
horn, (4575)

and Charles with  
all his men come  
up, (4587)

Ganelon in front.  
(4589)

“Ha! god of heuen!” sayd Rēyner, “how he  
smyteth oultrageously! <sup>1</sup>I am al abasshed of the puyss-  
saunce of thys deuyl whom we may not conquere ne  
gryeue.” He thus sayeng, he took a grete braunche of 4  
a tree whyche was longe and stronge, and aduysed and  
marked the paynym wel, and he smote hym therwyth  
in suche wyse that he made hym to ouerthrowe to  
therthe; & whan he was ouerthrowen, he maad a crye 8  
so hye and hydous that the Ryuer and the rockes made  
grete bruyt. Wyth thys voys the paynyms of man-  
tryble were moeued and assembled, that within a lytel  
whyte there were redy armed moo than x thousand. 12  
there was thenne a grete commocyon; Rychard of Nor-  
mandye ranne to the yate of the brydge, & aualed down  
the drawe bridge, And thenne entred in v hondred  
knyghtes whych the foure barons had brought wyth 16  
them; but at the entre of the gate the paynyms en-  
countred them: there was a grete medle and recountre;  
many mortal strokes were there gyuen, many were there  
slayne and hurte. Rychard took hys horne and sowned 20  
it hyely thre tymes. Charles themperour vnderstood  
it wel, whyche was in the wood aforesayd with al his  
puyssaunce. Euery man was on horsback moche redyly,  
and there was not one that cessed to renne tyl he came 24  
to the brydge. <sup>2</sup>¶ Ganelon, whyche after was tray-  
tour, bare hym valyauntly. For he was the fyrst that  
cam to the brydge wyth hys confanon reysed; but the  
loyalte & trouthe of hym ne of hys kynnesmen endured 28  
not longe, as the laste book shal more playnly shewe,  
by the playsyr of god.

¶ How by force and’ strengthe of bataylle  
Charles entred’ in to mantryble, after that 32  
Galafre was slayn, not wythstandyng’ that

<sup>1</sup> i j, back.

<sup>2</sup> i j, back, col. 2.



alory the traytre was contrarye to hym ;  
and' many other maters : capitulo viij

- 4 **A**T thentre of mantryble were moche hurt people &  
confounded, as wel of frenssh men as of sarasyns. In the fight at the gate of Mantrible  
and at that tyme themperour bare hym wel, For whome Charles and Ganelon bear them well. (4595)  
he attayned wyth hys swerde named Ioyouse, he must nedes deye, he smote so rudely. and that day was alway  
8 by hym Ganelon, whych dyd wel hys deuoyr. The dyches of the towne were depe and ful of water, wherin many were drowned. ¶ Thus as Charles passed tofore, and hys people after, He sawe galafre on þe grounde, Charles sees that Galafre is not dead,  
12 which was not dede, and that semed better a deuyl than a resonable persone, And helde alwaye hys axe in hys honde, wyth whyche he had slayn thyrty frenssh men. And the Emperour, seeyng the harme that he had doon  
16 to the frensshe men, anone commaunded to slee hym ; & so moche they smote at hym wyth axes and stones, that they slewe hym. The bruyt and noyse was so grete, that fyue myle aboute was anone knowen that the  
20 brydge of mantryble was taken and conquerd ; wherfore there came L thousand sarasyns, for to gyue ayde to the cytyzeyns of mantryble, and to destroye the frenssh men. The walles of the towne were of marble, and soo  
24 stronge that it semed a thyng Impossyble to conquere or destroye. ¶ To thys medle came a geaunt moche fyers, named Ampheon, And had a wyf named Amyotte. And she was departed fro her gesyne, For she had  
28 borne two sones, whyche were but iiij monethes olde, and were two foot brode in the breste, and ten foot longe, as thystorye sayth. Thys geaunt opened the gate, & helde in his honde a club of yron grete and massyf,  
32 And whan he was passed that yate, wyth hys voys tenebrouse and dyabolyke he cryed : " Where is charles the kyng of fraunce? wyl he now bere wyth hym the and orders him to be slain. (4611)  
50,000 Saracens come to help those of Mantrible, (4639)  
amongst them a giant and giantess, named Ampheon and Amyot. (4652)  
Ampheon challenges Charles, (4669)

and threatens  
him. (4672)

Charles attacks  
Ampheon,  
and with his  
sword cuts him in  
two. (4686)

Charles calls for  
help. (4693)  
Richard and three  
others join him,

and drive the  
Saracens back  
into the town.  
(4699)

The Saracens  
surround them.  
(4703)

relyques to Saynt Denys? by mahon, by the whyche I  
comforte my self, it were better <sup>1</sup>for hym, olde dotard,  
that he were now at parys. And late hym knowe cer-  
taynly, that yf thadmyral may haue hym, he shal neuer 4  
haue mercy on hym, but he shal do hym be flayn, &  
hanged alle quyeke, or brenne hym in a fyre." after  
that he had thus spoken, he smote doun many frensshe  
men wyth hys club of yron. ¶ In thys recountre were 8  
seen and founden so grete a multytude of dede men  
that they letted men to passe. Charles, whyche sawe  
the facyon, descended and lyght of hys hors, alle wroth  
in hys courage, & sette hys shielde tofore hym, wyth hys 12  
swerde in hys hande, and hys barons came arter hym  
ayenst the geaunt. & after that the kyng & he were  
assembled, Charles wyth hys swerde Ioyous smote hym  
soo myghtely that he clefted hym in two pyeces, & 16  
myghtely recouerd hys stroke, that he maað hym falle  
to the erthe, And soo he was deed. Wherefore the  
Sarasyngs were all moeued and affrayed, And as people  
enraged smote vpon the Frensshe men with dartes, 20  
plombettes, and other engynes mortal.

¶ And thenne Charles cryed socours for to assemble  
hys people. And wyth that crye came to hym Rycharl  
of Normandye, Reyner of genes, hoel of nauntes, and 24  
Syr Ryol du mauns, <sup>2</sup>whyche alle had courage lyke vnto  
lyons. These foure barons wyth charles made the pay-  
nyms to remeue, and to reentre ageyn by force in to the  
towne of mantryble. And anone the turkes, whyche 28  
were moo than x thousand, cam to the yate for to shette  
it, in makynge grete defence with bowes and other shotte,  
besyde them that came after, whyche kepte the passages,  
which were wel, as thystorye maketh mencyon, fyue 32  
thousand; but alle they coude not fynde the maner to  
lyfte vp the brydge, For it was conserued and kept  
ayenst the sarasyngs by the frenssh men. There was

<sup>1</sup> i ij, col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> i ij, back.

grete bruyt in thys recountre; And though Charles  
doubted, it was noo meruaylle. For he knewe wel that  
yf the sarasyns had lyfte vp the brydge to the yate of  
4 the towne, It had not be possyble to hym to haue passed  
ouer. And he, seeyng them reyse vp toward the yate  
grete barres of yron, supposed not to haue passed, And  
wyth a moche wooful herte began to wayle Roulland  
8 his neuewe, and the other hys felowes, as he shold neuer  
haue seen them.

Charles is almost  
in despair. (4712)

¶ Rychard of Normandye consyderyng thys, escryed  
and sayd: "Syr Emperour, in the honour of god esmaye  
12 you not, but thynke to destroye and smyte down these  
Turkes, and god shal ayde & helpe vs. Ye knowe wel  
that there is none so franke ne valyaunte that wyl  
acoward hymself, but that he ought to be despysed, and  
16 wyth good ryght. ¶ And I praye to god that he be  
confounded that suffreth hymself to be taken a-lyue for  
to dye afterward, and that had not leuer be hewen in  
pyeces than to retorne. And wythoute more, late vs  
20 auauce vs, For now it is nede that eche man proue hys  
strengthe and the valure of hys persone." Wyth these  
wordes of a grete courage, entre[d] in to the towne,  
Charles, Reyner, Hoel, Ryol, and Rychard, These fyue  
24 onelye, eche wyth a swerde in hys honde. And ye  
ought to wete that they entred not wythout grete  
slaughter of turkes and of Paynymys.

Richard encour-  
ages him, (4715)

and the five push  
forward into the  
town. (4725)

Charles, seyng come grete multytude of sarasyns,  
28 cryed "a larme and socours" moche hye and furyously.  
Ganellon vnderstood hym, and had of hym grete pyte;  
Not wythstondyng at the laste he founde hym not good;  
& came to geffroy, & escryed hauteuyle his fader, & the  
32 other hys kynnesmen, whyche were armed moche rychely  
to the nombre of M vij C, and al they came afote for to  
assayle the yate. The turkes maad grete deffence wyth  
brondes and barres of yron and mortal shotte, where as

Charles calls for  
assistance.  
Ganellon hears  
him,

and wishes to  
help him. (4729)

<sup>1</sup>many were dede and hurte, of the people of the sayd Ganelon.

Alorys presses  
Ganelon to retire,  
and leave Charles  
to his fate. (4739)

Thenne alory, the traytre, sayd to ganellon: "in fayth, we ben grete foles for to late vs thus deye, & suffre thys 4 torment." And after he sayd to ganellon yet: "late vs goo and departe. Charles is wythin wel empresshed: god forbede that he euer departe! & thou mayst wel see now, that of hym and of Reyner we are wel auengel 8 of the contradyctyons that they made to vs, & of theyr subgettes also. And euyl deth mote he deye that foloweth them ony ferther. for we may wynne Fraunce at our ease and wylle, & holde it wythout contradyctyon, 12 Seen that there is no baron that wyl be to vs contrarye." Ganellon ansuerd: "God of glorye forbede that euer I shold do suche trayson to my ryztful lord! we holde of hym al our londes & seynouryes. I shold 16 be holden for an ouer vntrewe man yf I consented to hys deth. We haue none other cause but that we ought to do our deuoyr for hym." whan Alory vnderstood hym, he enraged almoost for angre, and after sayd to ganellon: 20 "ye be a veray fool, that ye tarye whan ye now may wel aduenge you. yf themperour Charles be slayn, al the other barons shal haue theyr heedes smyton of, And thus we shal be aduenged on al our e<sup>2</sup>nemyes. Ther- 24 fore leue of, and come on." Ganellon ansuerd: "god forbede that euer I shold be a traytre to my lord, ne that I leue hym vnholpen, but doo my deuoyr to ayde hym. I had leuer to be dysmembred, than to be shamed 28 and blamed in this dede." ¶ Of these wordes were euyl contente Alory and also geffroy daulteuyle, in suche wyse that there was grete debate emonge them. Vpon this came Fyerabras in good araye and grete 32 poynte, and began to crye: "where is Charles?"

but Ganelon is  
faithful to Charles.  
(4765)

Fierabras comes  
up, and asks  
where Charles is,  
(4775)

¶ The Traytre answerd: "Syr, ye shal neuer see hym. He is wythin enclosed, and I suppose he be

<sup>1</sup> i iij.

<sup>2</sup> i iij, col. 2.



dede now." Fyerabras answerd: "And ye emonge  
 you, what doo you here? what tarye ye? why socoure  
 ye hym not in thys nede? ye may be reproched of  
 4 treson wyth good ryght." And after bygan to crye  
 "socours and ayde" moche lowde; and by hys voys all  
 the frensshe men came, wythoute ony taryeng', to the  
 belfraye, and fonde Fyerabras and Ganelon, that thenne  
 8 had lefte the Traytres at the entree of the brydge.

¶ And Fyerabras thezme was wel Ioyous whan he  
 sawe that the brydge was not drawn up, And thenne  
 he and Ganelon dyd gretely theyr deuoyr, for to entre  
 12 in to the cyte. <sup>1</sup>And whan they were wythin, & the  
 traytres sawe the toun wonne, by a manere to do gretely  
 theyr deuoyr, entred in a foot, & smote down wyth  
 the other comunelye. And grete habundaunce of blode  
 16 runne thurgh the towne oute of the dede bodyes, that  
 eche man meruaylled that sawe it. The paynmys cryed  
 and brayed as wulues enfamysshed, whan they sawe that  
 they coude not resyste them. They sente to the ad-  
 20 myral that he shold socoure them, and cryed on mahon  
 & Termagaunt that they wold come to theyr ayde; but  
 for all that, they were dyscomforted sorowfully, put oute  
 of theyr habytacyons, robbed, pyllled of theyr rychesses  
 24 and goodes, and destroyed. Thus doynge, a messenger  
 departed secretly for to goo to Aygremore, for tacompte  
 and telle the tydynges of theyr destructyons.

and calls on them  
 to succour him.  
 (4780)

Fierabras and  
 Ganelon fight  
 nobly,

and the town is  
 won. (4792)

The Saracens send  
 to Balan for help.  
 (4800)

¶ How Amyotte, a geantesse, wyth a sythe  
 28 greued' gretely the crysten men, and' how  
 hyr two sones were baptysed of the Em-  
 perour Charles: capitulo ix

32 **W**Han mantryble was taken, many strokes were  
 gyuen; but when Amyotte, the geantesse, knewe  
 & herd the crye of the cytezeyns, whiche <sup>2</sup>were

<sup>1</sup> i iij, back.

<sup>2</sup> i iij, back, col. 2.

Amyot the giant-  
ess rushes out,  
armed with a  
scythe,

and slays numbers  
of the French.  
(4820)

Charles shoots her  
with a cross-bow.  
(4832)

The town is  
sacked. (4845)

Charles remains  
at Mantrible three  
days. (4841)

He finds the  
children of the  
giantes: Amyot,  
whom he causes  
to be baptised,  
under the names  
of Roland and  
Oliver. (4865)

troubled, — She was as blacke as pytche boyled: hyr  
eyen were rede as brennyng fyre: she had a grete  
vysage & croked, as hye of lengthe as a spere, & gretely  
affrayed of the deth of hyr husbond, & also aferde for 4  
hyr ij sones, of whyche she was late delyuerd; — soo she  
in a rage lepte out of hyr hous, and fonde a sythe  
trenchant and meruayllously sharpe, and cam vpon  
the frensshe men so Impetuously that she maad grete 8  
dyscomfyte, in suche wyse that none durst wel ap-  
proche hyr. Kyng Charles seeyng thys, was euyl con-  
tente of the deth of hys peple, and demaunded a crosse  
bowe. And whan it was bende, he shotte so ryght that 12  
he atteyned hyr bytwene the browes, so that she fyl  
doun deed to the erthe. She began to cast oute of hyr  
throate a flamme of fyre, moche hydous. Neuertheles,  
she was smyton so wyth stones and other thynges, that 16  
she neuer moeued after; wherfore after that, the yates  
of the towne and other deffences were not kepte ne  
defended, but that Charles dyd his wyll of alle.  
¶ Grete rychesse was founde in that fayre towne, and 20  
the subgettes of the Emperour Charles were there wel  
refresshed of gold and syluer, whiche there habounded.  
For thadmyral Ballant, by cause that place <sup>1</sup> was so  
stronge & sure, had layed there grete tresours. The 24  
kyng ordeyned in suche manere, that bothe grete and  
smale were wel contente wyth hym. And there he  
abode thre dayes in departyng <sup>2</sup> & destributyng the  
goodes, after the degrees & qualytees of hys subgettes. 28  
And after, as charles wente sportyng by the ryuer flagot,  
In a caue were founden the ij sones, yonge chyl dren, of  
the fornamed geauntesse Amyotte, of whome he was  
wel Ioyous, and were baptysed; & one he named Roul- 32  
land, and that other Olyuer; and dyd do them wel to  
be nourysshed. But after, wythin two monethes, they  
were bothe founden dede in theyr beddes, wherfore

<sup>1</sup> i iij.

<sup>2</sup> orig. dapartyng.

themperour was euyll contente. Neuertheles, in that same tyme, whyche was the moneth of may, that the stronge cyte of mantryble was taken & put in subgetyon, charles made to come to hym Rychard of Normandy, Reyner of genes, hoel of nautes, Ryol of mauns, & took counceyl who shold kepe the brydge and passage of mantryble, tyl they had destroyed balant the admyral, & delyuerd oute of pryson the other peres of fraunse. Rychard answerd: "syr emperour, me semeth it shold be good that hoel & syr Ryol shold abyde for to kepe þ<sup>e</sup> brydge & toun wyth fyue thousand men." <sup>1</sup>and lyke as Rychard sayd, so was it doon. and there they ij abode, and the hurt men for to be heled at theyr leyzer. and after, with sowne of trompettes, the hoost of the emperour began to depart toward aygremore; and there was so moche peple and so grete estate, that it was merueylle. Thus as they were wel on theyr waye, The Emperour wente vpon a lytel hylle for to byholde his peple and subgettes; And seeyng the multytude, he lyfte vp hys eyen to heuen, and sayd: "O lord god, my creatour, whiche by thy grace and playsyr hast made me lord and conduytour of thys people, wyth ryght good hert I gyue to the, thankynges and laude. Thou hast gyuen to me grete puyssaunce sythe they be at my wylle and commaundemente." After that he had sayd thus, he blessyd hym, And in the name of Ihesus he took forth hys waye. And the sayd Emperour had in hys companye an hondred thousand men wel fyghtyng, And the Admyral had the fyghtars of thyrten contreyes. the frenssh men rode forth: Rychard of normandy was in the auaunte garde, And the Duke Reyner<sup>2</sup> in that other. Anone the tydynges came to thadmyral that galafre was slayn, & that mantryble was taken & dyscomfyted, <sup>3</sup> wherfore he swowned for sorowe, and cryed out, "haroo!" as a

Charles consults as to whom he shall leave in charge of Mantribe. (4875)

By the advice of Richard Howel and Raoul are left there with 5000 men. (4881)

Charles, seeing the magnitude of his forces, thanks God. (4907)

He has 100,000 men.

Balan is told of the death of Galafre, and the capture of Mantribe. (4923)

<sup>1</sup> i iiij, col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> orig. Reyuer.

<sup>3</sup> i iiij, bk.

In great grief and  
rage he curses  
Mahoun, (4927)

and smashes his  
image. (4939)

Sortibrant advises  
him to repent and  
humble himself  
before his gods,  
(4943)

and to send out  
spies to see if  
Charles is coming.  
(4951)

Balan is per-  
suaded and  
repents. (4963)

man fro hym self, sayeng<sup>r</sup>: “ha ! ha ! god mahon ! thy  
power is nought. O cursyd<sup>ð</sup> god & recreaunte, thou art  
nothyng<sup>r</sup> worth to me ! he is a moche fool that trusteth  
in the, whan thou suffrest my men to be slayn, and<sup>ð</sup> hast 4  
consented to my dyshonour, as I now wel see, whych  
ou3test wel to haue doon the contrarye.” Thys sayeng<sup>r</sup>,  
the admyral took a clubbe with his two handes, &  
ranne to mahon & his other goddes, & smote Mahon 8  
soo grete a stroke vpon the heed<sup>ð</sup>, that he fyl down, &  
was al to-broken. yf thadmyral and the other paynyns  
were not wel abused<sup>ð</sup>, they myght knowe clerely theyr  
Infydelyte and<sup>ð</sup> fals creauunce, for to Inuoque the ymages 12  
that can not speke ne gyue comfort, and<sup>ð</sup> haue no con-  
solacion. A lytel vnderstandyng and lacke of wytte, &  
also contrarye to nature, for to gyue fayth of helpe to a  
thyng made with the hande of a man. Neuertheles, 16  
Sortybrant of Conymbres, seeyng<sup>r</sup> the desolacyon of  
thadmyral, counceylled<sup>ð</sup> hym, that as moche as he myght,  
to chastyse hym self of the Iniurye doon to Mahon.  
Thadmyral said to hym : “I may not enclyne to do to 20  
hym obeyssaunce, Seeyng<sup>r</sup> that Charles hath wonne by  
his puyssaunce my cyte and stronge tour <sup>1</sup>of mantryble,  
where as I had<sup>ð</sup> my laste comforte to kepe me moost  
sure.” Sortybrant ansuerd : “Syr admyral, sende forth 24  
an espye for to wete yf the hoost of charles cometh  
hyther ageynst you ; And<sup>ð</sup> yf it be soo, late vs ryde  
ayenst hym in bataylle to-gyder. And<sup>ð</sup> yf ye may, late  
hym be taken, and<sup>ð</sup> hange hys people, or brenne them, 28  
without ony mercy or pyte. And<sup>ð</sup> thenne after ye may  
caste out of your tour these glotons that kepe it, and  
smyte of the heed<sup>ð</sup> of Fyerabras, thy sone, that aydeth  
them.” Whan the admyral ballant had herde Sorty- 32  
brant, consyderyng<sup>r</sup> hys affectyon, humbly he retorned  
to mahon, purposyng<sup>r</sup> to do as he had<sup>ð</sup> sayd<sup>ð</sup>.



¶ How the peres of Fraunce were assaylled'  
more strongly than euer they were, And'  
the toure quasi put to therthe, and' recom-  
4 forced' by the holy relyques, by them  
adoured, and other maters : capitulo x

SOrtybrant prayed<sup>d</sup> soo moche thadmyral, & with  
hym the olde kyng<sup>t</sup> Coldroe tempestet<sup>d</sup> hym, &  
8 brullant de mommyere, that for thyniurye that he had<sup>t</sup>  
doon to Mahon tofore them al he shold<sup>t</sup> make amendes.  
The admyral beyng content for their <sup>1</sup>affectyon, sware  
that he shold<sup>t</sup> encrease Mahon, and<sup>t</sup> Augment of a throu-  
12 sand wey<sup>3</sup>t, after their custome, of fyn gold<sup>t</sup> and other  
precyosytees. And<sup>t</sup> anone dyd<sup>t</sup> do sowne trompettes  
and other Instrumentes, at the sowne of whome were  
assembled sarasyns Innumerable, al armed<sup>t</sup>. And the  
16 admyral maad<sup>t</sup> to brynge hys engynes for to throwe  
grete stones at the tour, for to brynge it down, and<sup>t</sup> also  
for to destroye the frensshe men & hys doughter. And<sup>t</sup>  
thus, more feruent than euer he had been, cam for  
20 tassayle the toure, and<sup>t</sup> laye theyr engynes therto ; wyth  
whyeh the paynyns made fyue grete hooles in the  
toure, that thurgh the leste myght passe a carte at his  
ease. whan thys was doon, Olyuer & Rolland<sup>t</sup>, wyth  
24 theyr sheldes tofore them, and<sup>t</sup> theyr swerdes in theyr  
hondes, stode in the wyndowes, and<sup>t</sup> yet they were not  
soo hardy emonge them but that they were abasshed<sup>t</sup>,  
not wythstondyng<sup>t</sup> they had<sup>t</sup> good<sup>t</sup> wylle to defende  
28 them. Alway hym that they myght attayne with  
stones or other thynges, they soo hurte hym that he  
dyd<sup>t</sup> them nomore hurt ne damage. This doyng<sup>t</sup>, thad-  
myral cryed<sup>t</sup> : " O my frendes and<sup>t</sup> subgettes, doo your  
32 deuoyr to brynge to the erth thys toure ; For yf ye so  
do, ye shal haue my loue entyerly. And after I shal

Balan humbles  
himself before his  
gods,

and promises  
them gifts. (4965)

He orders batter-  
ing-engines to be  
brought up  
against the tower.  
(4979)

Five great  
breaches are  
made in the wall.  
(4987)

Roland and  
Oliver defend the  
tower well.  
(4991)

Balan threatens  
his daughter.

The Saracens  
swarm in at the  
breaches. (5011)

Roland cheers on  
the French  
knights.

Oliver proposes a  
sally. (5020)

Floripas encour-  
ages them, (5039)

and they drive  
the Saracens  
back,

and stop up the  
breaches.

<sup>1</sup>make Florypes the putayne to deye shamefully in a  
brennyng<sup>r</sup> fyre, for she hath wel deserved<sup>t</sup> it, doyn<sup>r</sup>g to  
me the dys<sup>h</sup>onour that euery man knoweth." ¶ After  
these wordes the paynys were more feruent than they 4  
had<sup>t</sup> ben tofore, & surmounted<sup>t</sup> by strengthe, scaled<sup>t</sup>  
the toure, and<sup>t</sup> mounted<sup>t</sup> vp, and<sup>t</sup> entred in at holes, in  
suche wyse that the x barons helde not but p<sup>e</sup> last  
stage that was. Rolland seyng<sup>r</sup> thys, sayd<sup>t</sup> to them: 8  
"lordes & brethern! in thonour of god<sup>t</sup> our maker, late  
vs wyth one courage bere vs valyauntly, ellys we shal  
not passe thys day, but that we shal be surprysed,  
taken, and<sup>t</sup> defeated<sup>t</sup>." "Brother & felowe," sayd<sup>t</sup> 12  
Olyuer, "we been here of vs x, as longe as it shal  
please our creatour, & we been al good<sup>t</sup> fyghtars. In  
the name of God<sup>t</sup>, I counceyl that we yssue oute for to  
assayle our enemyes. I had<sup>t</sup> leuer to dye there withoute, 16  
and suffre to be hewen, than to deye here wythin wyth  
dys<sup>h</sup>onour." Ogyer the danoys, and the other, sayd<sup>t</sup>  
semblably. Florypes, seeyn<sup>r</sup>g thys, was al abasshed<sup>t</sup>,  
and<sup>t</sup> demaunded<sup>t</sup> the barons yf they wold goo out for to 20  
goo assaylle the paynys, & sayd<sup>t</sup> to them: "ye noble  
knyghtes of honour & of good<sup>t</sup> partye, I praye to god<sup>t</sup>  
that at this tyme yeue you grace to doo wel, And I  
promyse you <sup>2</sup>yf ye put them oute from thys assaulte, I 24  
shal shewe to you a thyng wherof ye shal be Ioyeful."  
wyth tho wordes<sup>3</sup> the barons goo smyte and<sup>t</sup> hewe down  
the turkes so vygorously, that many of them were dede  
& hurt whych were in the holes of the walle, & smote 28  
them wyth stoones in the tour, in suche wyse that they  
were caste in to the dyches and drowned<sup>t</sup>. And<sup>t</sup> anone  
as they had<sup>t</sup> goten thoo holes, they stopped<sup>t</sup> them & faste  
enclosed<sup>t</sup> them. and<sup>t</sup> after florypes axed fyrst of naymes 32  
duc of bauyere, & of Thyerry duc of Ardayne, and<sup>t</sup>  
sayd<sup>t</sup>: "Lordes, on a tyme ye promysed<sup>t</sup> me, and sware,  
that ye shold not do ony thyng ayenst my wylle. I

<sup>1</sup> i v, col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> i v, back.

<sup>3</sup> orig. thordes.

wyl shewe to you the crowne of Ihesus, & two of the  
 nayles that he was nayled with to the crosse, whyche I  
 haue long kept." The barons heryng<sup>t</sup> thys, wepte for  
 4 Ioye, & sworn to hyr that they shold<sup>d</sup> do no thyng to  
 hyr, but al loyalte and<sup>t</sup> trouthe. Florypes wente thenne  
 and<sup>t</sup> fette a lytel coffre, moche ryche & fayre, and<sup>t</sup> tofore  
 them she opened<sup>t</sup> it; & assone as the relyques were taken  
 8 & vnwounden, there was seen a grete clerenes and a  
 meruayllous resplendysshour.

Floripas brings  
 out the sacred  
 relics, (5045)

Thenne the barons kneled down to the erthe, deu-  
 outely smytyng<sup>t</sup> them self on their brestes by con-  
 12 trycyon of hert. Duc Naymes <sup>1</sup>of bauyere was the  
 fyrst that kyssed<sup>t</sup> them wyth grete reuerence, & the  
 other after, & after came to the wyndowes, For the  
 paynmys were mounted on hye. And<sup>t</sup> assone as they  
 16 sawe them, they tombled<sup>t</sup> down to þ<sup>e</sup> grounde, dede, & al  
 to-broken. Whan Naymes sawe that, he sayd: "O  
 lord<sup>t</sup> god<sup>t</sup> of glorye, whyche mayst do al thyng, I thanke  
 the, & gyue to the lawde & praysyng, For now I see  
 20 wel and<sup>t</sup> knowe that these ben the reliques of whome we  
 haue ofte spoken." And<sup>t</sup> Incontynent he took hardynes  
 and courage, and<sup>t</sup> after sayd to hys felawes: "Brethern,  
 now we be recomforted<sup>t</sup>, so that we shal neuer fere ne  
 24 doubte paynmys ne sarasyns." And<sup>t</sup> after, Florypes  
 remysed<sup>t</sup> the relyques in the coffret honestly. Thad-  
 myral sawe the prynces at the wyndowes, & hys dought-  
 er wyth them; & he, ful of a fals entencyon, escryed<sup>t</sup>  
 28 hyr wyth an hye voys, by cause he wold<sup>t</sup> be vnder-  
 stonden: "O florypes, fayr doughter, I see wel where  
 thou art. A grete fool was thy fader whan he trusted<sup>t</sup>  
 the, & ful of folysshe counceyl was he that put in thyn  
 32 hande, by the moyen of thy langage, the fyrst pryson-  
 ers. I haue herde say longe sythe, that a man that  
 trusteth in a woman, of thyng of Importaunce, is a moche  
 fool. but neuertheles thy puterye shal <sup>2</sup>not endure

which the knights  
 kiss with great  
 reuerence. (5052)

At the sight of  
 the relics the  
 Saracens fall  
 down dead from  
 the walls. (5065)

Balan sees his  
 daughter at a  
 window and  
 abuses and  
 threatens her.  
 (5083)

Floripas threatens  
him with a stick.  
(5093)

The Saracens  
make a furious  
assault and a  
great part of the  
wall is broken  
down. (5101)

The French use  
the Saracen idols  
as missiles. (5113)

Balan swoons  
with rage, (5117)

and again abuses  
his gods. (5123)

Sortibrant  
reproves him,  
(5127)

longe, as I truste, For I swere to the that I shal departe  
the loue that thou hast wyth the glotons of Fraunce,  
& wythoute pyte I shal doo brenne you al." Florypes  
herde these wordes, & took a baston in her honde, & 4  
made a sygne as though she had menaced hyr fader;  
wherfore thadmyral, seeyng that, began to sowne to  
gadre hys peple, and comaunded to shote & lose the  
Instrumentes ayenst the toure, in suche wyse that anone 8  
a grete partye of the walle was ouerthrowen to therthe.  
Thenne the barons doubted moche of them vpon the  
walle. And Rolland, Olyuer, and Ogyer went in to a  
chambre, where as were Mahon, Appolyn, Termagaunte, 12  
& Margotte, goddes of the Paynims, whyche were  
moche ryche. And Rolland took Appolyn whyche  
was heuy, and threwe it vpon the Paynims: Olyuer  
lyfte vp termagaunte, & Ogyer Margotte, and smote 16  
wyth them the sarasyns, in suche wyse that them that  
they attayned dyd them neuer hurte after.

Whan thadmyral sawe thus his goddes vytupered  
and throwen, he took suche angre and so grete yre in 20  
hys courage, that for sorowe he tombled down as a dede  
man to the erthe. Sortybrant, with moche sorowe, took  
hym vp, and many wepte & made grete <sup>1</sup>desolacyon for  
sorowe. and after thadmyral sayd: "lordes & frendes, 24  
he shal euer be my frende & specyal byloued, þat wyl  
aduenge the shame that these glotons haue doon to my  
goddes." Sortybrant dyd grete payne to recomforte  
hym, sayeng that in short tyme he shold be auenged 28  
on them al, "seen that the toure is broken in moo than  
xv partyes." "O Mahon," sayd the admyral, "thou  
hast wel forgotten me; at the moost nede thou fayllest  
me: thou arte now so olde that thou dotest. I haue seen 32  
the day that þou haddest grete puyssaunce." ¶ Sorty-  
brant ansuerd: "Syr, ye haue an euyl custome, whan  
ye speke so euyl ayenst Mahon. Ye knowe wel that

<sup>1</sup> i vj, col. 2.



there was neuer borne, ne neuer shal be, so good a god:  
 he gyueth vs plente<sup>1</sup> of whete, of wyn, and of other  
 goodes also; he shal doo for vs whan he hath bythought  
 4 hym. he is yet euyl contente for the stroke that ye  
 smote hym on the nose. Abyde a lytel tyl he be better  
 aduysed, And the frensshe men shal yelde them vnto  
 you soo that ye shal holde you pleased." Vpon these  
 8 wordes Mahon was broughte tofore hym, And a deuyl  
 entred in to hym, whyche sayd in thys manere after  
 that he had adoured hym: "Admyral, ryche lord, ne  
 dyscomfort you not: do sowne your trompettes &  
 12 hornes, <sup>2</sup>and assemble your peple, & after assaylle the  
 toure; and at thys tyme ye shal take the Frensshe  
 men." wyth these wordes thadmyral was al reioyced,  
 and alle thengynes and Instrumentes he dyd do sette  
 16 ayenst the tour, and threwe stones and maad grete shotte  
 ageynst the toure, whyche was thenne al to-broken, and  
 almost al ouerthrowen. The peres of Fraunce seynge  
 thys, had grete doubte of daunger, and not wythout  
 20 cause. Neuertheles, Ogyer the danoys sayd to hys  
 felawes: "O loyal companyons, replenysshed of fy-  
 delyte, For ony payne or doubte of deth emonge vs, late  
 none be founde wyth ony treason, ne suffre to entre in  
 24 to hym ony euyl thought of Infydelyte and cowardyse.  
 ye see now pat the tour gooth to grounde, And almost  
 these sarasyns be medled wyth vs. But as touchynge  
 to me, I swere by god my maker, that tofore my soule  
 28 shal departe fro my body, yf I haue the puyssaunce to  
 holde in my hande Cortayn my swerde, I shal make so  
 grete a dyscomfytur of these paynyns, that euery man  
 shal meruaylle." With these wordes Rolland byhelde  
 32 durandal; and Olyuer, with eueryche of the other, by-  
 helde theyr swerdes, & were alle renewed wyth strengthe  
 and courage. And al wyth one wylle goon vpon the  
<sup>3</sup>sarasyns, and there dyd suche dylygence, that alle-

and begs him to  
 haue patience.

A false devil,  
 under the form of  
 Mahoun,

urges Balan to  
 renew the  
 assault,  
 promising him  
 success. (5140)

Balan is delighted,  
 and orders his  
 men up again.  
 (5147)

The French are  
 almost in despair,

but are comforted  
 by Ogier, (5171)

and they drive  
 the Saracens  
 back again.  
 (5189)

<sup>1</sup> orig. pleute.

<sup>2</sup> i vj, back.

<sup>3</sup> i vj, back, col. 2.

waye they were lordes of the toure, & made the sara-  
syns theyr enemyes to goo abacke. Florypes, consyder-  
yng<sup>t</sup> theyr affayre, was sorowful that no socours com to  
hem, and<sup>t</sup> also remembryng<sup>t</sup> the menaces of hyr fader 4  
hadmyrall. But Guye of bourgoyn recomforted<sup>t</sup> hyr  
alwaye, in suche wyse, that of al she was contente.

¶ How the peres of Fraunce had' tydynges  
of<sup>1</sup> thoost of charles, and' the admyral also; 8  
and' how Ganellon bare hym merueyllously,  
which allone was sente to the admyral, and'  
what he dyd': capitulo x[i]

Naymes from a  
window sees  
Charles and his  
army coming.  
(5207)

**T**He Frensshe men beyng<sup>t</sup> in thys contynuel payn 12  
of bataylle for to defende þ<sup>e</sup> toure, Duc Naymes of  
bauyere went vp on hye, and<sup>t</sup> sawe oute of a wyndowe,  
& sawe bynethe in a valeye the sygne of saynt denys,  
whyche was brought hastely, & after, a grete companye 16  
of men of armes: And<sup>t</sup> thought in hym self that they  
came for to socour and<sup>t</sup> ayde them. and<sup>t</sup> anone sent  
for his felawes for to come & see them. Assone as  
Florypes vnderstood<sup>t</sup> it, she came to Guy of bourgoyn, 20  
sayeng: "O glorious <sup>2</sup>vyrgyn marie, moder of Ihesus,  
worshypped<sup>t</sup> mote ye be for these tydynges that I haue  
herde! O noble knyght, guye of bourgoyn, my dere  
loue, approche ye to me yf it playse you, and<sup>t</sup> kysse 24  
me." Of the loye of Florypes, were loyeful the erles  
and<sup>t</sup> lordes, ye may thynke that they were wel com-  
forted<sup>t</sup> whan they sawe the standard of fraunce, wherin  
was the dragon wel figured<sup>t</sup>. Grete loye and grete 28  
consolacion was emonge them, & they had<sup>t</sup> cause, seen  
the daunger wherin they were. Anone a paynym cam  
to thadmyral, & sayd<sup>t</sup> to hym, that Charles wyth an  
hondred thousand<sup>t</sup> men of armes came makyng<sup>t</sup> grete 32  
bruyt. The kynge Coldroe counceyllid<sup>t</sup> anone that

Floripas thanks  
God for the news,  
(5223)

and they all-  
rejoice.

A messenger  
tells Balan that  
the French army  
is coming. (5231)

<sup>1</sup> orig. yf.

<sup>2</sup> i vij.

- euery man shold be armed, and that they shold goo mete wyth hym at the fyrst poynte. Hys counceyl was approued by thadmyral and by thother. Wher-
- 4 fore anone L thousand turkes were assembled in grete poynte for to kepe the grete vale of Iosue, to thende that he myght not come in to Aygremore. Rolland sawe Rychard of Normandy wyth hys con-
- 8 fanon reysed vp, whyche came al afore: and alle taryed in a medowe for to bayte and refresshe theyr horses, and to tarye there al the nyght, whyche was nyghe. And wythoute makynge lodgyses or other
- 12 thyng, they there rested them al nyght, For theyr tentes were lefte at mantryble. On the morne erly, the Emperour dyd do arme his peple, & sette them in good araye, and in grete poynte, And after sente for Fyera-
- 16 bras, and sayd to hym: "Ryght dere frende, thou knowest that I haue doo the be baptysed, wherfore I loue the the better. yf thou myztest pourchace and make that thy fadre be baptysed, and renye Mahon
- 20 and al hys dyabolike goddes, I shold be wel glad and Ioyous. And I promyse to the, that of al hys goodes I shal not take a peny. And yf he wyl not so do, I promyse that by force I shal fyght ayenst hym; & yf
- 24 he take harme, wyte it not me, ne conne me noo maulgre, for I may not lette it." "Syr Emperour," sayd Fyera-bras, "take a messenger, and late hym demaunde hym, yf he wyl soo doo as ye say, and I shal be content.
- 28 For yf he gaynsaye it I shal neuer praye for hym, ne haue pyte of hym, though I see hym hewen and deye." Hereupon charles demaunded Reyner and rychard of Normandy, whyche were his nexte counceyllours, and
- 32 sayd to them: "Lordes, whome seme you moost propyce for to sende on thys message to the Admyrall? By myn aduys, ganellon shold be good therfore, yf he wold, for to recounthe & speke hooly thys message. I

He sends 50,000 men to meet them.

The French bivouac for the night. (5251)

In the morning Charles tells Fierabras that if Balan will be baptised he shall keep all his kingdom. (5263)

Fierabras advises Charles to send a messenger to his father. (5275)

Charles proposes to send Ganelon. (5283)

knowe hym for wel suffysaunt, & ye knowe wel that he  
 dyd wel hys deuoyr at the entre of mantryble. yf ye  
 wyl consente, he shal doo the message." Rycharde  
 answerd, and Reyner also, that he shold doo wel the 4  
 message. The kyng sente for ganellon, and sayd to  
 hym: "My frende, we haue chosen you for to goo say  
 to thadmyral Ballant that he be baptyse & renye  
 mahon, & that he take Ihesu Cryste for hys god, & 8  
 that he byleue in hym, & in hys passyon that he suf-  
 fred for al humayn creatures; & after, that he yelde to  
 me my barons, whyche he holdeth in hys pryson, &  
 also the relyques that longe tyme I haue demaunded of 12  
 hym. & yf he wyl do this, we shal leue to hym hys  
 contreye & hys landes: & yf he wyl doo otherwyse, we  
 shal make to hym mortal warre, and shal take of hym  
 no mercy." Ganellon was contente for to goo thyder 16  
 allone, And took & sette on his helme, & mounted  
 vpon his hors, named gascon, and henge on hys necke  
 his shelde, wherein was paynted the lyon, & after went  
 in to the vale of Iosue hastely. and anone he was 20  
 taken of the turkes that kept the passage; but whan  
 they knewe that he was a messenger for to speke to  
 thadmyral, they troubled hym not, but lete hym goo,  
 & he taryed <sup>1</sup>not tyl that he came tofore thabytacyon of 24  
 thadmyral, & he lente vpon his spere with a knyghtly  
 countenaunce, & moche resembled a baron of grete  
 valure, for to say wel hys message. whan thadmyral  
 knewe of his comyng, he came to hym, And thenne 28  
 Ganellon spake hardyly to hym in this manere: "Sara-  
 syn, take hede & vnderstonde me: I am a messenger of  
 the noble charles, kyng of fraunce & ryght myghty  
 Emperour, & he sendeth the worde by me, that thou 32  
 renye and forsake Mahon & thyn other goddes dya-  
 bolyke, & byleue in Ihesu cryst, the redemptour of al  
 the worlde, whyche took on hym humanyte, and suffred

Richard approves  
 of this,

and Charles sends  
 for Ganelon

and gives him  
 his instructions.  
 (5291)

Ganelon arms  
 himself,  
 and starts. (5307)

He rides up to  
 Balan's tent,  
 (5322)

and delivers his  
 message to the  
 Sultan, (5325)



- deth, cruel & bytter, in the tree of the<sup>1</sup> crosse, for to redeme al the world. & yf thou so do, thou art assured not onely [not] to deye, & also not to lese thy
- 4 londe, ne none of thy good, but thou shalt alwaye be byloued of hym, & of Fyerabras thy sone. and yf thou wilt not accorde herto, & withstande it, knowe for certayn, that of Charles thou art deffied, & al thy people.
- 8 & yf thou wilt saue thy self, thynke to flee and wythdrawe the fro thys contreye; For yf thou may be taken and holden, thou shalt be delyuerd to daungerous deth, and alle thy subgettes shal be dysmembred & slayn,
- 12 & after, he shal gyue thy royame and thy rychesses to his <sup>2</sup>seruauntes. Therfore aduyse the wel." Whan thadmyral had herde hym, he was almoost in a rage of hys
- wordes, and by destresse of angre he took a staffe for
- 16 to smyte the messenger, and sayd to hym: "Gloton payllard! thou art dysmesured in thy langage. by mahon, to whome I am yeuen, at thys tyme thou hast be ouer hardy, & lytel loued the, Charles, whan he sente
- 20 the to me. For thou shalt be wel sure that thou shalt neuer recounthe to hym thy message." Ganellon, seyng that he was not wel sure wyth them, he took hys swerde, whyche was heuy & sharpe, & gaf wythal a
- 24 stroke to brullant of mommyere in the breste, that he ouerthrewe & fyl at the feet of the admyrall, whyche seyng that, escryed moche strongly tauenge hym. Thenne wyth thys voys assembled moo than fyfty
- 28 thousand turkes, for to take Ganellon, whyche ranne after hym thurgh the vale of Iosue; but he escaped them al, and was not taken. Duc Naymes was at a wyndowe, and sawe hym chaced, & demaunded Rolland
- 32 & Olyuer what he was; & they knewe for certayn that he was crysten, and by presumyng made emonge them they Iudged that it was Ganellon that had spoken to thadmyral. ¶ "Alas!" sayd Rolland, "I praye to

calling on him to become Christian on pain of death. (5337)

Balan, in a rage, threatens him with a stick. (5343)

Ganelon draws his sword and cuts down Brullant. (5353)

Balan calls on his men to seize Ganelon,

but he rides off and escapes. (5360)

The knights in the tower recognize him. (5371)

<sup>1</sup> orig. ithe.

<sup>2</sup> i viij.

Ganelon turns on  
his pursuers,

and slays two of  
them. (5385)

Oliver sees this  
feat,

and wishes he  
were with him.  
(5395)

The Saracens  
pursue Ganelon

till they see the  
army of Charles.

Ihesus our redemour that he graunte <sup>1</sup>hym grace to  
passe wel without daunger. I shal be euyl content yf  
he come not to his good desyre." ¶ The other barons  
sayden semblably, & prayed god to kepe hym fro peryl. 4  
Ganelon ran alwaye forth tyl he came to the toppe of  
a montayne, and there he turned hym ayenst the  
Paynyms, & sawe comyng to hym a grete paynym of  
the cyte of Aygremore. and anone he took hys swerde 8  
named murgall, moche trenchaunte, & atteyned the  
paynym vpon the helme, and clefte hym to the breste:  
And after, he slewe Tenebre, whyche was broder of  
kyng<sup>i</sup> Sortybrant. Olyuer sawe al hys feat, and sayd 12  
to Rolland: "Brother, beholde the valyaunce that thys  
baron dooth; I praye god that he conserue hym. And  
wete ye wel that in my hert I loue hym. Saue you &  
charles, I loue none better. Now wold god that I 16  
were in hys companye, I shold make grete marterdom  
on these Paynyms." Neuertheles he was strongly  
chaced of the paynyms. But whan they sawe the  
hoost of Charles, they retorned aback, and wente & 20  
tolde the affayre to thadmyral, & how Charles had moo  
than an hondred thousand fyghtyng men. wherfore  
they counceyllled that euery man shold arme hym, &  
that counceyl was approued. but whan sortybrant 24  
<sup>2</sup>knewe that hys broder was dede, he made to come an  
Innumerable companye of sarasyns, tauenge his deth in  
menacyng to do harm to Charles. Of hys entencion  
was moche glad thadmyral, bycause he myght the better 28  
come to hys desyre.

¶ How Charles emperour ordeyned ten  
bataylles, and how they dyd' & were  
recountred' of the puyssaunce of the 32  
admyral, where as themperour dyd' mer-  
uaylles, and' of other maters: capitulo xij

<sup>1</sup> i viij, col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> i viij, back.

- W**Han Ganellon was comen to kyng<sup>1</sup> Charles,  
 themperour ordeyned x bataylles after that  
 4 Ganellon had tolde hys message, whyche was suche :  
 “Syr emperour, I say to you that thadmyral ne fereth  
 you ne your dedes, neyther god ne hys sayntes. I was  
 wel happy that I escaped, For I haue been chased  
 8 wyth xx thousand sarasyns. after that thadmyral wold  
 haue had me, & after these wordes, I slewe one of theyr  
 kynges.” wherfore he was praysed of the kyng & other.  
 And anone they sowned hornes and trompettes, & was  
 12 open warre on alle partes in thoost of Charles. Rol-  
 land herde the sowne, and the voys of <sup>1</sup>the frensshe  
 hoost, wherof he and al the barons were al reioyced &  
 made good chyere. whan the ij hoostes recountred, al  
 16 the contrey shone of theyr armes, ther were so many of  
 them. after, as I haue sayd tofore, kyng charles made  
 ten bataylles: In the fyrst, he ordeyned Rychard of  
 Normandy; Duc Reyner of genes had the second,  
 20 Ganellon the thyrd, Alory the fourth, Geffroy the  
 fyfthe, Machayre the vj, Hardre the seuenth, Amangius  
 the viij, Sampson the ix, And of the tenthe was con-  
 duytour charles the kyng. & in eche bataylle were x  
 24 thousand men of armes wel fyghtyng atte leste. Whan  
 Ballant the admyral sawe the kyng comyng, he sayd  
 to brullant, “who shal be the fyrst that shal entre in  
 to bataylle with an hondred thousand paynmys;”  
 28 & sayd that yf he took Charles, he shold not slee them  
 ne fyerabras, for he wold after smyte of theyr heedes.  
 & vpon thys poynte the warre was open, & Brullant  
 began to goo a grete bowedrauzt tofore the other, and  
 32 began to crye “haro ! haro ! where is charles themper-  
 our wyth his euy! chere? loo ! I come to the ! thou  
 hast enterprysed a grete folye whan thou passest the  
 see, & ouer late thou shalt repente the. On thys day

Ganelon reports  
the result of the  
message to  
Charles, (5439)

who divides his  
army into 10  
divisions, and  
prepares for  
battle. (5453)

Richard leads the  
vanguard, (5455)

and Charles  
himself the rear.  
(5457)

Balan bids  
Brullant to attack  
the French first  
with 100,000 men.  
(5459)

Brullant rides out  
and challenges  
Charles. (5471)

<sup>1</sup> i viij. back, col. 2.

Charles charges  
at him,

and slays him,  
(5485)

and afterwards  
many more of the  
Saracens. (5496)

Tenebres, a  
Saracen king,  
makes great  
havoc amongst  
the French,  
(5523)

but is himself  
slain by Richard.

The French force  
the pass,  
and approach  
Balan's division.  
(5563)

shal be the ende of thy lyf and of thy subgettes lyf. And <sup>1</sup>wythoute faulte thou shalte be yolden to thadmyral, & alle thy contreye shal be destroyed." Themperour herde wel these wordes; wherfore alle in a fureye <sup>4</sup> he lete renne hys hors, & came ageynst the paynym, & attayned hym in suche wyse that hys harnoys brake, and after, he drewe hys swerde, and neuer lefte hym tyl he was dede. fro thens with his spere he came to a <sup>8</sup> turke kynge of pyetreelee, and smote hym in the breste that he fyl deed to the erthe. and whan his spere was broken, he dyd grete deuoyr with Ioyouse hys swerd; for hym that he attayned, dyd neuer hurte after. At <sup>12</sup> that tyme he bare hym meruayllously, that one of the hoostes medled eche wyth other in suche wyse that there was neuer seen warre so mortal, for they that were lyuyng were lette by them that were dede. <sup>16</sup> Thenne emonge the paynyms there was a turke, named Tenebres, which cam makyng grete bruyt vpon the frensshe men, and attayned fyrst the noble Iehan of pountayse vpon his shelde, and brake it in pyeces, & <sup>20</sup> smote hym thurgh the body that he fyl deed to the erthe; and after drewe hys swerde, & put to deth huon, and guernyer thauncyen, and after sayd to the frensshe men that on that day Charles and hys sub- <sup>24</sup> gettes had loste theyr myght. Rychard of <sup>2</sup>Normandye had despyte of hys wordes, & came ageynste hym, & attayned hym so daungerously that he brake his hawberke, and brake his shelde in quarters, & so smote <sup>28</sup> hym, that he fyl down deed wythout ony more reprochyng & sayeng euyl wordes. & after, by force of strengthe they passed the vale of Iosue, & came and fonde thadmyral wyth alle hys puyssaunce, whyche <sup>32</sup> was accompanied wyth iiij kynges crowned, & wyth an CM fyghtyng men, as wel a horsback as a fote. Anone a messenger came to the admyral, & tolde hym

<sup>1</sup> k j.

<sup>2</sup> k j, col. 2.



how brullant his brother was dede, and many in hys  
 companye. Thenne he sente for tempest, hys neuewe,  
 & for Sortybrant of conymbres, his moost speyal  
 4 frendes, & said to them: "My barons and trewe  
 frendes, yf euer ye haue loued me, & haue entencion  
 to do me playsyr, Doo so moche that ye fynde charles  
 the kyng<sup>1</sup>. For I wyl goo to hym, and haue concluded  
 8 in my self to fyght in my persone ayenst hys persone;  
 & sythe I shal deye ones, it suffyseth me that I myght  
 slee hym, & thenne shal I be contente to deye, yf I  
 deye after. For I retche not yf I aduenge me or I  
 12 deye." Sortybrant & many other, consydering<sup>t</sup> thastate  
 of thadmyral, bygonnen to wepe for pyte in comfortyng<sup>t</sup>  
 hym.

Balan determines  
 to seek out and  
 engage Charles in  
 single combat.

<sup>1</sup>¶ How in thys bataylle folowyng', Sortybrant  
 16 was slayne by Reyner, fader of Olyuer,  
 and after how thadmyral dyd' meruaylles  
 and' grete ennoye to the frensshe men:  
 capitulo xiiij

20 **B**Allant thadmyral rode vpon an hors, the beste  
 rennyng of alle the contreye, ryght wel armed,  
 and it was blacke as a more, & hym self was grete  
 of body, well membrede, & had hys berde hangyng<sup>t</sup> to  
 24 the sadel, whyche was whyte as snowe. & after dyd do  
 sowne hys trompettes & hornes tassemble his hoost, &  
 made the archers to goo byfore, whyche coude wel shiote  
 wyth bowes turquoys, & al furyously that one ayenst  
 28 the other goo shiote, and make mortal warre, so that the  
 shiote flewe in thayer thycker than hayl. So moche  
 people was there slayn that the wayes were empessed  
 & lette by dede bodyes. The Duke Reyner passed  
 32 thurgh forth, & the fyrst that he encountred was  
 kyng Sortybrant, & gaf to hym a grete stroke with-  
 out faynyng, that hys shelde auaylled hym not; hys

A general engage-  
 ment ensues,

and the slaughter  
 is immense.  
 (5516)

Reyner attacks  
 and slays  
 Sortibrant.

<sup>1</sup> k j, back.

Balan grieves  
over the death of  
Sortibrant.

He charges into  
the French,

and slays Huon of  
Milan and 20  
others. (5574)

Ganelon and his  
friends make  
great slaughter of  
the Saracens.

Milo's horse is  
killed by Balan,

but he is rescued  
by Ganelon.

hauberk al to-brake, so that he made his spere to plunge  
and bayne in hys body soo depe, that he abode there  
deed<sup>1</sup> lyke a beest; & after, wyth hys swerde made so  
grete murdre & slaughter of the fals turkes, *pat* it was 4  
<sup>1</sup>meruaylle. Anone the admyral knewe the deth of  
Sortybrant, wherof he was almoost oute of hys wytte  
in a rage, and sythe sayd: "O Sortybrant, my special  
frende, I see wel now that I shal be auenged yf I 8  
venge not thy deth." with thyse wordes he maad his  
hors to renne vpon <sup>p<sup>e</sup></sup>frenssh men so despytously that  
whome he attayned he put to deth, and came to huon  
of myllan, & slewe hym. thenne he dyd grete dom- 12  
mage, and fought that tyme so strengely, that he put to  
deth wel seuen frensshe men & xiiij Normans moche  
valyantly, sayeng: ¶ "O ye vnhappy frensshe men, I  
shal now make you knowe that thadmyral of spayne is 16  
comen. in this day shal thoost of fraunce be destroyed,  
& shal neuer repayre home ageyn in to fraunce. I  
shal lede awaye with me the kyng Charles with his  
florissshed berd, & I shal do hange or brenne hym, & 20  
also with hym, Rolland & Olyuer, & their felowes." &  
with these wordes the paynems enhardyed them in  
suche wyse *pat* they dyd gretely theyr deuoyr ayenst  
the frensshe men. At this medle the counte ganellon, 24  
haldre, alory, & geffroy daulteuyle, & *pat* lygnage, dyd  
gretely theyr deuoyr and bare them wel. For in a shorte  
space by them were slayn moo than a M paynyns.  
Thadmyral, moost valyaunt of the sarasyns, <sup>2</sup>attayned 28  
the counte myllon by hys helme, that almoost he had  
abyden in the place, and with a stroke thadmyral smote  
of hys hors hede that he fyl to the erthe. and after he  
took hym, & layed hym tofore hym, for to haue born 32  
hym awaye, but the lygnage of ganellon saued hym,  
notwythstondyng that many of theym were slayn and  
dede. Neuertheles the frensshe men surmounted the

<sup>1</sup> k j, back, col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> k ij.

paynyms, and that was by the ayde of fyerabras, which  
for loue of Charles dyd fyght, and made grete dys-  
comfytur of the sarasyns. for there he put to deth  
4 Tempeste, and the olde Rubyon, and moo than fyfty  
other of these mastyns myscreauntes. & he there bare  
hym in suche wyse that there was not one persone that  
durst come tofore hym to resyste hym.

Fierabras slays  
more than 50  
Saracens.

8 ¶ How the peres of Fraunce whyche were in  
the toure came oute whan they sawe the  
hoost, & how thadmyral was taken &  
holden prysonner : capitulo xiiij

12 **T**He paynyms & frensshe men, alwaye perseuer-  
yng in mortal bataylle, coude not make thende,  
eche one of other, For the multytude of the pay-  
nyms was so grete that they myzt not be dyscomfyt.

16 Whan the barons that were in the tour sawe the fayt,  
& that they that kepte the toure were goon to the  
socours and crye of thadmyral, they sprange out, & eche  
took an hors of them þat were dede, which ranne at al

The French  
knights, seeing  
the battle, sally  
out, and seizing  
each a stray  
horse, (5533)

20 aduenture ; and eche also took his swerde in his hond,  
& sodeynly cam vpon the sarasyns for to passe thurgh  
them to the frensshe hoost, & made so grete bruyt that  
the moost hardyest of the paynyms gaf them waye, &

charge the Sara-  
cens, and force  
their way through  
them, (5542)

24 lete them passe, and in especyal rolland, for where he  
smote with durandal, cam neuer after tofore hym. & at  
thys departyng was derly recomanded guy of bourgoyn  
of florypes, for she had fere of hym. Neuertheles, whan

28 they were assembled wyth the other, wythoute letyng  
them to be knowen, went vpon the sarasyns, & helde  
them soo short that anone they slewe them in suche wyse  
þat the other put them to flyght : for there was neuer

32 larke fledde more ferfully tofore þe sperhawke than the  
sarasyns fledde tofore rolland. Thadmyral knewe wel

scattering them  
like larks before  
the hawk, (5550)

hys destructyon by the comyng<sup>i</sup> of the peres that were  
 in þ<sup>e</sup> toure, & cryed<sup>t</sup> wyth an h[y]e voys : “mahon, my  
 god, to whome I haue gyuen my self, and haue doon to  
 so moche honour, thou hast forgotten<sup>1</sup> me ! Remembre 4  
 me now ! ¶ For and euer I may gete the, I shal bete the  
 bothe flankes,<sup>2</sup> hede & vysage, and also put out thyn eyen,  
 fals recreaunt god<sup>t</sup> that thou art.” he thus sayeng<sup>i</sup>, he  
 was so pursywed<sup>t</sup> and smyton that he fyl down vnder 8  
 his hors, and was taken, and not slayn, at the request of  
 hys sone fyerabras, to thende that he shold be aduysed<sup>t</sup>  
 to byleue in Ihesu cryst, & in the holy Trynyte, &  
 bycome crysten, & al his contreye. Thenne the bataylle 12  
 took an ende ; and he that wold not be conuerted<sup>t</sup> was  
 incontynent put to deth. Somme fledde, and somme  
 were taken. Thenne after thys the Frensshe men  
 wente & vnarmed them, & Charles sawe there hys 16  
 barons whom he desyred so moche to see, & in especial  
 his neuew rolland, & Olyuer, whom he loued so moche,  
 & were so gretly valyaunt. It can not be sayd<sup>t</sup> ne  
 expressed<sup>t</sup> the Ioye that was emonge them ; & the con- 20  
 solacyon & reioycyng<sup>i</sup> of kyng<sup>i</sup> charles was Inestymable.  
 Thenne they recounted alle thynges what were happend<sup>t</sup>  
 to them, & of theyr daungers and Ieopardyes whiche  
 they had escaped<sup>t</sup>, & sorowes & lamentacions that they 24  
 had endured<sup>t</sup>, wherfore Charles and many other wept for  
 pyte. And thys endured<sup>t</sup> many dayes, there where as  
 the hurt men & seek were heeled<sup>t</sup>, & they that were  
 hole passed theyr tyme in deduyte, tryumphe, and 28  
 Ioye.

Balan invokes his  
 god Mahon (5569)

with threats.

He is unhorsed  
 and taken  
 prisoner, (5647)

and the battle  
 ends. (5681)

There is great  
 rejoicing over the  
 safety of the  
 knights. (5670)

The army rests  
 some days to  
 recruit their  
 strength.

<sup>3</sup>¶ How ballant, thadmyrall, for ony admony-  
 cyon that was shewed<sup>t</sup> to hym, wold not  
 be baptysed, and how after, guy of bour- 32  
 goyn espoused florypes, & was crowned

<sup>1</sup> orig. forygoten.

<sup>2</sup> k ij, back.

<sup>3</sup> k ij, back, col. 2.



kyng, and she quene of that contreye :  
capitulo XV

- 4 **W**Han charles had al appeased, he took ballant Charles sends for Balan, (5719)  
the admyral tofore hys noblesse, & sayd to hym in this maner: "ballant, al creatures resonable owen to gyue synguler honour & pertyculer loue to hym that hath gyuen to them beyng, knowleche, 8 & lyf, & it is wel requesyte & nedeful that he haue honour and reuerence that hath made heuen and erthe, & al that therein enhabyteth. Wherefore by good ryght he is superyour and abouen al; And a grete abusyon and, declaring the evil and folly of idolatry,  
12 is comprysed in hym which gyueth fayth and hope in that whyche he hath made wyth hys hondes, & of mater dede, Insensyble, and that hath neyther reson ne soule, as thy goddes dyabolyke, whyche may not  
16 ne can gyue consolacyon to theyr subgettes. Wherefore I warne the for the helthe of thy soule, and for the preseruyng of thy body & of thy goodes, that thou take awaye alle these Iniquytees and peruerse affectyons,  
20 & byleue in the holy Trynyte, fader, sone, <sup>1</sup>and holy ghoost, one onely god almyghty; and byleue that the sone of god, for to repayre thoffence of our formest fader adam, descended in to thys world, and took humanyte  
24 in the wombe of the blessed vyrgyn marie, whyche was al pure and wythoute spotte. And byleue in the artycles of the fayth, and obeye and kepe hys comandementes, which he hath gyuen to vs for our helth. and  
28 byleue how he was taken of the Iewes, and by enuy hanged on the crosse for to redeme vs fro the paynes of helle. Byleue hys resurrexyon and ascencyon in hys body gloryfyed, and the other thynges, as the holy  
32 baptesme whyche he hath establysshed, wyth the other sacramentes. & yf thou wylt thus byleue thou shalt be saued, & thou shalt neyther lose body ne goodes." He recounts Christ's crucifixion, resurrection, and ascension,  
and the articles of the Christian faith.  
and says that if he will be converted, nothing shall be taken from him. (5722)

Balan swears he  
will never forsake  
Mahon. (5749)

Charles threatens  
him with death.  
(5756)

Fierabras inter-  
cedes for his  
father, who  
agrees to be  
baptised. (5783)

The font is pre-  
pared, (5789)

but Balan spits in  
it, and nearly  
kills the bishop,  
(5809)

who is saved by  
Ogier.

Fierabras again  
intercedes for  
Balan, (5813)

but Floripas urges  
Charles to put  
him to death at  
once. (5819)

Thadmyral answerd that he wold no thyng do so, and  
sware that for deth ne for lyf he wold not leue  
Mahon. Themperour holdyng<sup>t</sup> a naked swerd, sayd to  
hym, that yf he forsoke not Mahon he shold do put 4  
hym to deth. Fyerabras, seying<sup>t</sup> thys, kneled<sup>t</sup> down to  
herthe, & prayed<sup>t</sup> hys fader to do as the emperour had<sup>t</sup>  
sayd. Thadmyral fered<sup>t</sup> the deth, & sayd that he was  
contente that the fonte shold be blessed. Charles was 8  
glad, and dyd do make redy a fonte wyth <sup>1</sup>fayr water in  
a fayr vessel; and the bysshop wyth other mynystres of  
the chyrche dyd halowe the fonte, and made alle redy.  
& after, whan thadmyral was vncladde, the bysshop 12  
demaunded<sup>t</sup> hym, sayeng<sup>t</sup>: "Syr ballant, forsake ye  
mahon, and crye ye mercy to god of heuen for your  
trespaces? and byleue ye in Ihesu cryst, the sone of  
the vyrgyn marye?" whan thadmyral vnderstode these 16  
wordes, al hys body began to tremble. than, in despyte of  
Ihesus, he spytte in the fonte, and caught the bysshop,  
& wold haue drowned<sup>t</sup> hym in the fonte, and had<sup>t</sup>  
plonged<sup>t</sup> hym therin, ne had not Ogier haue been, 20  
whyche letted<sup>t</sup> hym, & yet notwythstondyng, he gaf a  
grete stroke to thadmyral, that the blood came oute of  
hys mouthe habondantly. Of thys were al abashed<sup>t</sup>  
that were present; and thenne the kyng sayd to 24  
Fyerabras: "ye be my specyal frende, Ye see that your  
fader wyl neuer be crystened, And also the oultrage that  
he hath doon to the fonte, it can not be excused but  
that he must be dede and dysmembred." 28

¶ Fyerabras requyred<sup>t</sup> hym yet of a lytel pacyence,  
and yf he wold not amende hym, that thenne he shold  
doo hys wylle.

¶ Florypes, the doughter of the Admyrall, seeyng<sup>t</sup> 32  
thys, sayd:

¶ "O Syr Emperour, wherfore <sup>2</sup>delaye ye so moche  
to put thys deuyl to deth? I reche not though

<sup>1</sup> k iij, col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> k iij, back.

he be put to deth, so that I onely may haue gye  
of bourgoyne to myn husbond, whom I haue so moche  
desyred." Fyerabras answerd: "fayr suster, ye haue  
4 grete wronge. For I ensure you, and swere by god  
whiche hath made me, that I wold that I had lost  
two of my membres, on the condycyon that he were a  
good cristen man, & were baptysed and byleued in  
8 Ihesu Cryst. ye wote wel that he is our fader whiche  
hath engendred vs; we ought to honour hym, and to  
loue hys helth. ye are wel obstynat whan ye haue of  
hym noo pyte." And after in wepyng sayd to his  
12 fader: "O moost dyer fader, I praye you to be better  
aduysed, and byleue in hym that hath fourmed you  
to hys ymage, whyche is Ihesus, god souerayn, lyke as  
themperour hath sayd; and leue mahon, which hath  
16 neither wytte ne reason, ne noo thyng is but gold &  
stones, wherof he is composed. yf ye thus do, ye shal  
do to vs grete Ioye, & of your enemyes ye shal make  
frendes."

Fierabras re-  
proves her for her  
unfilial conduct,  
(5823)

and implores his  
father to consent  
to be a Christian.  
(5823)

20 Ballant ansuerd: "fool & glouton that thou art,  
speke nomore to me therof, thou art al oute of reson!  
I shal neuer byleue in hym that deyed V. C. yere agoon,  
& acursed be he that putteth in hys byleue that he is  
24 arysen fro deth <sup>1</sup>to lyf. by mahon, my god, yf I were  
on my hors back, or I were taken, I shold angre charles,  
that fool." whan fyerabras had al vnderstonden hym,  
he said to charles that he shold do wyth hym hys  
28 playsyr, "For by good ryght he ought to deye." Anon  
themperour demanded who wold slee ballant, the vn-  
mesurable felon. Thenne Ogier was present which  
hated hym in his hert, & forthwyth he smote of hys  
32 heed, & Fyerabras pardoned hym gladly. Thenne  
after this, florypes sayd to Rolland that he shold  
accomplysshe his promesses by-twene hyr and guy of  
bourgoyne. rolland ansuerd: "ye say trouth," and

Balan calls him a  
fool, and declares  
he will never do  
so. (5843)

Charles asks who  
will kill the  
Sowdan. (5859)

Ogier volunteers,  
and smites off his  
head. (5865)

<sup>1</sup> k iij, back, col. 2.

Roland reminds  
Guy of his promise  
to marry Floripas.  
(5871)

Guy says he is  
quite ready. (5875)

Floripas is  
stripped to be  
baptised. (5879)

All are struck by  
her exceeding  
beauty,

and especially  
Charles. (5889)

She is baptised,

but her name is  
not changed.  
Guy and Floripas  
are married,

and crowned king  
and queen of  
Spain. (5905)

after sayd to guye: ¶ “Syr, ye remembre wel what  
wordes and loue hath been bytwene you & the  
curtoys Florypes: kepe your trouth and promesse to  
hyr.” Guy ansuerd that he was redy to do al that 4  
themperour wold haue hym to doo. Charles was  
contente. Thenne anone afore theym alle she was  
despoyled, and vnclad hyr for to be baptysed. She  
beyng there al naked, shewed hyr beaute, whyche was 8  
ryght whyte and wel formed, so playsaunt and amerouse  
for the formosyte of hyr persone, that enery man  
merueylled. ¶ For she had hyr eyen as clere as two  
sterres, a fayre forhede and large, hyr nose ryght wel 12  
stondyng in <sup>1</sup>the myddes of the vysage; hyr chekes  
were reed & whyt medled, hyr browes compaced as it  
had been a lytel shadowe to the colour of the vysage;  
hyr heyr shynnyng as golde, & that in soo good an ordre 16  
accumyled that it henge bynethe hyr <sup>2</sup>knees; hyr mouth  
was wel composed with an attemperat roundenes, a  
smal longe necke, and hyr sholdres fayr & wel syttyng,  
& ij pappes tofore, smale, rounde, & somewhat enhaunced 20  
lyke ij rounde apples. And so wel was she made, and  
so amerouse, that she smote the hertes of many, and  
enflammed theyr entencion wyth concupyscence, and  
specyally of charles the Emperour, how wel that he was 24  
auncyen & olde; and in the fonte whyche was ordeyned  
for the Admyral hyr fader, she was baptysed. And  
charles & Duc thyery of ardayne were her godfaders,  
wythout chaunchyng hyr name. And anone after, whan 28  
she was honourably cladde, the bysshop wedded them,  
& after, themperour comanded to brynge forth the crowne  
of ballant, and crowned wyth-al guy of bourgoyn and  
Florypes. And the bysshop sacred and blessed them. 32  
And so tho said guy was kyng of that contreye, & gaf  
a partye to Fyerabras, by condycion, that yf Fyerabras  
wold haue it, he shold holde it of guye, and all <sup>3</sup>that

<sup>1</sup> k iiij.

<sup>2</sup> orig. kues.

<sup>3</sup> k iiij, col. 2.



1euer guye shold haue, he shold holde it of charles.

After thys, the feest of the weddyng<sup>1</sup> and<sup>2</sup> espousaylles endured viij dayes. And charles abode there two

The wedding  
festivities last  
8 days. (5913)

4 monethes and two dayes, tyl that the contreye was wel assured.

¶ How Florypes delyuerd the reliques to  
themperour, and how they were proued'  
8 by myracle, & of the retournyng' of  
Charles, and of the ende of thys book.

[capitulo

xvj]

12 Charles dyd suche dylygence in aygremore and in  
the contreye adiacent, that he that wold not be  
baptysed was put to deth, and so serched oueral.

And on a sonday after masse he sente for florypes, and  
sayd to hyr: "fayr doughter, ye knowe how I haue  
16 crowned you and maad you quene of thys contree. I haue  
accomplysshed your desyre as to guye of bourgoyn,  
your husbond, And more ouer ye be baptysed, and in  
waye of sauacyon, and ye haue one of the valyauntest

Charles reminds  
Floripas of all he  
had done for her,  
(5923)

20 body that is from hens in to Affryque. ¶ And he  
and fyerabras your broder shal haue thys regyon, And  
I shal leue with hym xx M of my subgetes, to the  
ende that the paynymys be alwaye in drede; but ye  
24 haue not yet shewed <sup>2</sup>to me nothyng of the holy  
relyques that ye kepe." Florypes answerd: "Syr  
emperour, they shal be redy whan it pleseth you," and  
thenne she brouzt forth the chest in whyche they were

and calls on her  
to produce the  
sacred relics.  
(5931)

28 honestly.

¶ Themperour kneled down on bothe his knees, and  
enclnyed bothe wyth hert & body, and bad the bysshop  
to opene it, & shewe them, and so he dyd. And fyrst  
32 he shewed the precyous crowne with whyche Ihesu  
Cryst was crowned wyth, whyche was of pryckyng

Floripas brings  
him the coffer  
containing them,  
(5936)

which Turpin  
reverently opens.

<sup>1</sup> orig. ener.

<sup>2</sup> k iiij, back.

The bishop takes out the holy crown of thorns, (5950)

which remains unsupported in the air,

emitting a delightful odour. (5954)

The other relics are proved in the same way.

Charles thanks God for his mercies to him.

Turpin blesses the army with relics, and replaces them in the coffer.

Charles's glove, in which is a small piece of relic,

thornes & of Ionques of the see. and wyth grete deuocyon it was shewed & adoured. And many there wepte & wayleth the deth of our lord Ihesu Cryst, and were in grete deuocyon & contemplacyon. The bysshop, 4 which was deuoute & wyse, wold preue it, And lyfte it vp on hye in the ayer, & wythdrewe hys hond, and the crowne abode by itself in the ayer. & thenne the bysshop certefyed to the <sup>1</sup>peple that was present, that 8 it was the crowne of Ihesu cryst, which he had on his hede in the tyme of his passyon. Thenne euery man honoured it deuoutely; & it had soo grete an odour that eueryche meruaylled. and after, the bysshop took 12 the naylles by whyche god had hys handes<sup>2</sup> & feet perced, and preued them as he had proued the crowne tofore, and semblably they abode<sup>3</sup> in the ayer myraculously. And Charles, seyng al this, thanked humbly 16 God in sayeng: ¶ "O lord god eternal, whyche hast gyuen to me grace that I haue surmounted myn enemyes Infydels, and hast put & sette me in the waye, and gyuen conduyte to fynde your relyques whyche I 20 haue so longe desyred, I humbly rendre and gyue to you thankes and praysynges. For now my contrey may wel say that it shal be perpetuel honour to hit to possede and haue thys precious tresour, whan it shal be 24 conteyned therin." The bysshop blessyd alle the people there in makynge the sygne of the crosse with the said relyques, & after he sette them deuoutely ageyn in their places. And the emperour dyd do sette them 28 on a ryche cloth of golde deuoutely. And whan they were theron, the remenaunt that abode of them as smale pyeces, he took them deuoutely and put them in hys gloue; and after, he beyng in purpos to retorne in to 32 hys contreye, he threwe the gloue to a knyght, but the knyght took none hede & took it not; & whan Charles was a litel withdrawn he took hede of hys gloue, &

<sup>1</sup> orig. peyle.    <sup>2</sup> orig. haudes.    <sup>3</sup> k iij, back, col. 2.

retorned and sawe hys gloue,—in whyche the said smale pyeces of the sayd relyques were,—abode hangyng<sup>1</sup> in thayer without susteynyng of ony thyng. Thenne

remains miraculously suspended in the air

- 4<sup>1</sup> was this myracle seen euydently, and al thys was shewed to the peple, For it abode in that maner whyles they myght haue goon half a leghe. And by this they were al reconfermed to say that there was none abusyon  
8 in byleuyng<sup>1</sup> & adouryng the sayd relyques. And these thynges tofore writon in this second book ben vnderstonden in the best partye & sygnifycacion that I can or wold say, And I haue not sayd ony thyng but that  
12 I haue been wel enformed by writyng<sup>1</sup>. And as for the book ensuyng, it shal make mencion of somme bataylles, and of the ende of the barons of fraunce, of whome I haue tofore spoken al alonge.

for an hour. (6002)

- 16 ¶ Here begynneth the iij book, whyche conteyneth two partyes, by the chapytres folowyng declared<sup>1</sup>.

The contents of the third book.

- 20 ¶ The fyrst partye of the thyrd book conteyneth xiiij chapytres, and speketh of the warres made in spayne, and of two meruayllous geauntes.

- 24 ¶ How Saynt Iames appyered to Charles, and how, by the moyen and the conduyte of the sterres, he went in to galyce, & what cytees he subdued : ca. j

- 28<sup>2</sup> Charles, the noble Emperour, after he had taken moche payne for to mayntene the name of god for tenhaunce the crysten fayth, and to brynge al the world in one trewe fayth and byleue, & that he had goten many contrees, he purposed neuer more to

Charles wishes after all his labours to rest from fighting,

<sup>1</sup> k v.

<sup>2</sup> k v, col 2.

and to devote  
himself to  
religion;

but in a vision he  
sees a line of  
stars,

pointing to  
Galicia.

A man appears to  
him,

who declares he  
is St. James,  
the Apostle of  
Galicia,

and reproaches  
him for not  
recovering that  
country from the  
Saracens,

fyght ne to make bataylle, but to reste & lede forth a  
contemplatyf lyf, in thankyng<sup>t</sup> his maker of þ<sup>e</sup> grace  
that he had gyuen to hym in surmountyng<sup>t</sup> hys enemyes.  
Neuertheles on a nyght it happed<sup>t</sup> hym that he byhelde 4  
the heuen, & sawe a quantyte of sterres in ordre tendyng<sup>t</sup>  
alle the nyght one waye and one path. And they  
began at the see of fryselond<sup>e</sup> in passyng<sup>t</sup> bytwene  
alemayn and ytalye, bytwene Fraunce and guyanne, 8  
And passed ryght the sayd sterres by gascoyne, bascle,  
Nauarre, and espayne, whyche contrees he had by hys  
puyssaunce and contynuel payne conquerd and maad<sup>t</sup>  
crysten. And after, the ende of the sayd sterres thus 12  
goyng in ordre, cam vnto galyce, where-as the body of  
the holy appostle was, he nat knowyng<sup>t</sup> the propre  
place. Euery nyght charles byhelde the waye of the  
sayd sterres, and thought moche contynuelly what thys 16  
myght be, & that it was not wythoute cause. ¶ In  
one nyght emonge the other that <sup>1</sup>charles thought on  
thys waye, a man appyered<sup>t</sup> to hym in vysyon, whyche  
was so fayr, so playsaunte, and so shynyng<sup>t</sup>, that it was 20  
meruaylle; whyche sayd<sup>t</sup> to hym: "what doost thou,  
my fayre sone?" Charles, beyng<sup>t</sup> al rauysshed, answerd<sup>t</sup>:  
"who arte thou, fayr syr?" That other answerd: "I  
am Iames, the appostle of Ihesu Cryst, the sone of 24  
Zebedee, and propre broder of saynt Iohan the euan-  
gelyst, & am he whom godd chaas to preche the crysten  
fayth and hys doctryne in the londe of galyce and of  
galylee, by hys holy grace, and he whom herode dyd 28  
put to deth by swerde; and my body abydeyth emonge  
the sarasyns, whyche haue entreated<sup>t</sup> it vylaynsly, &  
lyeth in a place whyche is not knowen. But I mer-  
ueylle that thou hast not conquerd my londe, Seen and 32  
consyderyd<sup>t</sup> that thou hast conquerd so many regyones,  
townes, & cytees in the world. wherefore I do the to  
wete, that lyke as godd hath chosen the, and made the



superyor in worldly puyssaunce aboue al other kynges  
 & worldly prynces, in lyke wyse emong al them that  
 lyuen thou art chosen of god, after the conduyte of  
 4 the sterres, to delyuer my londe fro the hande of the  
 mescreaunt sarasyns and enemyes of crystendom. ¶ And  
 to thende that thou sholdest knowe in to what <sup>1</sup>place  
 thou sholdest goo, thou hast seen on the heuen the  
 8 sterres by dyuyn magnyfycence. And for to obteyne  
 the more Ioye & gretter glorie in heuen, by haultayn  
 and grete puyssaunce, thou shalt surmounte thyn ene-  
 myes, & in that same place thou sha[<sup>l</sup>]t make and doo  
 12 edefye a chyrche in my name, to the whiche shal come  
 the crysten peple of al regyons, for to gete helthe &  
 pardon of their synnes. After that thou shalt haue  
 vysited my sepulture, and haue made the waye sure, and  
 16 ordeyned crysten men for to kepe and conserue the  
 place, it shal be a memoyre perpetuell." Thus in thys  
 maner appyered thre tymes saynt Iames to the emperour  
 Charles. After these vysyons and certyfycacyons of  
 20 god, he called and assembled hys subgettes, whome he  
 dyd do put a grete multytude in good poynte, & after  
 took hys waye & drewe toward the contre where the  
 sterres had shewed the waye aforesayd, and came fyrst  
 24 in to spayne: and the fyrst cyte that was rebelle to hym  
 was panpylonne, whyche was ryght stronge of murayl  
 and towres, & garnysshed wyth sarasyns. and he  
 abode tofore it thre monethes, or he coude fynde maner  
 28 to confounde it. Thenne Charles knewe not what to  
 do, but to praye god and saynt Iames, for whom he  
 went, <sup>2</sup>that in the vertu of hys name he myght take  
 that cyte, and sayd in thys manere: "Fayr lord god,  
 32 my maker, helpe me that am comen in to thys contree  
 for to enhaunce the crysten fayth, for to establysshe  
 and mayntene thyn holy name. And also thou holy  
 saynt Iames, by the reuelacyon of whome I am in thys

as God wishes  
him.

He promises  
him success,  
and bids him raise  
a church to his  
name,

as a perpetual  
memorial.

After this vision  
had appeared  
thrice,

Charles starts  
with his army for  
Galicia.

He besieges Pam-  
peluna in vain for  
three months,

and then invokes  
in prayer the help  
of St. James.

<sup>1</sup> k v, back, col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> k vj.

Iourneye, I requyre the that I may subdewe thys cytee, & entre therin, for to shiewe the mysbyleuyng<sup>1</sup> peple the cause of theyr errour, to thende that this begynnynge may the better determyne the ende of myn entencyon." 4

Immediately after his prayer the walls of the city fall down.

Assone as Charles had<sup>1</sup> fynysshed<sup>1</sup> his oryson, the walles of the cyte, whyche were of marble merueillously strong, ouerthrew to the erthe, & fyl alle in pyeces; and<sup>1</sup> after, charles and his hoost entred<sup>1</sup> in to the cyte; 8 & he that wold<sup>1</sup> be baptysed<sup>1</sup> & byleue in god<sup>1</sup> wythoute fyctyon, was saued<sup>1</sup> and put a-parte, and who sayd<sup>1</sup> the contrarye, was forthwyth put to deth. Al the people of that contre, whan they knewe of these tydynges & 12 meruayllous operacyons of this cyte, torned<sup>1</sup> in to Ruynes at the symple postulacyon of charles, without contradycyon came and<sup>1</sup> yelded<sup>1</sup> them to the mercy of kyng<sup>1</sup> charles. And<sup>1</sup> thus many were baptysed<sup>1</sup>, and chyrches 16 were ordeyned<sup>1</sup>, and<sup>1</sup> al the contreye reducd<sup>1</sup> to certeyn trybute vnder the fydelite of the emperour charles, and<sup>1</sup> brought theyr trybutes fro the cytees wythoute any other gaynsayeng in sygne of seynourye. 20

All the country yields to Charles, who causes the people to be baptised, and builds churches.

¶ Of the cytees gotten in espayne by charles, & how somme were by hym destroyed'.  
[capitulo ij.]

Charles arrives at the tomb of St. James,

A fter that charles had<sup>1</sup> the domynacyon quasi in al 24 espayne, he came to the sepulture of Saynt Iames, where he dyd<sup>1</sup> hys deuocyon, and<sup>1</sup> made deuoutely hys prayers; & after came to a place in p<sup>e</sup> lond which was so ferre, that he myght goo no farther, and<sup>1</sup> there fyxed<sup>1</sup> 28 & pyght hys spere, and that place was called<sup>1</sup> petronium; & thanked<sup>1</sup> god and saynt Iames, that by theyr suffraunce he was comen so ferre wythoute any contradycyon surely vnto suche place that he myght passe 32 no farther. And<sup>1</sup> in that londe who that wold<sup>1</sup> byleue

at a place called Petronium.

<sup>1</sup> k vj, col. 2.

in god, tharchebysshop Turpyn baptysed them; & who  
 that wold not, he was slayn, or put in pryson. And after  
 Charles wente from one see to that other, and thenne he  
 4 gate in galyce xiiij cytees, emonge whome compostelle  
 was thenne the leste. In espayne he had xvj grete  
 townes & stronge, emonge whome <sup>1</sup>was onsea, in which  
 were wont to be x stronge toures, & a toun named  
 8 petrosse, in whyche was made the fynest syluer that  
 had thenne cours. Also another cyte named attentyua,  
 where as the body of saynt Torquete rested, whyche was  
 dysciple of saynt Iames, and there vpon the sepulture  
 12 was an olyue tree, [whyche dyd] florysshe & bere rype  
 fruyt a certayn day of may euery yere withoute fayllyng.

He captures 13  
 cities in Galicia,  
 and 16 in Spain,

Alle the contreye of spayne that tyme was subgette  
 to charles, That is to wete, the londe of alandaluf, the  
 16 londe of perdoures, the londe of castellans, the londe of  
 maures, The londe of portyngale, the londe of sarasyns,  
 the londe of nauarre, the londe of Alemans, The londe  
 of byscoys, the londe of bascles, the londe of palargyens,  
 20 and somme of theyr cytees taken by warre, subtyl and  
 mortal, And somme wythoute warre. he coude not  
 wyne the grete towne of Lucerne, tyl at the laste he  
 layed syege tofore it by the space of foure monethes.  
 24 and it stode in a grene valeye. And after, whan he saw  
 that they wold not yelde them, & that he coude not  
 wyne them, he made hys prayer vnto god, and to  
 saynt Iames, that he myght be vycorious, seen that he  
 28 had nomore to termyne in that contreye, but that cyte  
 onely. hys oryson was herde, soo that <sup>2</sup>the walles fyl  
 down to the erthe, and was put to destructyon in suche  
 wyse, þat neuer man dwelled therein after, and after it

the whole of  
 which was subject  
 to him.

He besieges  
 Lucerne for 4  
 months,

but in vain,

and then prays to  
 St. James,

when the walls  
 fall down, and  
 the city is taken,

and turned into a  
 lake containing  
 black fishes.

32 sanke, and therein was an abysme or swolowe of water,  
 In whyche were founden after, fysshes alle blacke.  
 Emonge the other cytees that he took, there were iiij  
 that dyd hym moche payne, or he myght gete them, &

<sup>1</sup> k vj, back.

<sup>2</sup> k vj, back, col. 2.

therefore he gaf them the maladyctyon of god, and they were cursd, in suche wyse that vnto thys day there is in them none habytacion; & the sayd cytees been named lucerne, ventose, caperce, & adame.

4

¶ Of the grete ydole that was in a cyte, whyche coude not be smyton down, and of the condycyons and' sygnes therof: ca.

iij 8

**W**Han Charles had doon in spayne & other places, wyth the Inhabytauntes of it at hys wylle, Alle thyddolles and other symylacres that he fonde, he dyd do destroye and put to confusyon. But in the londe of 12 Alandaluf, in a cyte called Salancadys, in arabyque, was<sup>1</sup> the place of a grete god, as the sarasyns sayd. That ydolle was made of the honde of Machomete in the tyme that he lyued, & was named Mahomet<sup>2</sup> in 16 thonour of hym: and by arte magyke and dyabolyke he closed therin a legyon of deuylls, for to kepe it and make sygnes for to abuse the peple. and thys ydolle was kepte so by deuylls, that noo persone luyng coude by 20 strengthe destroye it, ne put it down. In suche wyse that yf ony crysten man came nyghe for to see it, or to coniure it, or to destroye, Assone as he began to coniure and preche, anon he was perysshed & destroyed. And 24 the sarasyns that came for to preche, adoure, make sacrefyse, or doo obeyssaunce therto, were wythout peryl; and yf by aduenture, a byrde fleyng came & rested vpon it, Incontynent it was deed. The stone 28 vpon whyche thyddolle was sette was meruayllously made. It was a stone of the see, wrought of sarasyns, and grauen subtylly of grete and ryche facyon, the whyche was enhaunced vpryght, not without grete 32 crafte & connyng. toward the erth it was meruayllously

Charles destroys  
all the idols;

but at Salancadys  
was a great idol,

kept so by devils  
that none could  
destroy it,

and which no  
Christian dare  
approach.

It stood on a  
large stone,  
richly carved,

<sup>1</sup> orig. and was.

<sup>2</sup> k vij.



- grete, & alway vpward it was lasse; and that stone was  
 so hye as a crowe myght flee: vpon whyche stone was  
 thydolle sette, whyche was of fyn yuorie, after thas-  
 4 semblaunce of a man stondyng vpryght on his feet, &  
 had hys face turned to the south, & helde in his ryght  
 honde a grete keye, & the sarasyns were certefyed <sup>1</sup>for  
 trouthe that whan a kyng of fraunce shold be borne,  
 8 & in strengthe to subdue the contreye of spayne, and  
 brynge it in to crysten fayth, the ymage shold lete falle  
 the keye, whych shold be a sygne þat the kyng of  
 fraunce shold conquere them. So thenne in the tyme  
 12 that the noble kyng charles regned in spayne, for to  
 brynge it to the crysten faith, the ydolle lete the keye  
 falle down to the grounde. And whan the sarasyns  
 sawe that, They hydde theyr tresours, as golde, syluer,  
 16 and precyous stoones, in therth, by cause the crysten  
 men shold no thyng fynde therof, & they al wente in  
 to another regyon, and durst not abyde the comyng of  
 the kyng.

and was of fine  
ivory,

and held in his  
hand a key,

which was to fall  
when a king  
should come to  
subdue the  
country.

On the approach  
of Charles the  
key falls.

- 20 ¶ Of the chyrche of saynt Iames in galyce,  
 and of dyuers other whyche Kyng' Charles  
 founded: capitulo iiij

- 24 **C**harles beyng in galyce had Innumerable quantyte  
 of gold, of syluer, and of precyous stones, of many  
 kynges, prynces, and other lordes, and of trybutes of  
 cytees that was gyuen to hym as lord.

Charles, having  
an immense  
quantity of gold  
and silver,

- ¶ Also he had moche of the tresour that he conquerd  
 28 of the townes and contreyes of Spayne <sup>2</sup>aforsayd.  
 Thenne he, seyng the grete habundaunce of good, dyd  
 do compose and make a chirche of Saynt Iames, in the  
 place where-as he had founde the body of hym. and  
 32 he abode there the space of thre yere wythout departyng,  
 and in that same place he ordeyned a bysshop, and

builds a church  
to St. James,

and ordains a  
bishop

<sup>1</sup> k vij, col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> k vij, back.

and three canons.

He endows the church,

and supplies vestments and ornaments.

Another church he builds at Acon to Our Lady,

and four to St. James,

besides abbeyes and monasteries.

founded there chanonnes regular, vnder the rule of saynt Ysodore the confessour; & bought & ordeyned for them rentes & trybutes suffycient, and gaf to them synguler seynourye. He furnysshed the chyrche wyth 4 belles, vessellys of golde and syluer, adournements of precyous clothes, & al thynges necessarye & apperteynyng<sup>i</sup> in a chyrche pontyfical. also of bokes, vestymentes, chalyces, & other holy escriptures. And of 8 the resydue of gold and syluer, that he brought oute of spayne, he dyd doo edefye these chyrches folowyng<sup>i</sup>. ¶ Fyrst, at Acon, in almayne, where as he is buryed, he dyd doo make a chirche of our lady; and though it 12 be lytel, yet is it moche rychely made. The chyrche of Saynt Iames in the toun of vyterbe; also the chyrche of saynt Iames in the cytee of Tholouse: The chyrche of Saynt Iames in gascoyne; also the chirche of saynt 16 Iames in parys, bytwene the sayne & the mounste of martres. & aboute the chyrches aforesayd, he founded, rented, & releued many & dyuers chyrches, monasteryes, & other abbeyes in the world, in many and dyuers 20 places.

¶ How, after that Aygolant the geaunt had taken spayne & put to deth the crysten people, Charles recouerd' it, and' other 24 maters: capitulo v

After Charles's return to France,

Aigolant, an African giant, reconquers Spain,

and puts the Christians to death.

AFTER that charles was returned in to Fraunce, a kyng<sup>i</sup> sarasyn of affryque, named aygolant, wyth grete puyssaunce came in to spayne, and remysed it in 28 hys subgectyon. And the crysten which charles had left there, as many as he myght gete, he put to deth, and the other fledde. And in shorte tyme the tydynges came vnto kyng Charles, wherof he was moche abasshed 32 & angry, bycause it was shewed to hym so pyetously.

wherefore Incontynent he assembled a grete hoost, & wyth a grete multytude of fyghtyng men he went thyder wythout taryeng. And he made the conduytour  
 4 of them al Myllon of angleres, the fader of Rolland, & they cessed not tyl that they had tydynges where Aygolant the geaunt was, whyche had doon thys feat. whan charles knewe where Aygolant was lodged, <sup>1</sup>and  
 8 semblably aygolant knewe where Charles was, Anone the geaunt sente to charles that he wold delyuer bataylle suche as he wold. That is to wete that Charles shold sende to hym xx of hys men to fyght ageynst xx of hys  
 12 sarasyns, or xl ayenst xl, or an C ayenst C, or a thousand ayenst a thousand, or two men ayenst two, or one man ayenst one man onely. kyng Charles, seyng thenten-  
 cyon of aygolant, for thonour of noblesse he wold not  
 16 refuse hys demaunde, but sent to hym an C knyghtes in grete poynte, and the geaunte sente another hondred ayenst the crysten men, but anone the sarasyns were vanquysshed & put to deth, and after were sente by  
 20 aygolant two hondred sarasyns ayenst two hondred crysten men, whyche Sarasyns were anone wythoute grete resystence put to deth and slayn. Aygolant was not contente, ne wold not leue herby, but sente two  
 24 thousand sarasyns ayenst ij M crysten men, and whan they were in batayll, many of þ<sup>e</sup> sarasyns were slayn, and the other put to flyght for to saue them self. The thyrð day after, Aygolant maad certeyn experyences,  
 28 and knewe that yf Charles made warre to hym he shold haue grete losse, and sent to Charles to wete yf he wold make playne warre. Charles <sup>2</sup>was contente, and there vpon they made redy theyr peple, and  
 32 specyally charles, for hys subgettes had grete affectyon to goo to bataylle without ony fere of deth. And also somme of the crysten men, the day tofore the bataylle, dyd do amende and araye theyr harnois, and sette

Milo, Roland's father, is put in command.

Aigolant challenges any number of Charles's men to fight against an equal number of his.

Charles sends 100 knights,

who slay the 100 Saracens;

and after 200, who also kill their opponents.

Aigolant sends 2000 Saracens,

but they also are defeated.

Both sides prepare for a general engagement.

<sup>1</sup> k viij.

<sup>2</sup> k viij, col. 2.

By a miracle it is shown which of the French soldiers should be killed in the battle.

From their spears springs up a great wood.

Milo and 50 knights are slain,

but the Saracens are put to flight.

Reinforcements come to Charles,

whereupon Aigolant flies to Africa,

Charles returns to France,

theyr tentes nygh a ryuer named ceye, and pyght there  
 theyr speres, euen in the place where as the bodyes of  
 saynt faconde and saynt premytyf rested, where after  
 was made a chyrche deuoutely foundeð, and also a 4  
 stronge cyte by the moyen of the sayd Charles, and in  
 the place where the speres were pyght, our lord shewed  
 grete myracle. For of them that shold deye there and  
 be gloryfyed marters of god & crowned in heuen, theyr 8  
 speres on þe morn were founden al grene, floressed  
 and leued, whyche was a preccedent sygne that they  
 whyche shold deye shold haue the Ioye in heuen.  
 ¶ Eche man took his owne, and cutte of the bowes & 12  
 leues, wyth whyche the leues were planted and vnder-  
 rotated, wherof in a lytel whyle after grewe a grete wode,  
 whyche stondeth there yet. It was grete meruayle of  
 the Ioye that the horses made, whyche dyð theyr 16  
 deuoyrs as wel as the men after theyr qualyte, whyche  
 was a grete token. Thenne L valyaunt<sup>1</sup> crysten men  
 were slayne, And emonge the other was slayne duc  
 Myllon, fader to Roulland. Also that same day the 20  
 hors of charles was slayn vnder hym, & whan he was a  
 fote he maad grete murdre wyth hys swerde Ioyouse,  
 and dyð so moche that the sarasyns, dredyng<sup>1</sup> the  
 euenyng<sup>1</sup>, fledde & wythdrewe them in to place of 24  
 surete. And as it was the wylle of our lord, the next  
 day after came to Charles in to his helpe iiij marquyse  
 of ytalye, accompanied wyth iiij M stronge fyghtyng<sup>1</sup>  
 men & chosen. wherfore Aygolant, assone as he knewe 28  
 of theyr comyng<sup>1</sup>, he fled and wythdrewe hym ouer the  
 see toward hys contree. but they myȝt not for hast bere  
 with them al theyr tresours, wherfor fraunce was  
 enryched meruayllously aboue alle other contrees. 32

¶ And whan charles sawe his departyng<sup>1</sup> he came  
 wyth al hys rychesse in to fraunce, and thenne, duryng  
 seuen yere, he dyð do ordeyne the seruyce and offyce of

<sup>1</sup> k viij, back.



the chyrche by preestes & clerkes, and the festes of sayntes of all the yere ; and grete vertu & meruayllous effect was comprysed in thys man. For whan it was  
 4 not warre for to mynysshe thynfydellys and encrease the crysten fayth, For tenhaunce the name of god he made the offyces and legendes of holy sayntes, & dyd <sup>1</sup> reduce in to mynde and remembraunce the passyons of holy  
 8 marters in establysshynge theyr feestes, to thende that we shold ensyewe them, and to eschewe al euyl. And the magnytude of thys kyng was wel preued by sygnes seen on the heuen. For in the same yere the mone  
 12 derked thre tymes, and the sonne ones, and companyes of people were seen meruayllous, whyche shewed that thys Charles was of grete magnytude, that is to wete bytwene heuen and erthe.

and occupys himself in drawing up rules and services for the Church.

This year were three eclipses of the moon, and one of the sun.

16 ¶ How Aygolant sent to charles that he shold come to hym trustely for to make Iust warre, and how Charles in habyte dys-symyled spake to hym, and of other  
 20 maters : capitulo vj

**A**S I haue sayd the kyn[ge,] Aygolant the geaunte, fledde in to hys contreye, whan socours cam to Charles of foure marques. he slepte not vpon his  
 24 purpoos, but maad grete dylygence for to assemble hys people, whyche were sarasyns Innumerable, for he assembled mores, Moabytes, Ethiopiens, Affrycans, and percyens ; he brought wyth hym also the kyng of  
 28 arabye, the kyng of barbarye, the kyng of malroste, the kyng of <sup>2</sup> maioryke, the kyng of meques, the kyng of cybylle, & the kyng of Cordube, the whych cam with peple wythout nombre, certain, in to gascoyne, in to a  
 32 stronge cyte named Agenne, and took it. And after sent to Charles that he shold come to hym peasybly &

Aigolant collects an immense army,

and again invades Gascony, and captures the city of Agenne.

<sup>1</sup> k viij, back, col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> l j.

Aigolant invites  
Charles to visit  
him unattended.

Charles sets out  
with 2000 knights,

whom he leaves,  
except 40,  
near the city.

He himself, in  
disguise and with  
only one attend-  
ant, enters the  
city,

and presents him-  
self as a messenger  
from Charles,

to say he had  
come with only  
40 attendants.

Aigolant replies  
that he will go  
and meet the  
French king.

trustyly, with a fewe peple, promysyng<sup>1</sup> to hym for to  
gyue to hym ix hors laden with gold, syluer, and pre-  
cious stones, yf he wold thus come at hys desyre. this  
paynym shewed to hym this by cause he wold knowe 4  
his persone, for hys strengthe & puyssaunce knewe he  
wel by experyence, and also to thende whan he knewe  
hym that he myght in the warre flee hym. whan kyng<sup>1</sup>  
charles knewe this mandement he gadred not grete 8  
peple, but he came onely wyth ij M knyghtes of honour  
and of grete strength. And whan he was foure myle  
nygh the cyte, where Aigolant and al the kynges tofore  
named were, he left his peple secretly, & came vnto a 12  
mountayne nygh the cyte, accompanyed<sup>1</sup> wyth xl  
knyghtes onely. And fro thys place they saw the cyte,  
by cause to wete yf the multytude of peple were de-  
parted<sup>1</sup>, soo that he shold<sup>1</sup> not be deceyued. Neuertheles 16  
vpon thys montayne he lefte hys peple secretly, and  
took of hys clothes, and cladde hym in the guyse of a  
messenger, and<sup>1</sup> took one knyght onely with hym,  
whyche bare his spere & swerde and bocler vnder hys 20  
mantel, and soo came in to the cyte, and anone he was  
brought tofore aygolaunt the geaunt. And whan he was  
tofore hym he sayd<sup>1</sup> in thys manere: "Charles the kyng  
hath sente vs vnto the, and leteth the wete by vs that 24  
he is comen lyke as thou hast comanded<sup>1</sup>, accompanyed<sup>1</sup>  
wyth fourty knyghtes onely, for to do that he ought to  
doo. Now thenne come to hym wyth xl knyghtes,  
withoute moo, yf thou wylt accomplysshe and holde 28  
that thou hast promysed<sup>1</sup>." Aigolant sayd<sup>1</sup> to hem that  
they shold<sup>1</sup> retorne to charles, and that they shold say  
to hym that he departe not, but abyde hym there, and  
he wold come and vysyte hym. After this that charles 32  
had<sup>1</sup> knowen the geaunt, and after vysyted<sup>1</sup> the towne,  
for to knowe the feblest parte for to take and conquer  
it whan he shold come ageyn, & sawe al the kynges.

<sup>1</sup> l j, col. 2.

forsayd & their puyssaunces, he after retorned to his  
 peple whiche he had left vpon the montayne, & after  
 came to hys ij M knyghtes. & anone after aygolant,  
 4 accompanied wyth vij M knyghtes, came after them  
 withoute taryeng. But charles took hede whan he cam  
 that there were many moo paynymys than crysten men,  
 and <sup>1</sup>wythout lenger taryeng charles & his peple de-  
 8 parted, and retorned in to fraunce wythout hauyng  
 other delyberacyon.

Charles, having  
 spied out all the  
 city, departs.

Aigolant, with  
 7000 men, follows  
 him,

but Charles  
 escapes.

¶ How Charles, accompanied with moche  
 peple, retorned in to the place aforesayd &  
 12 toke the cyte of agenne, & other maters :  
 [capitulo] vij

**A**fter that charles was retorned in to fraunce he  
 assembled moche peple, & after came to the cyte  
 16 of agenne, & assyged it there by grete facyon,  
 the space of vij monethes. Aygolant was therin &  
 many sarasyns, & the crysten men had made fortressis  
 & castelles of tree tofore this cyte for to greue it. Whan  
 20 Aygolant & the grete lordes of his compaigne sawe þat  
 they myght not endure, they maad hooles & caues vnder  
 therth for tescapen oute secretly : in that maner they came  
 out of the cyte, & passed ouer a ryuer, which ranne by  
 24 the cyte, named gorouna, and so they saued them self.  
 The next day after, whan there was noo grete resyst-  
 ence made to the crysten men, Charles wyth grete  
 tryumphe & puyssaunce entred in to the cyte, & put to  
 28 deth x M sarasyns that he there fonde. The other,  
 seyng that, put them to flyght by the ryuer. Aygolant  
<sup>2</sup>was in another stronge toun, & whan charles knewe it  
 he came thider & assaylled it, & sente to hym to delyuer  
 32 ouer the cyte. aygolant ansuerd that he wold not so  
 doo, but by a moyen that was, that they shold make a

Charles assembles  
 a large army,

and lays siege to  
 Agenne, which he  
 surrounds.

Aigolant and his  
 lords escape by  
 mines.

Charles enters the  
 city,

and after besieges  
 the city to which  
 Aigolant had fled.

<sup>1</sup> 1 j, back.

<sup>2</sup> 1 j, back, col. 2.

Aigolant proposes  
a general battle.

Those of the  
Christians who  
were destined to  
die are again  
pointed out by a  
miracle.

The Saracens are  
utterly defeated.

batayll, & he that shold wynne the bataylle shold be  
lord of þe toun, & so they assygned the day of the  
bataylle. and nygh to that place, bytwene the castel  
thalabout & a ryuer called carantha, somme of the 4  
crysten men planted theyr speres in the grounde, espe-  
cially they that on the morn shold deye, & obteyne the  
crowne of glorye as marters of god. and on the morne  
they fonde their speres al grene & myraculously leued, 8  
& ful of bowes, wherof the cristen men were moche  
loyous of this myracle, and raught not for to deye for  
þe crysten fayth in mayntenynge the name of god.  
After that they cutte of theyr speres and wente to 12  
bataylle, and put many sarasyns to deth. But in  
thende were slayn and martred, of crysten men moo  
than iiij M whyche were saued in heuen; & that tyme  
the hors that Charles rode on was slayn vnder hym, 16  
and at that bataylle were slayn by the sayd Charles the  
kyng of Agabye [&] the kyng of bugye, merueyllous  
myghty sarasyns.

<sup>1</sup> ¶ Of the vertuous operacions that charles 20  
made whan he was retorned in to fraunce,  
& what barons he had in hys companye, &  
of theyr puyssaunce: ca. viij

After his defeat  
Aigolant flies to  
Pampeluna.

Charles returns  
to France for  
reinforcements.

**T**He bataylle toforesayd made, Aigolant fledde and 24  
came in to panpylone, and sent to kyng charles  
that he shold abyde hym for to gyue hym bataylle  
more ample & large. Whan charles knewe hys desyre  
he retourned in to fraunce for to haue helpe of hys 28  
peple, and made an open maundement thorough out al  
Fraunce that al maner peple that were of euyl condycyon  
and in bondage, that they that were present, and theyr  
successours, shold be free, & there vpon tabellyons shold 32  
be delyuerd accordyng to the lawe, that wold goo with



hym ayenst the myscreauntes. Also alle prysonners  
 that were in fraunce, he delyuerd them al out of  
 pryson, & to al them that shold haue ben delyuerd to  
 4 deth for felonnye, murdre, or treason, he pardonned  
 them & gaf to them theyr lyf; and to al poure peple  
 that had not wherby to lyue, he gaf to them good  
 largely, & them that were euyl cladd, he clothed them  
 8 after theyr degree. alle them that were at debate he  
 peased them & accorded; Alle them þat were dys-  
 herytet & put oute from theyr lyuelode he restored al  
 to them; Alle þe peple<sup>1</sup> that myght bere armes he  
 12 armed them. The valyaunt squyers of theyr persones  
 he made knyghtes, & al them that were in hys Indyg-  
 nacyon & pryued [f]ro hys loue, & bannysshed for the  
 loue of god, he was constraynede to pardonne them, &  
 16 made pees with euery man. and thenne he was four-  
 nysshed of moo than an C thousand men wel fyghtyng,  
 wythoute them that were a-fote, whyche were Innume-  
 rable. And for to gyue courage to the prynces of Charles,  
 20 Turpyn sayd in this maner: "I, Turpyn, archebyssshop  
 of Raynes by the grace of god, shal gyue good courage  
 to crysten people, and shal slee the Infydels, sarasyns,  
 with myn owne handes." ¶ Wyth Charles was  
 24 Roulland of Cenonye, neuewe of Charles, sone of hys  
 syster, dame Berthe, & of Duke Myllon, wyth foure  
 thousand fyghtyng men; Olyuer, duc of genes, sone of  
 duc Reyner, with iij M fyghtyng men: Aristagius,  
 28 kyng of brytayne, wyth vij thousand fyghtyng men;  
 Not wythstondyng that in brytayne was another kyng,  
 Eugelius, whyche was duke of Guyan, whome Au-  
 gustus Cezar had ordeyned, wyth the byturyciens, the  
 32 monyques, pictauyns, scauctonens, and Elogysmes,  
 cytees with their prouynces vnder guyan: & he cam  
 with iij M horsmen <sup>2</sup>good fyghtars; Garferus, kyng  
 of bordeloy, with iiij M men; Salamon, fellow of estok;

He frees all  
 prisoners,

clothes the poor,

restores the  
 disinherited,

and raises the  
 esquires to  
 knighthood,  
 on condition of  
 joining his army.

Turpin assures  
 him of success.

With Charles are  
 Roland, Oliver,  
 and Aristagius  
 with 14,000 men.

Besides were men  
 from Guienne,

<sup>1</sup> 1 ij, col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> 1 ij, back.

Burgundy, Lorraine, and other provinces.

bawdewyn, brother of Rolland; Naymes, duc of bauiere, wyth x M fyghtyng<sup>i</sup> men; Hoel of Nautes, & Lambert, prynce of bourgoyn, wyth ij M fyghtars; Sanson, duc of bourgoyn, with x M; Garyn, duc of 4 lorayne, & many other; and Charles had<sup>e</sup> of his owne contre moo than fyfty M men. The excercyte of Charles, the noble emperour, and ryght puyssaunt kyng<sup>i</sup> of Fraunce, was so grete and<sup>e</sup> so ample that it helde 8 two iourneyes longe, & in brede half o iourneye & more; In suche wyse that of the bruyt that was made for the grete multytude of the frensshemen, it was herde two myle ferre and more. 12

¶ Of the tryews of Charles & of Aygolant, and of the deth of hys peple, & wherfore aygolant was not baptysed<sup>e</sup>: capitulo ix

Aigolant, frightened at the numbers of the French, proposes a conference.

**T**He whyl that charles was a yonge chylde he lerned<sup>e</sup> at Toulete the langage of sarasyns, and spake it whan he wold<sup>e</sup>. Aygolant, thys geaunt and<sup>e</sup> grete Lord<sup>e</sup>, coude not abstayne hym, and cam nygh vnto crystyente, and sente to Charles to come to 20 hym vnto Pampylone, and tryews was<sup>1</sup> maad<sup>e</sup> bytwene them. For Aygolant consyderyd<sup>e</sup> the multytude of hys people and<sup>e</sup> the puyssaunces of their persones. For by cours of nature hym semed<sup>e</sup> he shold<sup>e</sup> surmounte the 24 crysten peple, but he thought that the god<sup>e</sup> of crysten people was more certayn and<sup>e</sup> trewe than the god of the paynymys; but er he wold declyne fro the worshyppynge of hys goddes, he had<sup>e</sup> desyre to assaye yet ones the nombre 28 of paynymys ayenst the nombre of crysten men. And he was contente to make a pacte and<sup>e</sup> couenaunt wyth charles, that he that shold<sup>e</sup> obteyne the vycctorye vpon others peple, that his god were holden and<sup>e</sup> worshypped<sup>e</sup>, 32 And that the god<sup>e</sup> of hym that shold<sup>e</sup> lose the bataylle

<sup>1</sup> 1 ij, back, col. 2.

shold be of noo valure, renyed, and reputed for nought.  
 And vpon thys couenaunte were sente twenty crysten  
 knyghtes ayenst xx knyghtes paynyms. And anone  
 4 as they were assembled and medled to-gyder, the twenty  
 sarasyns were slayn. And after were sente fourty ayenst  
 fourty, And anone the sarasyns were slayn and vayn-  
 quysshed. And after he sent an C. ayenst an C., but  
 8 they were not slayne, but fledde. Aygolant thougt he  
 wold do better, and sent ij hondred ayenst ij C., and  
 anone the sarasyns were ouercomen & slayn. <sup>1¶</sup> Thys  
 geaunt was euyl contente of the destructyon of hys  
 12 peple, and for to make a grete descomfyte, he sente a  
 thousand sarasyns ayenst a M cristen men, and wyth-  
 oute makynge grete rebellyon, the sarasyns were anone  
 slayn and put to deth. Thenne the kyng Aygolant, by  
 16 experyence for-made, afermed the fayth & the lawe of  
 crysten peple to be better, more sure, & more certeyn  
 than the lawe of the paynyms and sarasyns, and thus he  
 was enclyned to the crysten fayth, & dysposed hym to  
 20 receyue baptym on the morne without fayntyse; and  
 here vpon he demanded tryews and surete for to goo &  
 come to Charles, & he graunted it to hym wyth good  
 hert. and thus atte houre of tyerce, whan charles was  
 24 at dyner, Aygolant had entencyon to see charles and  
 hys maner at mete, for to knowe hys astate, yf it were  
 vayllorous and soo grete as it was in armes and in  
 bataylles. And also he came pryncypally for to be  
 28 baptysed, and he sawe Charles at hys table with grete  
 magnyfycence, and after behelde the ordre of hys peple  
 and sawe that somme were in habyte of knyghtes and  
 grete prynces, Other in habyte of channons & monkes;  
 32 & asked so that he was certefyed of euery ordre, and  
 the cause of theyr estate, and after <sup>2</sup>that he sawe  
 in a parte of y<sup>e</sup> halle syttyng on the grounde, xiiij  
 poure persones, which dynd & ete as oþer dyd. for

20 Christians  
engage as many  
Saracens, and  
slay them;

and after 40 over-  
come 40 Saracens;

and finally 1000  
Christians slay  
1000 Saracens.

Aigolant is con-  
vinced, and agrees  
to receive baptism.

He asks to see  
Charles at meat  
with his lords.

He sees 13 poor  
men, sitting on  
the ground at  
dinner,

<sup>1</sup> 1 iij.

<sup>2</sup> 1 iij, col. 2.

charles of custom wold not take his repaste tyl he  
 had xij poure men in the worschypp of our lord and  
 of his xij appostles, & he toke hede how these poure  
 men satte on the grounde without towayl in ryght poure 4  
 and asks who and habyte, & dyned al soroufully, & he demaunded what  
 what they are. people they were. Charles ansuerd & sayd: "they be  
 Charles tells him goddes peple and messagers of our lord Ihesu cryst,  
 they are main- whome I susteyne in thonour of hym & his xij appostles 8  
 tained in memory of our Lord and  
 His Apostles. that he had with hym, & gyue to them refectyon cor-  
 porel." Aygolant said: "certeynlye he serueth euyl  
 hys lord y<sup>t</sup> receyueth his messagers in thys manere. I  
 see wel that they that ben aboute the been in good 12  
 poynt & wel arayed, & wel serued of mete & drynke,  
 & the seruauztes of thy god lyue pourely & euyl clothed  
 ayenst y<sup>e</sup> colde, & ben withdrawen ferre fro the. he  
 Aigolant reproves dooth grete shame to his lord that receyueth his mes- 16  
 Charles for treat- sagers in this manere. & more ouer, I see now wel that  
 ing his lords so the lawe whyche thou hast sayd to me to be good &  
 much better than holly, by thy werkes thou shewest them to be fals & of  
 the servants of no valewe." & herof aygolant was all moeued & troubled 20  
 God, in his entendement, & he beyng put out alle fro hys  
 purpose, toke leue of the <sup>1</sup>kyng & retourned to hys  
 and refuses to be people, & renounced to be baptysed, and sente word to  
 baptised. charles for to begynne warre ageyn on y<sup>e</sup> morne more 24  
 stronge than euer he had doon tofore.

¶ Of the deth of aygolant and of his peple, &  
 how moche crysten peple were slayn by  
 concupyscence of syluer, & of crysten men 28  
 founden dede by myracle: [ca.] x

Charles is  
 enraged,

**W**Han charles sawe Aygolant come for to baptys  
 hym he was moche Ioyous, but whan he re-  
 turned & forsoke it he was euyl contente, & 32  
 took aduys vpon the pour men whyche he sayd were

<sup>1</sup> 1 iij, back.



messagers of god. For after the pouerte of them, and  
 after that they were named, fore to holde them so, was  
 none honour to theyr mayster, & the emperour re-  
 4 membred wel that the peple of god ought to be re-  
 ceuyed honestly, & honourably holden & serued. wherfor  
 the poure men that he fonde in thexcercyte he dyd  
 them to be wel clothed & honestly, and gaf to them  
 8 mete largely, And took suche custome in hym self that  
 he faylled not, but the pour peple were receuyed with  
 honour in his companye. vpon thys purpose on a day  
 folowyng, the sarasyns put them to bataylle, and to  
 12 fyght <sup>1</sup>ayenst the crysten men by grete fyerste, and  
 there was soo grete destructyon that day of the sarasyns,  
 that the crysten men were empessed and lette by the  
 blood that ranne so habundantly, as it had rayned many  
 16 dayes water and blood. wherefore <sup>2</sup>Aygolant, seyng  
 the destructyon of his people as he that doubted nothyng  
 to deye, aduanced <sup>3</sup>so hym self that he was slayn and  
 put to deth, and after the cristen men entred in to the  
 20 cyte of pampylone, and put to deth al the sarasyns that  
 they fonde therein.

and has all these  
 poor men clothed  
 and honourably  
 treated.

A great battle  
 takes place,

in which the  
 Saracens are  
 defeated,

and Aigolant  
 himself slain.

Thenne the kyng of Cybylle & the kyng of cordube  
 saued them self with somme of their subgettes. After  
 24 thys the crysten men ful of couetyse for to haue gold  
 and syluer of the sarasyns that were deed retourned, And  
 whan they were wel charged & laden wyth golde, syluer,  
 and other hauoyr, the kyng of Cybylle and the kyng  
 28 of Cordube took hede ther of, And wyth al their meyne  
 came couertly vpon the crysten men, and put to deth  
 moo than a thousand.

The kings of  
 Seville and of  
 Cordova fall on  
 the Christians  
 laden with booty,  
 and kill more  
 than 1000,

¶ Thus may be knowen that the ardeur of concupy-  
 32 scence was cause of the deth of the soule wythoute  
 vycorye, and to god dysplaysaunte. ¶ On the morne  
 tydynges came how so many sarasyns were slayn, and

from which we  
 may see the  
 danger of covet-  
 ousness.

<sup>1</sup> 1 iij. back, col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> *orig.* wherforr.

<sup>3</sup> *orig.* and aduanced.

The king of  
Navarre chal-  
lenges Charles.

He accepts, and  
prays to God to  
point out which  
of the Christians  
are destined to  
die.

This being shown  
to him,

he locks them up  
in his chapel,

and goes to battle  
without them.

On his return he  
finds them all  
dead.

specyally of aygolant, vnto the prynce <sup>1</sup>of Nauarre  
named Furre, wherfore he sent to Charles to haue  
batayll ordynayre. Charles was so noble, so puyssaunt,  
& so trustyng<sup>i</sup> in god<sup>d</sup>, whan he faught for the crysten 4  
fayth that he refused<sup>d</sup> hym not. and after, at the day of  
bataylle, whyche was assygned<sup>d</sup> on bothe partyes, Charles  
put hym self to prayer, and<sup>d</sup> prayed<sup>d</sup> god deuoutely that  
it plesed<sup>d</sup> hym, to shew what crysten men shold<sup>d</sup> deye in 8  
that bataylle. and on the day folowyng whan euery  
man was armed<sup>d</sup> for to fyght, by the wylle of our lord  
Charles sawe that same day the sygne of the crosse alle  
rede vpon the sholdres behynde vpon theyr harnoys. 12  
whan charles sawe it he thanked<sup>d</sup> our lord & had<sup>d</sup> com-  
passyon of theyr deth, by cause of the valyaunce of  
theyr persones. Thenne he sent for all them that bare  
thensigne & made them to goo in to hys oratorye, and 16  
after shette them fast therin, to the ende that they shold  
not take deth that day ; and<sup>d</sup> thenne wyth al his other  
hoost he went ayenst thoost of the prynce furre, but it  
was not longe but furre and<sup>d</sup> hys people were destroyed<sup>d</sup> 20  
and put to deth. and whan that was doon the emperour  
came in to hys oratorye victoryous vpon hys enemyes,  
and fonde al them that were shette wythin dede &  
expyred<sup>d</sup>, & thenne knewe<sup>2</sup> he wel that alle they that 24  
were marked with the crosse were assygned that day to  
be receyued in to heuen with glorie & crowne of marter-  
dom, & that it apperteyned not to Charles to prolonge  
theyr helthe. wherfore he is wel symple that wyl put 28  
hym in payne to eschewe the passage of whyche he is  
not maystre.

¶ Of feragus the merueyllous geaunt, how he  
bare alwaye wyth hym the barons of fraunce 32  
wyth out daunger, & how Roulland' faught  
wyth hym : capitulo xj.

<sup>1</sup> 1 iiij.

<sup>2</sup> 1 iiij, col. 2.

**A**fter that aygolant was slayn, & Furre, & many  
 kynges sarasyns as tofore is wryton, the tydynges  
 cam to the admyral of babyloune, the which had a  
 4 geant moche terryble, that was of the generacion of  
 golias, & he made hym to be accompanied with xx M  
 turkes moche strong, and sente hym for to fyght ayenst  
 charles themperour. For hys puyssaunce was redoubted  
 8 thurgh the world, & the sayd feragus cam vnto the cyte  
 of vagyere, nygh to saynt Iames, bytwene cristendom  
 & hethenes, & sent to Charles that he shold come to  
 fyght ayenst hym. This geant was moche meruayllous,  
 12 For he doubted neyther spere ne swerde, ne arowe, ne  
 other shotte. And he had the strengthe of xl <sup>1</sup>myghty  
 men and stronge. Anone as Charles knewe the tydynges  
 of hys comyng, he went to hym and was vpon his  
 16 watche nygh by vagyere. Whan thys was knowen this  
 geaunte yssued oute of the towne, and demaunded syn-  
 guler persone ayenst a persone. Charles, whiche neuer  
 had refused that to persone, sente to hym Ogier the  
 20 danoy. but whan the geant sawe hym allone on the  
 felde, without makyng of ony semblaunte of warre, he  
 came allone to hym, & took hym wyth one hande &  
 put hym vnder hys arme, wythoute doynge to hym ony  
 24 harme, and bare hym vnto hys lodgys, and dyd do put  
 hym in pryson, and made nomore a-doo to bere hym,  
 than dooth a wulf to bere a lytel lambe. The heyght  
 of thys geaunt was of twelue cubytes: he had the face  
 28 a cubyte brode, the nose a palme longe, the arnes &  
 thyes four cubytes long. The backe of his hand was  
 thre palmes longe. After that Ogier was borne thus  
 awaye, Charles sente raynold daulbepyn. whan Feragus  
 32 sawe hym, he bare hym a-waye as lyghtly as the other.  
 Charles was abasshed and sent tweyne other, that is to  
 wete, constayn of Rome, & therle hoel. This geaunt  
 took that one wyth<sup>2</sup> the ryght honde and that other

The Amir of  
 Babylon sends  
 Ferragus, a mar-  
 vellous giant,

to fight against  
 Charles.

He challenges any  
 French knight.

Charles sends  
 Ogier to meet him,

but Ferragus  
 takes him under  
 his arm and

carries him off,  
 as a wolf would a  
 lamb.

Charles then  
 sends Raynold,  
 and he also is  
 carried off.

Then Constayn  
 and Hoel are sent,

<sup>1</sup> l iij, back.

<sup>2</sup> orig. wyght.

but Ferragus  
carries them off,  
one in each hand.

Roland asks leave  
to fight the giant.

Charles reluct-  
antly gives his  
consent.

Ferragus lifts  
Roland up with  
one hand, and  
lays him on his  
horse before him.

Roland, by an  
effort, overthrows  
the giant.

Roland kills the  
Saracen's horse,

and wounds  
Ferragus in the  
arm.

in the lyft honde, and bare them <sup>1</sup>bothe tweyne in-to pryson in to hys lodgyng, that euery man myght see. yet after charles sent other tweyne, and semblably they were bothe borne away wythoute any wythstandyng or 4 contradyctyon. whan Charles saw the feet of this man, he was al abasshed, & durst nomore sende any persone. For no man myght resyste hym. Roulland, whyche was prynce of al thexcersyte of Charles, was euyl con- 8 tente of thys that the geaunt was vycoryous, & came to Charles and presented hym self for to goo fyght wyth hym, but charles wold not graunte hym. At the last, by force, he was constrayned to gyue to hym lycence, 12 & Roulland made hym redy, and cam tofore Ferragus; but anone he was taken and reteyned wyth hys ryght hande lyke the other, and the geaunt layed hym tofore hym on hys hors. whan Rolland sawe that he was 16 taken & borne away soo vylaynsly he took a grete<sup>2</sup> courage in hym self, and called the name of Ihesus to help, & to be in hys ayde, and torned hym ayenst Ferragus, and took hym by the chynne, and made to 20 ouerthrowe fro hys hors, & fyl to the grounde, and rolland also. And after anone they arose, and eueryche took hys owne hors. Roulland, whyche was moche habyle and courageous, drewe <sup>3</sup>hys swerde durandal 24 and came ayenst the geaunt, and gaf soo grete a stroke on the Paynyms hors that he carf hym a-sondre in the myddes, and the paynym fyl to the erthe. Ferragus, beyng euyl contente for hys hors that was dede, took 28 hys swerde for to smyte Rolland, & had slayne hym wyth the stroke yf he had attayned hym; but assone as he lyfte vp hys arme for to haue smyton Rolland, Roulland auanced hym self and smote the geant vpon 32 the arme, with whiche he helde hys swerde, suche a stroke, that hys swerde fyl to the grounde; wherof Ferragus had grete despyte and supposed to haue smyten

<sup>1</sup> l iij, back, col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> orig. gtete.

<sup>3</sup> l v.



hym wyth hys fyste, but he attayned rollandes hors in  
 suche wyse that he slewe hym. Thus were they bothe  
 two on fote, whyche wythoute swerd begynnen to fyght  
 4 wyth theyr fystes and wyth stones contynuelly, tyl the  
 houre of none: wherefore they bothe were wery, and  
 took tryews to-gyder by one acorde vnto the morne,  
 and that they shold fyght wythout spere and wythoute  
 8 hors: and here vpon eche of them went vn-to hys  
 lodgys.

Roland's horse is  
 killed.

Being both weary,  
 they leave off  
 fighting for the  
 day.

¶ How on the morne rolland' and' Feragus  
 foughten & dysputeden the fayth, and by  
 12 what <sup>1</sup>moyen Feragus was slayn by Rou-  
 land': capitulo xij

**T**He next day folowyng<sup>r</sup> erly, Rolland and Feragus  
 came to the felde of the bataylle. The geaunt  
 16 brought hys swerde moche grete, but it was nothyng  
 worth, for rolland made prouysyon of a grete staffe or  
 clubbe, ryȝt longe wyth whyche he smote the geaunt;  
 but he myght nowher hurte hym. & also he smote  
 20 hym with grete stones and rounde, & coude in noo  
 wyse hurte ne entre in-to hys flesshe. And in this  
 maner they cessyd not to fyght tyl the houre of myd-  
 day. The geaunt was wery, and demaunded tryews of  
 24 Rolland for to slepe and reste hym a lytel. Rolland  
 was contente, and was so noble and so valyaunt, that  
 whan the geaunt was layed he went and fette a grete  
 stone and layed it vnder hys heed, to the ende that he  
 28 myght the better slepe and reste at hys ease. And  
 after that he had a lytel slepte, & that he was awaked,  
 he satte vp. And the noble Rolland came and sat by  
 hym and sayd to hym: "I meruaylle moche of thy  
 32 feat, How thou art so stronge and so terryble that thou  
 mayst not be hurt ne wounded in thy body by swerd,

Next morning the  
 duel is renewed.

Roland takes with  
 him only a great  
 staff.

At noon Ferragus  
 is tired, and  
 wishes to sleep a  
 while.

Roland makes  
 him comfortable.

He asks him how  
 it is he cannot  
 by any means  
 wound him.

Ferragus tells him that he is vulnerable only in the navel.

The Saracen inquires about the doctrines of Christianity.

Roland tells him,

and how that all that are baptised shall be saved.

Ferragus proposes to settle the question of religion by arms.

ne by staffe, ne by stones, ne in<sup>1</sup> <sup>2</sup>noo wyse." The  
geaunt, which spake spaynyssh, sayd to hym : "I may  
not be slayn, but by the navel." whan Rolland herde  
that he made semblaunte that he vnderstood hym not. 4  
After Feragus demaunded hym what was hys name,  
and of what lygnage he was. Rolland sayd to hym :  
"I am named Rolland, and am neuwe of charles, the  
ryght myghty Emperour." & Feragus asked of hym 8  
what lawe he helde. Rolland answered : "I holde the  
cristen fayth by the grace of god." Feragus sayd :  
"what fayth is that, and who hath gyuen it?" to  
whyche Roulland answered : "It is trouthe y<sup>t</sup> after god 12  
almyghty had made heuen and erthe, and our fyrst fader  
adam, which was dysobeyssaunt to hys commaunde-  
ments ; the world was Juge here in erthe wythoute  
hauyng of beatytude, ne of felycyte : and long tyme 16  
after the sone of god, the second persone of the Trynyte,  
remembred hym of the valure of the soule, the whiche  
is gyuen to euery persone, and descended fro heuen and  
took our humanyte and suffred greuous passyon of 20  
paynes. And he beyng in this world hath gyuen en-  
seygnements and stablyssed constytucyons for to saue  
vs, & pryncypally who byleueth in hym & in hys  
werkes parfyghtly, and that he be baptysed, After this 24  
<sup>3</sup>mortal lyf he shal be saued in heuen : and, loo ! this  
is the fayth that I holde, in the which I wyl deye."  
And after that Feragus had made to hym many ques-  
tyons in the fayth, and that Rolland had answered to 28  
hym honourably in euery poynte, Feragus said in this  
manere : "thou art crysten, and wylt mayntene the  
fayth of whyche thou hast spoken, and I am a paynym,  
& holde for my god Mahoun. who of vs tweyne that 32  
shal be vanquysshed & ouercome, late hys lawe be  
holde for nought and of noo valewe, and the fayth of  
hym that is vycorious late it be holden for good &

<sup>1</sup> orig. im.

<sup>2</sup> l v, back.

<sup>3</sup> l v, back, col. 2.

- trewe, and that it be enterly kepte and obserued."
- The valyaunt Rolland<sup>t</sup> was contente ryght wel, & ac- Roland agrees.  
 cepted<sup>t</sup> hys langage. thenne eche of them was redy to  
 4 fyght. Anone Rolland<sup>t</sup> came to hym, and<sup>t</sup> Feragus lyft The fight is renewed.  
 vp hys arme for to smyte Rolland<sup>t</sup> moche malycyously,  
 and<sup>t</sup> Roulland<sup>t</sup> sawe the stroke come vpon hym, and<sup>t</sup>  
 for to voyde it he launced<sup>t</sup> hys staffe ayenst the swerde,  
 8 and wyth the stroke the staffe was cutte asondre; and<sup>t</sup> Roland's staff is cut in two,  
 there-wythal the geaunt ranne to Rolland<sup>t</sup> and had<sup>t</sup> hym  
 down vnder hym. Rolland<sup>t</sup>, consyderyn<sup>g</sup> that he myght  
 not flee ne escape, he called<sup>t</sup> in hys hert deuoutely the  
 12 name of Ihesus, and yeldest<sup>t</sup> hym to god<sup>t</sup> & <sup>1</sup>to the  
 vyrgyn marye: & he anon re pryse<sup>d</sup> suche strengthe & but by a great effort he gets the giant under him  
 myzt that he aroos a lytel, & myghtyly repugned<sup>t</sup> the  
 geaunte, in suche manere that he brought the geaunte  
 16 vnder hym, and<sup>t</sup> thenne moche quyckly and<sup>t</sup> subtylly he  
 sete hande on hys swerde, and pryched<sup>t</sup> hym in the  
 nauyll therwyth, & anone after aroos, and fledde al that  
 he myzt to thoost of charles. Anone as feragus felte and stabs him in the navel.  
 20 hym self hurt in that place, he cryed<sup>t</sup> so hye & lowde,  
 that alle they that were in that place were aferd<sup>t</sup> &  
 abasshed<sup>t</sup> of hys crye, & he sayd<sup>t</sup>: "O Mahomet, my  
 god<sup>t</sup>, to whom I haue gyuen my fayth, come & socour  
 24 me, for thou seest wel that I dye, and tarye noo lenger."  
 with that hydous voys the sarasyns camen to hym and  
 bare hym awaye in theyr armes the best wyse they  
 coude vnto hys lodgys; and by that tyme rolland<sup>t</sup> was The Saracens bear Ferragus away.  
 28 comen alle hool and<sup>t</sup> sauf vnto Charles. And forthwyth  
 the crysten men went Impetuously vpon the Sarasyns  
 that bare Feragus, and<sup>t</sup> entred<sup>t</sup> in to the cyte, and so Charles assaults the town,  
 moche dyd<sup>t</sup> that the geaunt was dede, and<sup>t</sup> after came takes it and  
 32 in to the pryson valyauntly, and<sup>t</sup> took out Ogyer, releases his knights.  
 Regnault, Constantyn, Hoel, and<sup>t</sup> the other prysonners.

¶ How Charles went to Cor<sup>1</sup>dube, where the kyng of the same place and' the kyng' of Cybylle abode, for their destructyon :

ca.

xiiij 4

The kings of Cordova and Seville defy Charles,

who marches against them.

The Saracens, by a stratagem,

frighten the horses of the Frenchmen, and put them to flight.

Charles devises a remedy,

and the battle is renewed next day.

Of the standard of the Saracens.

AFTER thys aforesayd, the kyng<sup>1</sup> Corbude and the kyng<sup>2</sup> of Cybylle sent to Charles that he shold come to cordube for to fyght. Anone as charles knewe it, he came thyder wyth all hys puyssaunce. And<sup>3</sup> 8 whan they were nygh for tassemble in bataylle, the sarasyns maad<sup>4</sup> a moche subtil and<sup>5</sup> wylde thyng. For tofore the Sarasyns that were on horsback they had ordeyned men on fote, whyche had<sup>6</sup> vysieres counter- 12 feyted<sup>7</sup> all black & rede, horned, and berded lyke deuylles, for to deceyue the crysten men ; and eueryche of these foot men bare in hys honde a lytel belle. And at thentre of the bataylle they began to sowne and<sup>8</sup> 16 make suche a bruyt, that assone as the horses of the crysten men sawe them so counterfayted and sowne their bellys, so Impetuously they began to flee, disreng & to be aferde, in suche maner that no man might holde 20 theyr horses, but by force they must flee and<sup>9</sup> wythdrawe them. Charles deuysed<sup>10</sup> a remedye, and on the morne he blynfelde the horses and couer<sup>11</sup> theyr eyen wyth clothes, And<sup>12</sup> stopped<sup>13</sup> theyr eres, to the ende that they 24 shold<sup>14</sup> not see ne<sup>15</sup> here the sarasyns dysguysed<sup>16</sup> & counterfayted<sup>17</sup>. And whan they came to bataylle in this manere they spared<sup>18</sup> not, but slewe down ryght, & put the sarasyns to deth tyl mydday ; but yet they were 28 not al vaynquysshed<sup>19</sup>, For they had<sup>20</sup> a carte myghty and grete for to resyste and<sup>21</sup> make grete empresshement to theyr enemyes. And<sup>22</sup> this engyne was drawen wyth viij oxen in the warre, & ther-vpon<sup>23</sup> stode on hye the 32 standard of theyr ensygne. & theyr custome was that on payne of deth noo persone, shold retorne, ne goo

<sup>1</sup> l vj, col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> l vi, back.

<sup>3</sup> orig. thre-vpon.



aback for no thyng as long as the standard stode vpryght. herof Charles was enformed, wherfore moche puyssauntly he rode thurgh the sarasyns tyl he came to  
 4 the standard, and with Joyouse hys swerde he smote it asondre: and anone as the sarasyns sawe that they fledde, & mony of y<sup>e</sup> paynymys were slayn and dede.  
 & on the morne after the towne was delyuerd vnto  
 8 Charles by the lord of the toun,<sup>1</sup> whyche coude not resyste hym, & charles was content to lete hym haue hys lyf yf he wold be baptysed, and also the toun for to holde it of hym and none otherwyse. And thenne  
 12 charles ordeyned in spayne certayn of hys barons to kepe it, in suche wyse, that none durst assaylle it, ne make to it warre. For he was <sup>2</sup>alwaye vycoryous of his enemyes by the puyssaunce that he ledde, and also  
 16 by dyscrecyon of hys persone, and pryncypally by the grace of god, whyche faylled not in him and in hys subgettes.

Charles himself cuts down the standard, and the Saracens flee.

The town is taken, and all who will not become Christians put to death.

¶ How the chyrche of Saynt Iames was  
 20 halowed by tharchebyssshop Turpyn, & the chyrches of spayne subgettes therto, and of other pryncypal chyrches: capitulo xiiij

24 **C**harles the noble emperour, after that he had put and sette good estate and good warde in spayne, he went to saynt Iames wyth fewe people. And whan he was there, suche cristen men as he there fond he rewarded them, & dyd to them moche good,  
 28 and he punysshed suche as were apostates, & other maner of peple, suche as he fonde vntryewe and dysobeysaunte to holy chyrche, he lete slee and put to deth, or he sente theym in to fraunce to do penaunce, and  
 32 bannysshed them. And thenne thorough al the cytees of spayne he ordeyned bysshops, relygyous, and other

Charles goes to St. James, and makes regulations for the church:

appoints bishops and monasteries,

<sup>1</sup> orig. tonn.

<sup>2</sup> l vj, back, col. 2.

and ordains that  
all the bishops of  
Spain shall be  
subject to the  
bishop of St.  
James.

Turpin conse-  
crates the Church  
of St. James.

Charles appoints  
the payment of  
tithes to the  
church,

and orders that  
all consecrations  
and coronations  
shall take place  
there.

The body of St.  
John is deposited  
on the right side,  
and that of St.  
James on the left.

peple of the chyrche, & made many constytucyons,<sup>1</sup>  
synodals, and other ordynaunces vp-on the chyrche, and  
vpon other peple. And in thonour of saynt <sup>2</sup>Iames he  
made constytucyons, and Instytuled that al the bysshops, 4  
prynces, and kynges dwellyng<sup>i</sup> in spayne, shold<sup>t</sup> all be  
subget to the bysshop of saynt Iames, and al they shold<sup>t</sup>  
owe to that chyrche fydeleyte, wyth al the peple of the  
londe of galyce. And accordyng<sup>i</sup> to the same the arche- 8  
bisshop Turpy n wryteth in thys manere: "And I,  
Turpy n, archebysshop of Raynes, was in the same place,  
where the ordenaunces aforesayd<sup>t</sup> were maad. And I,  
accompanyed<sup>t</sup> wyth ix honourable bysshops & of good<sup>t</sup> 12  
lyf, at the requeste and postulacyon of Charles in the  
moneth of Iuyl, haue halowed<sup>t</sup>, dedycated<sup>t</sup>, blessyd<sup>t</sup>, and  
consecrated the chyrche of saynt Iames, & the aulter of  
the same. And after thenne the kyng Charles gaf al 16  
the londe of spayne & of galyce to that chyrche, And  
after ordeyned y<sup>t</sup> euery hous of spayn and galyce shold<sup>t</sup>  
gyue to the chyrche of saynt Iames iiij pens of the  
money corraunt for annuel<sup>3</sup> trybute. And by the 20  
moyen therof they shold<sup>t</sup> be franke and free of seruy-  
tude. And for the honour of saynt Iames he estab-  
lysshed<sup>t</sup> that the chyrche of the sayd<sup>t</sup> place shold<sup>t</sup> be  
sayd apostolyque for thexaltacion of the place. And 24  
more ouer, that the bysshopryches and specyal dygnyte  
of alle spayne & of galyce, <sup>4</sup>and semblably the coro-  
nacions of kynges of al the contre, shold<sup>t</sup> be crowned &  
sacred<sup>t</sup> by the bysshop of saynt Iames, al in lyke wyse 28  
as it hath been tofore doon in Asye in the place of  
ephesym, for the honour of holy Saynt Iohan theuan-  
gelyst, brother of saynt Iames, and sone of Zebedee. &  
thus Saynt Iohan was lodged<sup>t</sup> in the ryght syde, And 32  
Saynt Iames, hys brother, in the lyfte syde. Thenne  
was accomplished the peticyon of their moder and of

<sup>1</sup> orig. constytucyous.

<sup>2</sup> 1 vij.

<sup>3</sup> orig. amuel.

<sup>4</sup> 1 vij, col. 2.

4 hyr two sones, gloryouse frendes of our lord Ihesu  
 Cryst, whan she desyreð that hyr two sones shold sytte,  
 one on the ryght syde, and that other on the lyfte,  
 8 whyche was thenne accomplysshed and termyned. &  
 therefore in the world ben thre syeges and chyrches  
 pryncypal, whyche crysten men by ryght owen texalte,  
 deffende and mayntene wyth all theyr myght. ¶ That  
 12 is to wete, the chyrche of Rome, The chyrche of Ephe-  
 sym of saynt Iohan the euangelyst, And the chyrche of  
 Saynt Iames in galyce. And yf ony demaunded the  
 cause of these thre places and syeges pryncipal of cris-  
 16 tyente, the cause is ynough apparence. These thre  
 places ben honoured pryncypally by cause the synners  
 may haue theyr recours to them for tamende theyr  
 lyues, and put lawaye theyr synnes, & obteyne pardon  
 20 and forgyuenes. Fyrst these iij appostles, that is to say,  
 Saynt Peter, Saynt Iohan, & saynt James, haue pre-  
 ceded all the other in the companye of Jhesu Cryst  
 whan he was in thys world, & haue ben called to hys  
 24 secretes, and that haue moost contynued wyth hym.  
 Thus by good ryght, the places in whyche they haue  
 conversed and contynued theyr lyues, and where theyr  
 bodyes resten, oughten to be honoured and to be  
 28 habundaunt in grace. ¶ Pryncypally, saynt Peter was  
 the fyrst and moost hye, & preched at Rome, and there  
 was martred & buryed; Therfor the chyrche of Rome  
 is enhaunced & exalted aboue al other chyrches. &  
 32 after saynt Iohan, whyche sawe the secretes of god in  
 his souper, & in ephesym he made the gospel '**In  
 principio erat verbum & cetera,**' And by his holy  
 prechyng hath conuerted thynfydellys to the holy  
 grete payne in spayne and in galyce, for the honour of  
 god as wel for hys holy lyf, for hys myracles, as for hys  
 marterdom and hys sepulture, by good ryght ought the  
 memorye of them to be thorough the vnyuersal world."

Thus the three  
 chief churches in  
 the world are  
 those of Rome,  
 Ephesus,  
 and St. James,

because St. Peter,  
 St. John, and St.  
 James were the  
 chief of the  
 Apostles.

The church of  
 Rome is the head,  
 because there St.  
 Peter is buried.

Ephesus is next,  
 because there St.  
 John wrote his  
 Gospel,

and the church of  
 St. James is third.

<sup>1</sup>¶ The second' parte of the thyrd book con-  
teyneth x chapytres, & speketh of the  
treason made by ganellon, and' of the deth  
of the pyeres of Fraunce. 4

¶ How the treason was comprysed' by Ganel-  
lon, and of the deth of crysten men, &  
how ganellon is repreuyd by thauctour:  
capitulo primo 8

Marsurius and  
Bellegandus,  
kings of Sara-  
gossa, pretend to  
be ready to sub-  
mit to Charles.

IN this tyme were in Cezarye two kynges sarasyns  
moche myghty, that one was named marfurrius, and  
that other bellegandus, his brother, whyche were  
sente by thadmyral of babylonne in to spayne, the 12  
whyche were vnder kynge Charles, & made to hym synge  
of loue and of subgectyon, and went by hys commaunde-  
ment holyly and vnder the shadowe of decepcyon.  
Themperour, seying that they were not crysten, and for 16  
to gete seynourye ouer them, he sente for ganellon, in  
whome he had fyaunce, that they shold doo baptyse  
them, or ellys that they shold sende to hym trybute in  
sygne of fydelite of their contre. Ganellon, the traytre, 20  
went thyder and dyd to them the message, and after  
that he had with them many deceyuable wordes, they  
sente hym ageyn to charles wyth xxx hors laden with  
gold & syluer, wyth clothes of sylke, <sup>2</sup>and other 24  
rychesses, & iiij hondred hors laden with swetewyn,  
for to gyue to the men of Warre for to drynke; & also  
they sente, aboue thys, to them a thousand fayr wymmen  
sarasyns, in grete poynte and yonge of age: And al thys 28  
in sygne of loue and of obeyssaunce. and after they  
gaf to ganellon xx hors charged wyth gold and syluer,  
sylkes, and other precyosytees, that by hys moyen he  
shold brynge in to theyr hondes the companye of 32  
charles yf he myght doo it.

Charles sends  
Ganelon,  
requiring them to  
be baptized and  
pay tribute.

The Saracens send  
presents to  
Charles, and in-  
duce Ganelon, by

bribes, to promise  
to betray the  
French army.

<sup>1</sup> 1 vij, back, col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> 1 viij.



Thenne ganellon was surprysed wyth thys fals auaryce, whych consumeth alle the swetenes of charyte that is in persones, for to haue gold<sup>1</sup> or syluer & other  
 4 rychesses, & made a pacte and couenaunte wyth the sarasyns for to betraye hys lord<sup>2</sup>, hys neyghbours, & crysten brethern, & sware that he wold not faylle them of thenterpryse; but I merueylle moche of ganellon,  
 8 which made thys treason, wythoute to haue<sup>1</sup> cause coloured<sup>2</sup> ne Juste.

Ganelon bargains to betray Charles and his fellow-countrymen.

¶ O wycked Ganellon, thou were comen of noblesse, & thou hast doon a werke vylaynnous: thou were ryche  
 12 & a grete lord<sup>2</sup>, and for money thou hast betrayed<sup>3</sup> thy mayster. Emonge alle other thou were chosen for to goo to y<sup>e</sup> sarasyns for grete trust: emonge al the other, and for the fydelite that was thought in <sup>2</sup>the, thou  
 16 hast consented<sup>4</sup> to trayson, and allone hast commysed<sup>5</sup> Infydelite. Fro whens cometh thyn Inyquyte, but of a fals wylle plunged<sup>6</sup> in thabysme of auaryce? Thy naturel souerayn lord<sup>7</sup>, Roulland<sup>8</sup>, Olyuer, & the other,  
 20 what haue they doon to the? yf thou haue a wycked hate ayenst one persone, wherfore consentest thou to destroye thynnocentes? was there noo persone that thou louedest whan to al crysten men thou hast ben traytre?  
 24 was there ony reason in the, whan thou hast ben capytayn ayenst the fayth? what auayleth the prowesse that thou hast made in tyme passed, whan thyn ende sheweth that thou hast doo wyckednes? O fals auaryce, and  
 28 ardeur of concupiscence! he is not the fyrst that by the is comen to myscheyf. by the Adam was to god<sup>9</sup> dysobeysaunt, and the noble cyte of Troye the graunde put to vtire ruine and destructyon. Thus in thys manere  
 32 ganellon brought gold<sup>1</sup> and syluer, wyn, wymmen, and other rychesses, as tofore he had enterprysed<sup>2</sup>. Whan charles sawe al this, he thought that al way doon in good<sup>3</sup> entent and equyte and wythout barat. The grete

The author's reproach to Ganelon for his treachery,

for which he had no reason but avarice,

which had ruined so many.

Ganelon presents the presents to Charles,

who falls into the trap.

<sup>1</sup> *orig.* hane.

<sup>2</sup> 1 viij, col. 2.

He takes the gold  
and silver himself,  
and gives the  
wine to his  
knights.

Charles, per-  
suaded by Gane-  
lon, sends his  
homewards.

Marsurius and  
Bellegandus lay  
an ambush in  
Roncesvalles,

which falls on the  
French.

The fight lasts all  
day.

At night the  
French soldiers  
get drunk on the  
wine.

Then 30,000 Sara-  
cens fall on them,

lordes & knyghtes toke the wyn for them, and charles  
took onely the gold and syluer, & the moyen people  
took the hethen wymmen. Themperour <sup>1</sup>gaf consente  
to the wordes of ganellon, For he spake moche wysely, 4  
and wrought in suche wyse that charles and alle hys  
hoost passed the porte of Cezarye; for ganellon dyd  
hym to vnderstonde that the kynges aforesayd wold  
become crysten and be baptysed, and swere fydelite to 8  
the emperour; And anone sent his peple tofore, and  
he came after in the ryere warde, & had sente Roulland  
& Olyuer & the moost special of hys subgettes wyth a  
thousand fyghtyng men, and were in Rounceyuale. 12  
Thenne the kynges Marfuryus & Bellegandus, after  
the counceyl of ganellon, wyth fyfty thousand sarasyns  
were hydde in a wode, abydyng & awaytyng the frenssh  
men, & there they abode ij dayes and two nyghtys, & 16  
deuyded theyr men in two partyes. In the first they  
put xx M sarasynz, and in that other they put xxx  
thousand sarasyns. ¶ In the vaunte garde of charles  
were xx thousand crysten men, whyche anone were 20  
assaylled wyth xx thousand sarasyns, and maad warre  
in suche wyse that they were constrayned to withdrawe  
them; For fro the mornyng vnto the houre of tyerce  
they seaced not to fyght and smyte on them, wherfore 24  
the crysten men were moche wery, and had nede to  
reste theym. Neuertheles, they <sup>2</sup>dronken wel of the  
good swete wyn of the sarasyns moche largely, And  
after many of them that were dronke went & laye by 28  
the wymmen sarasynnoys, & also wyth other that they  
had brought oute of fraunce, wherfore the wylle of god  
was that they shold al be dede, to thende that their  
martyrdom & passyon myght be the cause of theyr 32  
saucion & purgyng of their synne. For anone after  
the thyrty thousand sarasyns cam that were in the  
second batayl vpon the frenssh men soo Impetuovsly

<sup>1</sup> 1 viij, back.

<sup>2</sup> 1 viij, back, col. 2.

that they were al dede and slayn, Except Roulland, and slay all except Roland, Thierry, and Baldwin.  
bauldouyn, & Thyerry. The other were slayn and dede

with speres: somme slayn, somme rosted, and other  
4 quartred, and submysed to many tormentes. And whan  
thys dyscomfyture was doon, Ganellon was with charles,  
and also tharchebysshop Turpyn, whych knewe nothyng  
of this werke so sorouful, sauf onely the traytre, whyche  
8 supposed that they alle had be destroyed and put to  
deth. ¶ Of the languysshie that was comynge to Charles,  
he wyste not, how sone it was comyng.

¶ Of the deth of kyng Marfurius, and' how

12 Roulland' was hurt wyth foure speres mor-  
tally after that al his peple were slayn :  
capitulo : ij

16 <sup>1</sup> **T**He bataylle, as I haue sayd tofore, was moche  
sharpe. whan Rolland, whyche was moche wery,  
retorned he recountred in hys waye a sarasyn  
moche fyers & blacke as boyled pytche, and anone he Roland captures a Saracen, whom he ties to a tree,  
took hym at thentre of a wode & bonde hym to a  
20 tree straytely, wythoute doying to hym ony more harme,  
and after took and rode vpon an hylle for to see the  
hoost of the sarasyns, And the crysten men that were  
fledde : & saw grete quantyte of paynims. Wherefore  
24 anone he sowned and blewe his horne of yuorye moche  
lowde. And wyth that noyse cam to hym an hundred  
cristen men wel arayed and habylled wythoute moo.  
And whan they were come to hym he retorned to the  
28 sarasyn that was bounde to the tree, And Roulland  
helde hys swerd ouer hym, sayeng that he shold deye,  
yf he shewed to hym not clerely the kyng Marfuryus,  
& yf he so wold do he shold not deye. The sarasyn  
32 was contente, and sware, that he shold gladly do it for  
to saue his lyf ; & soo he brought hym wyth hym vnto

and afterwards compels to point out to him Marsurius.

The Saracen  
points out Mar-  
surius,

whom Roland  
kills.

The Saracens fly  
before him.

All the French  
are killed, except  
three.

Bellegandus and  
his men fly.

the place where they sawe the paynims, and shewed to  
Rolland Whyche was the kyng, whyche rode vpon a  
rede hors, & other certeyn tokenes. And in thys poynt  
Roulland, reconfermed in hys strengthe, trustyng<sup>1</sup> 4  
veryly in the myght of god and in the name of Ihesus,  
as a lyon entred in to the bataylle, & emonge them he  
encountred a sarasyn whyche was gretter than ony  
of the other, & gaf to hym so grete a stroke wyth 8  
durandal vpon the hede that he clefted hym & hys hors  
in two partes, that the one parte went on one syde &  
that other on the other syde. wherfore the sarasyns  
were soo troubled and abashed of the myght and puy- 12  
saunce of Rolland, that they alle fledde tofore hym, &  
thenne abode the kyng Marfuryus wyth a fewe folke.  
Thenne rolland sawe thys kyng, And wythoute fere came  
to hym and put hym to deth Incontynent. And alle 16  
the hondred crysten men that were wyth Roulland in  
thys recountre were dolorously slayn & put to deth,  
Except onely baulduyn and Thyerry, whyche for fere  
fledde in to the wode. But after that Rolland had 20  
slayn kyng Marfuryus he was sore oppressyd, & in  
suche wyse deteyned that wyth foure grete speres he  
was smyton and wounded mortally, & beten with  
stoones, and hurte wyth dartes and other shotte mor- 24  
tally. And not withstondyng these greuous hurte &  
woundes, yet, maulgre al the sarasyns, he sprange out  
of the bataylle, and saued hym self the best wyse he  
myght. <sup>2</sup>Bellegandus, broder of Marfuryus, doubtyng 28  
that helpe & ayde shold come to the crysten people,  
retorned in to another contreye<sup>3</sup>, wyth hys peple moche  
hastely. And themperour Charles had thenne passed  
the montayne of Roncyuale, and knewe nothyng of 32  
these thynges afore sayd, ne what had be doon.

<sup>1</sup> m j, col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> m j, back.

<sup>3</sup> orig. coutreye.



¶ How Rolland deyed' holyly, after many martyres & orysones made to god ful deuoutely,  
& of the complaynte maad' for hys swerde  
4 durandal : capitulo ijj

**R**olland the valyaunt, and champyon of the crysten  
fayth, was moche sorouful of the crysten men, by  
cause they had noo socours; he was moche wery,  
8 gretely abasshed, & moche affebled in hys persone, for  
he had lost moche of his blode by his foure mortal  
woundes, of whyche the leste of them was suffysaunt  
for hym to haue deyed, and he had grete payne to gete  
12 hym oute fro the sarasyns for to haue a lytel com-  
memoracion of god tofore or the soule shold departe  
fro his body. so moche he enforced hym, that he came  
to the fote of a montayne, nygh to the porte of Cezarye,  
16 and brought hym self nygh to a rocke ryght by Ron-  
cyuale, vnder a tree in a fayr medowe. whan he sat  
down <sup>1</sup> on the grounde he behelde his swerde, the best  
that euer was, named durandal, whyche is as moche to  
20 say as gyuyng an hard stroke, whyche was ryght fayr  
& rychely made: the handle was of fyn beryle, shynynge  
meruallously; on hye it had a fayre crosse of gold, in  
the which was wryton the name of Ihesus. It was so  
24 good & fyn, that sonner shold the arme faylle than the  
swerde. he took it out of y<sup>e</sup> shethe & sawe it shyne  
moche bryght, and by cause it shold chaunge his maister  
he had moche sorowe in his hert, and wepyng, he sayd  
28 in thys maner pytously: ¶ "O swerd of valure, the  
fayrest that euer was, thou were neuer but fayr, Ne  
neuer fonde I the but good: thou art long by mesure;  
Thou hast be so moche honoured, that alwaye thou  
32 barest with the the name of the blessyd Ihesus, sauyour  
of the world, whyche hath endowed the wyth the power  
of god. who may comprehende thy valure? Alas!

Roland, although  
greatly exhausted  
by loss of blood,

struggles nearly  
to Saragossa,

where he lies  
down.

He looks with  
grief on Durandal,

and weeping,  
bids it farewell.

<sup>1</sup> m j, back, col. 2.

Roland laments  
over his sword  
Durandal.

Determined that  
no Saracen shall  
ever have it,

tries to break it  
on a rock,

but Durandal  
cleaves the rock  
without harm to  
itself.

Roland blows his  
ivory horn so hard  
that it breaks,

and the veins of  
his neck burst.

Charles bears the  
horn and recog-  
nizes it,

who shal haue the after me? who someuer hath the  
shal neuer be vaynquysshed, alwaye he shal haue good  
fortune. Alas! what shal I more ouer say for the,  
good swerde? many sarasyns haue ben destroyed by 4  
the; thynfydels and myscreauntes haue ben slayn by  
the; the name of god is exalted by the; by the is  
made the path of <sup>1</sup>sauement. O, how many tymes  
haue I by the auenged thyniurye made to god! O, 8  
how many men haue I smyton and cutte a-sondre by  
the myddle! O, my swerde, whyche hast ben my com-  
fort and my Joye, whych neuer hurtest persone that  
myght escape fro deth! O, my swerde, yf any persone 12  
of noo value shold haue the & I knewe it, I shold deye  
for sorowe." After that Rolland had wepte ynough, he  
had fere that somme paynym myght fynde it after his  
deth, wherfore he concluded <sup>2</sup> in hym self to breke it, 16  
and toke it & smote it vpon a rocke wyth alle hys  
myght iij tymes wythoute hurtyng ony thyng the  
swerde, and clefte the rocke to therthe, and coude in no  
wyse breke the swerde. Whan he sawe the facyon and 20  
coude do nomore therto, he took his horne, whyche was  
of yuorye moche rychely made, and sowned & blewe it  
moche strongely, to the ende that yf there were ony  
crysten men hydde in the wodes or in the waye of 24  
theyr retournyng, that they shold come to hym tofore  
they wente ony ferther, and to fore he rendred hys  
sowle. Therne, seyng that none came, he sowned it  
ageyn by soo grete force and vertu, and so Impetuously, 28  
that the horne roof a sondre in the myddle, and the  
vaynes of hys necke braken a sondre, and the <sup>3</sup>synewes  
of his body stretcheden. And that noys or voys by the  
grace of god came to the eeres of Charles, whyche was 32  
eyght myle fro hym. The Emperour, heeryng the  
horne, he knewe wel that Rolland had blownen it, and  
wold haue returned ageyn, but Ganellon, the traytre,

<sup>1</sup> m ij.

<sup>2</sup> orig. cenclosed.

<sup>3</sup> m ij, col. 2.

- whyche knewe wel alle the fayt, dystourneð hym, in  
sayeng<sup>t</sup> that Rolland<sup>t</sup> had<sup>t</sup> blowen his horne for somme  
wylde beest that he chaced<sup>t</sup> for his playsyr; For ofte  
4 tymes he wold blowe his horne for lytel thyng, and  
that he shold<sup>t</sup> not doubte of nothyng. ¶ And thus he  
dyd<sup>t</sup> the kynge to vnderstonde that he byleued<sup>t</sup> hym,  
and<sup>t</sup> made none other semblaunte. Neuertheles, Rol-  
8 land, leyng<sup>t</sup> in thys sorowe, he peased<sup>t</sup> his woundes also  
wel as he myght, and<sup>t</sup> stratched<sup>t</sup> hymself on the grasse  
to the fressshenes for to forgefe hys thurst, whyche was  
ouer grete.
- 12 ¶ Here vpon Baulduyn, hys brother, came vnto hym, but Ganelon per-  
whyche was moche heuy and<sup>t</sup> sorouful for hys brother Baldwin comes to  
Roulland<sup>t</sup>, whyche was in that necessity. And anone him.  
Roulland<sup>t</sup> sayd<sup>t</sup> to hym, “my frende and<sup>t</sup> my brother,
- 16 I haue so grete thurst that I must nedes deye yf I haue Roland asks for  
not drynke to aswage my thurst. water, but Bald-  
win can find none,
- ¶ Baulduyn had<sup>t</sup> grete payne in goyng<sup>t</sup> here and<sup>t</sup> there,  
and<sup>t</sup> coude fynde no water, and came to hym ageyn &  
20 sayde he coude fynde none; and<sup>t</sup> in grete anguysshe he  
lepte<sup>2</sup> on Roulandes hors, and<sup>t</sup> rode for to fetche charles, and rides off to  
For he knewe wel that rolland<sup>t</sup> was nyghe hys deth. fetch Charles.  
Anone after came to hym Thyerry, duc of Ardayne,
- 24 whyche wepte vpon Rolland<sup>t</sup> so contynuely that he myzt  
not speke. but with grete payne Rolland confessyd hym  
and<sup>t</sup> dysposed<sup>t</sup> hym of hys consyence. neuertheles, that Roland confesses  
same day Rolland<sup>t</sup> had<sup>t</sup> receyued<sup>t</sup> the body of our lord, himself,
- 28 For the custome was that the subgettes of Charles that  
day whyche they shold<sup>t</sup> fyght were confessyd & comuned  
wythoute fayllyng by men of the chyrche, which alway  
were wyth them. Rolland, whyche knew hys ende by  
32 entyer contemplacyon, hys eyen lyfte vp to heuen, &  
hys hondes Ioyneð, al stratched<sup>t</sup> in the medowe, began  
to say thus: “Fayre lord<sup>t</sup> god<sup>t</sup>, my maker, my redemour,  
sone of the glorious moder of comforte, thou knowest  
and knowing his  
end is near,  
commends him-  
self to God,

<sup>1</sup> m ij, back.

<sup>2</sup> orig. lefte

myn entency[o]n, thou knowest what I haue doon for  
 praying for mercy the bounte that is in the. by thy grete mercy of  
 through the the haboundeth, by the meryte of thy passyon, holy 4  
 merits of Christ, and bytter, with a good and humble hert I requyre the  
 y<sup>t</sup> tofore the thys day my faul<sup>tes</sup>, synnes, and ygnor-  
 aunces may be pardouned to me, and take noo regarde  
 to the trespaces that I haue doon to the; but beholde 8  
 that I deye for the, and in the fayth that thou hast  
 ordeyned. remembre that thou hengest on the tree of  
 the crosse for the synnars, and so as thou hast redemed  
 me, I besече the that I be not loste. Alas! my maker 12  
 god omny<sup>p</sup>otent, wyth good wyll I departed oute of  
 my contreye for to defende thy name, and for to mayn-  
 tene crystendom. ¶ Thou knowest that I haue suffred  
 and for the dan- many anguysshes of hungre, of thirst, of hete, of colde, 16  
 gers and troubles he has gone through for the  
 Christian religion. & many mortal woundes. And day and nyght to the,  
 my god, I yelde me culpable; I mystrust not thy mercy.  
 thou art pyetous; thou art comen for the synnars; thou  
 pardonest marye magdelene and the good thief on the 20  
 crosse, by cause they retorned vnto the; they were  
 synnars as I am; lyke as they dyd I crye the mercy,  
 & better yf I coude saye it. thou byheldest how Abra-  
 ham was obeyssaunt to the of hys sone ysaac, wherfor 24  
 he ferde moche the better; byholde me how I am obe-  
 dyent to the commaundements of the chyrche: I byleue  
 in the, I loue the aboue all other, I loue my neyghbour.  
 He prays for the ¶ O good lord, I besече the to pardoune & forgyue 28  
 souls of his com- alle theym that thys day ben deed in <sup>2</sup>my companye,  
 rades. & that they may be saued. Also, my maker, I requyre  
 the to take hede of the pacyence of Job, for which he  
 was moche the better, that I deye here for thirst, and 32  
 am allone. I am wounded mortally, and may not helpe  
 my self, and take in pacyence alle the sorowe that I  
 suffre, and am therwyth content whan it pleaseth the.

<sup>1</sup> m ij, back, col. 2.<sup>2</sup> m iij.



as al thys is trewe, pardone me, comforte my spyryte,  
receyue my soule, and brynge me to reste perdurable."

Whan Rolland had prayed thus, he sette hys handes  
4 on hys body, holdyng<sup>1</sup> hys flesshe, and after sayd thre  
tymes, ¶ "**Et in carne mea videbo deum saluatorem  
meum,**" and after layed his handes on hys eyen, and  
sayd, "**Et oculi isti conspecturi sunt,** In thys  
8 flesshe that I holde I shal see my sauour, and these  
eyen shal beholde hym;" and after he sayd that he  
sawe thynges celestyal, whyche the eyen of mankynde  
myght not see, ne the eeres here, ne the hert thynke,  
12 the glorie whyche god hath maad redy to them that  
loue hym; and in sayeng, "**In manus tuas, domine,  
commendo spiritum meum,**" he layed hys armes vpon  
hys body in maner of a crosse, & gaf and rendred hys  
16 soule to god the xvj kalendes of Juy.

Then he crosses  
his hands on his  
breast,

and saying, "Into  
thy hands I com-  
mend my spirit,"  
expires.

<sup>1</sup>¶ Of the vysyon of the deth of Roulland',  
and' of the sorowe of Charles, and' how  
he complayned' hym pyetously, & other  
20 maters: capitulo iiij

"**T**He day that Roulland the marter rendred hys  
soule vnto god, I, Turpyn, archebysshop of  
Raynes, was in the valeye of Rounceuale, tofore  
24 charles the Emperour, and sayd masse for the soules  
whyche were passed oute of thys world. And as I  
was in the secrete of the masse I was rauysshed, and  
herde the aungellys of heuen synge and make grete  
28 melodye. And I wyst not what it myght be, ne wher-  
fore they soo dyd. And as I sawe the aungellys mounte  
in to heuen on hye, I sawe comyng a grete legyon of  
knyghtes, alle blacke, ageynst me, the whyche bere a  
32 praye, wherof they maad grete noyse and desraye.  
whan they were tofore me in passyng, I sayd to them

"The day that  
Roland died, I,  
Turpin,

was celebrating  
mass before  
Charles,

and in the  
'secret.' I saw a  
vision of black  
spirits passing  
with great noise,

and I asked them who they were, and<sup>1</sup> demaunded<sup>t</sup> who they<sup>1</sup> were, & what they bare. One of the deuylls ansuerd<sup>t</sup> & sayd<sup>t</sup>, 'we bere the kyng Marfuryus in to helle, for long a-noon he hath wel deserued<sup>t</sup> it. And Roulland<sup>t</sup>, your trompette, wyth 4 Mychel thaungel & many other in his companye, is brouzt in to Joye perdurable to heuen.' And as the masse was fynnysshed I<sup>2</sup> recounted<sup>t</sup> to charles the vysyon whyche I had seen, how thangellys of heuen bare the 8 soule of Roulland<sup>t</sup> in to paradys, & the deuylls bare the soule of a sarasyn in to helle. Thus, as I sayd and, while I was speaking, came Baldwin, and told these wordes, baldwyn, whyche rode on Rollandes hors, us of the slaughter of our men. cam hastily and said to charles how the crysten men 12 were dede & bytrayed, and<sup>t</sup> how Rolland<sup>t</sup> was hurte, and<sup>t</sup> in what estate he had lefte hym. Assone as he had<sup>t</sup> tolde thys, the crye was made thurgh thoost that euery man shold<sup>t</sup> retorne backe, & there was a grete 16 bruyt. But themperour Charles, to whome thys mater touched at the hert more than to ony other, auaunced<sup>t</sup> hym for to goo thyder; and<sup>t</sup> whan he came he fonde Rolland expyred<sup>t</sup>, hys hondes in crosse vpon hys vysage 20 al stratched<sup>t</sup>. And anone Charles fyl down vpon hym, and<sup>t</sup> began to wepe moche tenderly, smytyng<sup>t</sup> hym on his vysage, rendyng his clothes, & tormented hys body, & myght not speke a grete whyle. whan he was re- 24 torned<sup>t</sup> to hym self by ardeur of dylectyon and excercyte of sorowe, he sayd<sup>t</sup> in thys wyse: 'O comferte of my body, honour of frenssh men, suerd of Iustyce, spere that myght not bowe, hawberck that myght not be 28 broken, helme of helthe, resemblyng<sup>t</sup> to Iudas<sup>3</sup> machabeus in prowesse, samblant to sampson<sup>4</sup> in strengthe, & to Absalon in beaulte! O ryght dere newew, fayr & wyse, in batayl ryal! O destroyer of the sarasyns, de- 32 fendour of crysten men, walle of clergie, staffe to wydowes & of poure orphelyns, Releuer of chyrches,

<sup>1</sup> *orig.* w hothey.<sup>2</sup> m iij, back.<sup>3</sup> *orig.* Indas<sup>4</sup> m iij, back, col. 2.

tonge of trouthe, Mouthe wythout lesyng, trewe in al  
 Iugement, prynce of bataylle, conduytour of the frendes  
 of god, Augmentour of the crysten fayth, & byloued  
 4 of euery persone! Alas! why haue I brought the in And he lamented  
over him as David  
over Absalom,  
 to a straunge contreye? wherfor am I not dede with  
 the? O Roulland, wherfor leuest thou me heuy &  
 sorouful? helas! caytyf that I am, what shal I doo?  
 8 Alas! sorouful, whyther shal I goo? I praye to almyghty  
 god that he conserue the; I requyre thangellis of heuen  
 that they be in thy companye; I requyre the marters,  
 of whom thou art of the nombre, y<sup>t</sup> they wyl receuye  
 12 the in to the Ioye perdurable. alway I shal remembre  
 the wepyng, alway I shal fele thy departyng, as dauyd  
 dyd of natan & of absalon. Alas! Rolland, thou goost  
 in to lyf & Ioye perdurable, & leuest me in thys world  
 16 sorouful. Thou art in heuen in consolacion, & I am in  
 wepynges & tribulacions. Alle the world is euyl con-  
 tent of thy deth, & thangellys hath brouzt the in com-  
 forte.' In thys manere and otherwyse Charles bewept  
 20 and<sup>2</sup> sorowed his neuw Roulland. And he made hys  
 tentys to be sette vp there, for to lodge there al that  
 nyght, & dyd doo make grete fyres and grete lyghtes  
 for to watche the body of Roulland; & after he dyd and, after, caused  
his body to be  
embalmed.  
 24 do enoynte hys body with myrre & baulme and other  
 thynges aromatiques, for to conserue the body from euyl  
 sauour; and his obsequyes were made, & hys entyer-  
 ment with grete prayers, offrynges, & almesses in grete  
 28 contemplacion."

¶ How Olyuer was founden slayn, and' of the  
 deth of the sarasyns, & of the deth of  
 ganellon, whyche was hydous: capitulo v

32 **I**N the morne erly, charles came where the bataylle  
 had been with his peple, and there they fonde the Next morning the  
body of Oliver is  
found,  
 noble Olyuer stratched oute in maner of a crosse,

<sup>1</sup> orig. thith.<sup>2</sup> m iij.

fastened to four  
stakes,  
and flayed.

Charles vows he  
will never cease  
till he has avenged  
the death of his  
men.

By a miracle the  
day continues till  
he overtakes the  
Saracens, and

slays 4000 of  
them.

Then Charles  
enquires who was  
the traitor.

Thierry accuses  
Ganelon.

Charles appoints  
a knight to fight  
for Ganelon.

Thierry slays him,

whyche was fastned to foure stakes with iiij cordes & sharply bounden, and fro the necke to the nayles or vngles of his feet and handes he was flayn; he was al to-hewen, and shotte & hurte wyth speres, sharp dartes, 4 quarellys, & arowes, & beten wyth stauces; he was al to-faished and broken. wherfore the crye of many of the crysten began to renewe for the hydous deth of Olyuer, and of many other. wherfore Charles<sup>1</sup>sware by 8 god almyghty that he wold neuer cesse tyl that he had founden the sarasyns, & forthwyth he went wyth his hoost & noblesse. and by cause that the paynymys were moche<sup>2</sup> ferre fro them, god shewed a fayr myracle; 12 For that same day was prolonged thre dayes longe wythout that the sonne remeued ony thyng. and they fonde the sarasyns by a ryuer named Ebra in Cezarye, whyche rested them, and ete & dranke at theyr ease, 16 wythout doubtyng of ony thyng. and charles & hys people came vpon them so Impetuously that in a litel whyle there were slayn iiij M sarasyns, and the other fledde & saued them self. Thenne themperour, seyng 20 that he myght goo no ferther, retorned to rounyuale, And began tenquyre vpon the fayt of trayson, and who had doon it, & what man. Thenne he was enformed that Ganellon had made it, and that was the comune 24 oppynyon of them alle. And emonge alle other Thyerry accused and appeled hym of the treason, and that he wold fyght in the quarel. ¶ For Thyerry had knowleche by the sarasyn that rolland had bounden to a tree. 28 The kyng charles ordeyned a knyght for ganellon, named pynable, to fyzt ayenst thyerry. And whan these ij champyons were in the lystes, <sup>3</sup>anone pynalle was slayne by Thyerry; and as wel by thys moyen as 32 by other, it appered clerely that ganellon had bytrayed them. wherfore the emperour Charles, wythoute goyng<sup>r</sup> any ferther, dyd to take iiij grete horses, & made to sytte

<sup>1</sup> m iiij, col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> orig. mocbe.

<sup>3</sup> m iiij, back.



on them iiij stronge men, & bonde ganellon to two  
horses by his ij handes, and bonde the two feet to the  
other ij horses, & made hym to be drawen with the one  
4 hors toward y<sup>e</sup> eest, & that other toward the weste, that  
other ayenst the southe, and that other toward the  
north. In this maner eche of the hors drewe forth his  
quarter of the body of the parte whyche he was  
8 bounden vnto.

and Charles  
has Ganelon  
drawn in pieces  
by horses.

¶ How after the thynges afore sayd' charles  
gaf thankynges & preysynges to god &  
saynt Denys, & of the constytucions that  
12 he made in fraunce : capitulo vj

**W**Han thexecucyon was doon of Ganellon and  
executed, charles & hys people cam in to the  
place where the frensshe men had be slayn, &  
16 bygan to knowe theyr parents, frendes, & lordes, for to  
bere them in to halowed place. they caryed somme  
vpon theyr horses ; Other salted them wyth salte, for  
to mayntene them to brynge them in to theyr contreye ;  
20 Other buryed them in the same place, & <sup>1</sup>somme bare  
theym on their sholdres. Somme ennoynted them wyth  
oyle and myrre, & somme wyth baulme the best wyse  
they myght. Neuertheles, there were two cymtyoyres  
24 or chircheyderdes, ryght deuoute & pryncypally halowed  
emonge the other, whych were sacred and blessyd wyth  
vij bysshops. That one of the cymtyoyres was in erles,  
and that othe[r] in burdegale. & Saynt maxymyen of  
28 ays, Saynt Trophyn of arles, poule of nerbonne, Saynt  
Saturyn of Tholouse, saynt fontyn of poytyers, saynt  
Marcel of lymoges, and saynt Eutrope of xayntes had  
sacred and halowed them. In whyche places were  
32 buryed the moost party of the frensshe men slayn and  
destroyed in rounceyuale. Themperour dyd do bere

The French army  
attend to their  
dead comrades :

some they bury,  
others they em-  
balm and take  
with them.

Two cemeteries  
are made, one at

Arles, the other  
at Bordeaux,

where the French  
dead are buried.

<sup>1</sup> m iiij, back, col. 2.

Roland is buried  
at Blois, at the  
Church of St.  
Romain.

Oliver and others  
are buried at  
Bordeaux.

Charles gives all  
the land for seven  
miles round to the  
church of St.  
Romain, for the

sake of Roland,

and appoints  
masses for the  
dead.

At Arles are  
buried Samson,  
Naymes, and  
others.

Constantine's  
body is taken to  
Rome.

rolland, the glorious marter, vpon two mules couerð  
wyth clothes of sylke, honourably vnto bloye, & in the  
chyrche of saynt Romain, the whyche he had edefyed  
and founded wyth chanonnes regular, he dyð rychely 4  
burye hym, and wyth grete magnyfycence; & on hye,  
ouer his sepulture, he dyd do sette hys swerde, and at  
hys feet he dyð do sette his horne of yuorye. Not  
wythstandyng, after, the horne was taken awaye and 8  
borne to Saynt Seueryn at bourdeaws. At bourdeaulx  
were buryed olyuer & gaudeboy, <sup>1</sup>kyng<sup>t</sup> of Fryse, Ogier,  
kyng of denmark; and Crestayn, kyng of bretayne;  
Garyn, duc of Lorayne, and many other. As for Eafe- 12  
rus, kyng of bourdeaulx; Euglerius, kyng of guyan;  
lambert, kyng<sup>t</sup> of bourges, and galerus reygnaut, with  
v M other, charles gaf xij C vnces of siluer of money  
that tyme courant, & as moche of talents of gold, & 16  
many robes and mete to poure peple, for sauacyon of  
their soules. and al the londe seuen myle aboute he gaf  
to the chyrche of saynt Romain, and maad it subgette  
to that relygyon. And al bloye, wyth thappertenautes 20  
and the see ayenst the sayd terrytorye, he gaf semblably  
to the sayd chyrche for charyte & loue of Rolland, and  
ordeyned it so for euer. and on the day of their pas-  
syon he ordeyned that in the same place shold euery 24  
yere perpetually xxx poure men be fedde and clothed  
competently, and thyrty messys songen for them that  
there were buryed and entyered, and for alle them that  
were dede in spayne for the crysten fayth. In Arles 28  
was buryed the counte of lengres; samson, duc of bour-  
goyne; Naymes, duc of bauyere; Arnold de bellandus,  
and Albert bourgoynon, and other fyue knyghtes, wyth  
ten thousand other moyen peple. Constantyn, pro- 32  
uoste of <sup>2</sup>Rome, was borne to Rome wyth many other  
Romayns, and for y<sup>e</sup> remedye of theyr soules them-  
perour gaf in arles for almesse xij C vnces of syluer

<sup>1</sup> m v.

<sup>2</sup> m v, col. 2.

and xij talentes of gold, whyche was worth a grete  
somme of gold & syluer courant in that tyme.

¶ How Charles wente in to Almayne, where

4 he deyed' holyly, And of hys deth shewed  
to 'Turpyn, and' of hys buryeng' Impery-  
ally: capitulo vij

8 **A**fter the thynges afore sayd, Themperour charles Charles goes to  
Vienna,

and Turpyn, wyth the other, came and passed by  
vyenne; & there Turpyn tharchebysshop, a moche  
holy man, abode, for he was very and moche febled  
of the payne that he had had for the fayth in spayne.

12 and Charles wente to parys, & anone after he assemaled and thence to  
Paris.

al the nobles and the moost grettest lordes of hys con-  
treye, for to establyssh certayn ordynaunces, and for to  
gyue thankynges to god & to saynt Denys of the vyc-  
16 torye that he had obteyned in his tyme vpon the sara-  
syns, paynymys, & myscreauntes. And after that he  
had thanked god and saynt denys, and to his chyrche  
fast by parys, lyke as saynt Poule thapostle and saynt

20 Clement the pope had<sup>1</sup> doon in tyme passed, he maad He ordains that  
all kings of France  
shall be crowned  
at St. Denis,

constytucyon entyere that al the kynges of Fraunce  
present & to come shold obeye to the pastour that shold  
be for y<sup>e</sup> tyme of that chyrche, and that neuere kyng  
24 shold be crowned wythoute the pastour of that chyrche,  
ne the bysshop of parys shold not be receyued at Rome  
wythout hys consent & comandement. And he gaf  
many rychesses to y<sup>e</sup> chirche, & in token that fraunce

28 was gyuen to that chyrche of saynt denys, he ordeyned  
that euery possessour in al y<sup>e</sup> nacyon of fraunce shold  
gyue & be bounden to gyue to the chyrche of saynt  
denys, for to edefye & augmente it, iiij pens of money

32 courant yerely & perpetuelly, & al they that shold gyue  
it wyth a good wylle, yf they were of bonde & serue

and all bishops  
should be subject  
to the priest of  
that church.

Also that every  
person should pay  
to it yearly four  
pence,

and any bondmen  
who paid this  
should be free.

He prays for the  
souls of his  
soldiers.

St. Denis ap-  
pears to him,

and declares that  
all who pay the  
annual pence to  
his church, shall  
have forgiveness  
of their sins.

And this payment  
was called the  
Frank of St.  
Denis,

whence the coun-  
try has its name  
of France.

condycion, he wold<sup>t</sup> they shold be franke & free of con-  
dycyon. And<sup>t</sup> after anone these thynges ordeyned, he  
went & came tofore the body of saynt denys moche  
deuoutely, & there he prayed the glorious saynt that he 4  
wold<sup>t</sup> praye vnto our lord<sup>t</sup> Ihesu Cryst, that alle they y<sup>t</sup>  
were dede of the crysten fayth in the tyme that he had<sup>t</sup>  
regned<sup>t</sup> that they myght be saued<sup>t</sup>, and<sup>t</sup> that the payne  
that they had<sup>t</sup> taken my<sup>3</sup>t be to them the crowne of mar- 8  
tyrdom in the glorye perdurable; & in semblable wyse  
he prayed<sup>t</sup> for al them that wold<sup>t</sup> <sup>1</sup>paye gladly the pens  
aforesayd<sup>t</sup> to his chyrche. As god<sup>t</sup> wold<sup>t</sup>, that nyght  
folowyng<sup>t</sup> saynt denys appyered<sup>t</sup> to hym, & sayd<sup>t</sup> to 12  
hym in thys manere: "O kyng, vnderstonde me,  
knowe thou, that I haue made prayer to god, my maker,  
& he hath graunted<sup>t</sup> that alle they that haue been ayenst  
the sarasyns with the haue pardon of al theyr trespaces, 16  
& that wyllyngly shal paye the penyes for the edefy-  
cacyon of my chyrche & augumentyng<sup>t</sup> the seruyce of  
god<sup>t</sup>, they shal haue amendement of lyf and pardon of  
theyr synnes." This vysyon on the morne themperour 20  
recounted to hys peple, lyke as he had herd, by cause  
they shold wyth a good wylle pay the penyes that he  
had ordeyned; & he that gaf it was called the franke of  
saynt denys, by cause that he was free and<sup>t</sup> quyte of al 24  
seruage by the commandement of the kyng. After  
came the custome that that londe whyche was called  
Gallia loste hys name, & was called fraunce, as it is  
named<sup>t</sup> at thys day, & Fraunce is as moche to say as 28  
free of al seruage anenst al peple; and<sup>t</sup> therfore the  
lordes of Fraunce for this cause emonge al crysten men  
owen to be honoured<sup>t</sup> & praysed<sup>t</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> m v, back, col. 2.



¶ The recapitulacion of alle thys werke, & of  
his deth at Acon, & of hys sepulture:  
capitulo viij

- 4 <sup>1</sup> **T**He kyng Charles contynued gloriously his lyf  
in vertuose operacyons, And whan he felte the  
declyne of hys lyf he went vnto Acon, where he Charles retires to  
Acon,  
8 our lady the rounde, the whyche he dyd do make, and  
gaf therto grete tresour of relyques of bodyes of sayntes,  
of gold & syluer, of clothes of sylke, & other precy-  
sytees meruayllous, and there he deyed in the yere of where he dies at  
the age of 72,  
12 hys age lxxij. & for the magnyfycence of hys werkes  
he was called charles the grete; & he had iij sones leaving three sons  
thenne lyuyng, of whom the fyrst was named Charles,  
the second Pepyn, & the thyrd Lowys; & also he had and three daugh-  
ters.  
16 iij daughters, that one was named Rotrudys, that other  
berga, & the thyrd gylla. & whan he knewe that he  
myght noo longer lyue, hys sone lowys, whome he had His youngest son,  
Louis, succeeds  
him.  
20 ordeyned for specyal loue kyng of guyan, he lefte to  
hym the mageste Imperyal. For to knowe the holynes  
& the glorious ende of Charles, & how he was saued in  
heuen, and renomed an holyman, The deuoute Turpyn, Turpin, at Vienna,  
archebysshop of Raynes, sayth in this manere, “I Tur-  
24 pyn, archbyshop of Raynes, was in vyenne in the  
chyrche tofore thaulter, & was rauysshed in sayeng the  
psalm, ‘**Deus in adiutoryum**<sup>2</sup> **meum intende.**’ I sawe sees a vision of  
devils,  
28 were in quantyte Innumerable, whyche went toward  
lorayne; and I sawe one tofore hys felowes, & I de-  
maunded hym whyther al they wente. the whyche,  
beyng constrayned to ansuere, sayd, ‘we alle goo to  
32 Acon to the dethe of Charles, whyche lyeth a-dyeng.  
And we wyl see yf we may haue hys soule for to bere  
in to helle to perpetuel dampnacyon.’ Thenne I sayd

<sup>1</sup> m vj.    <sup>2</sup> *orig.* adiutoryum.    <sup>3</sup> m vj, col. 2.

to hym, 'I adiure the by the vertue of the name of  
our Lord Ihesu cryst that, wythoute fayllyng, after that  
ye haue doon, that thou retorne by me.'" Anone after,  
The devils return, or he coude fynyshe hys psalme, the deuylles cam 4  
retournyng ageyn in the same ordre that they wente.  
" And thenne I sayd to hym that I had spoken to by-  
fore, 'what haue ye doon there as ye haue been?'  
and tell him that St. James pro-  
duced so many  
good works done  
by Charles, that that same deuyl ansuerd, that 'James of galyce, frende 8  
to charles, hath ben moche contraye to vs, for whan  
we were redy for to receyue hys soule, and had egally  
departed his good dedes and his euyl, he brought so  
many stones & tymbre of chyrches, whyche he had doo 12  
make in the name of hym, that his good dedes sur-  
they cannot have  
his soul. mounted moche his euyl dedes, wherfore we myght  
haue noo thyng ne parte;' & thys sayd, the deuyl  
<sup>1</sup>vanysshed awaye," & soo he loste hys vysyon. Thus 16  
Charles, in the moneth of feuryere, rendred his soule  
to god holyly. For after that he retourned fro spayn he  
dyd but languyshe & appayre in hys body toward his  
deth; & in hys ende he ordeyned many almesses, & 20  
to say many masses & psalters. And the vysyon that  
the glorious archebyssshop Turpyn sawe, is sygnyfy-  
cacion that he whyche maynteneth and edefyeth  
chyrches in thys present world, that he maketh pre- 24  
paracyon of hys syege in heuen. His sepulture was  
moche honourable emonge al the sepultures of the world,  
noble and ryche excellently, and so fayr that it myzt  
not be amended. and ouer hys tombe was maad an 28  
arche of gold & syluer and of precyous stones, com-  
prysed by grete scyence. & thyder came Leo the pope,  
accompanied wyth prynces Romayns, archebysshops,  
bysshops, Abbottes, Dukes, Erles, and many other 32  
lordes, and dyd do make a fayre representacyon of the  
body of Charles, clad rychely and Imperyally with a  
fayre crowne of gold sette on his hede, & satte vpon

Charles is buried  
with great mag-  
nificence,  
in a tomb over

which was set a  
figure of himself,  
crowned and  
seated on his  
throne.

a chayer of gold<sup>d</sup> moche fayre and shynynge, and resem-  
bled wel a notable Iuge lyuyng. and they sette vpon  
his knees notably the texte of the four gospels in  
4 fayre letters <sup>1</sup>of gold, & wyth the ryzt hande he helde  
the lettre, & in the lyfte hande he helde the ceptre  
Imperial, moche ryche; & by cause the heed<sup>d</sup> shold not  
encline to eyther syde, hit was vnder set wyth a chayne  
8 of gold & susteyned. And the crowne that was on hys  
heed<sup>d</sup> raught to the arche, whiche was al aboue wel made,  
& the conduytes of the sepulture were replenysshed  
with al good odours aromatyques & precyous, and after  
12 closed & shette moche subtylly, & honourably kepte,  
as it was wel worthy for to be doon.

On his knees  
were placed the  
Gospels,

and in his left  
hand the sceptre.

¶ Thexcusacyon of thauctour. ix

16 **T**His werke, accomplysshed to the playsyr of god<sup>d</sup>  
tofore wryton, conteyneth thre bookes, by the  
chapytres deuyded, as it appereth openly to the  
reders, and I haue made them thre, after that I haue  
comprysed in the separacyon and deuydyng<sup>t</sup> of the  
20 matyer. Of whyche the fyrst book speketh of the be-  
gynnyng<sup>t</sup> of fraunce, and of the fyrst crysten kyng<sup>t</sup> of  
fraunce, whyche was named Cloys by the moyen of his  
wyf clotildys, in descendyng to kyng<sup>t</sup> Pepyn, fader of  
24 themperour Charles, In the honour of whome thys book  
is composed for the moost parte; to the whyche Pepyn  
the lygnage of <sup>2</sup>kyng<sup>t</sup> Cloys took an ende in successyon  
of the Royallme of Fraunce. And the sayd fyrst book  
28 sayth, more ouer, how Charles was nourrysshed, of hys  
corpulence, of hys etyng<sup>t</sup>, of hys strengthe, of hys scy-  
ence, & other werkes of magnyfycence. The second  
book speketh of the bataylle that Olyuer dyd ayenst  
32 Fyerabras, the meruayllous geaunte, sone of ballant,  
Admyral of spayne, a puyssaunt kyng; & al the fyrst  
parte of the second book is attrbyted to noble olyuer,

This work con-  
tains three books,  
divided into  
chapters.

The first book  
tells of the begin-  
ning of France,

and of the youth  
of Charles.

The second book,  
of the duel be-  
tween Oliver and  
Fierabras.

<sup>1</sup> m vj, back, col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> m vij.

The third book  
treats of the con-  
quest of Spain by  
Charles,

of the treason of  
Ganelon,

and the death of  
Charles.

and in the honour of hym. After ye shal fynde how  
the peres of fraunce were deteyned in Aygre more and  
put in surete, & after saued fynably by florypes, the  
curtoys doughter of the sayd ballant; And the holy 4  
relyques recoured, and other maters of grete mer-  
uaylles. The iij book speketh how, by reuelacyon of  
saynt Iames, charles went and conquerd spayne &  
galyce, where as he dyd operacions vertuous, & made 8  
constytucyons of sauacyon, wyth many bataylles doon  
by hym and hys subgettes; and fynably of the trayson  
of Ganelon, by the whyche the deth of Rolland was  
pyetous, the deth of Olyuer dolorouse, and of the other 12  
peres of crysten knyghtes slayn & dede. And fynably  
the deth of Charles themperour, as tofore is sayd and  
wryton. and <sup>1</sup>after that ony persone wyl here or rede  
of thys matere, the table made atte begynnyng shal 16  
shewe it to hym lightly, yf it be hys playsyr to here or  
rede of y<sup>e</sup> werk in thys book composed.

### ¶ Thenuoye of thauctour: ca.

x

This work I have  
written to be a  
good example to  
all,  
how to rule their  
lives.

**A**S I haue sayd at the begynnyng of thys present 20  
werke, the escriptures and feates somme haue  
ben reduced in wrytyng for to be in memorye,  
to the ende that they that haue doon wel, be to vs  
ensaumple in ensyewyng and folowyng them, & they 24  
that haue doon euyl may be cause to rewle our lyf for  
to come to the porte of helthe. For the comune vnder-  
stondyng is more contente to reteyne parables and  
examples for the ymagynacion locall, than to symple 28  
auctoryte, the whyche is reteyned by vnderstondyng,  
and also semblably thystories spekyng of our lord  
Ihesu cryst, of hys myracles, & of his vertuous sub-  
gettes, euery man ouzt gladly to here and retenne them. 32  
& it is so, that at the requeste of the sayd venerable

And I have made  
it at the request



- man to fore named, Maister henry bolonnyer, chanonne  
 of lausanne, I haue been Incyted to translate & reduyse  
 in prose in to Frensshe the mater tofore reduced. as  
 4 moche as toucheth the fyrst & the thyrd <sup>1</sup>book I haue  
 taken & drawen oute of a book named myrroure hys-  
 toryal for the moost parte; & the second book I haue  
 onely reduced it out of an olde romaunce in frensshe.  
 8 And without other Informacyon than of the same book,  
 I haue reduced it in to prose, substancyally wythout  
 fayllyng, by ordynauce of chapytres & partyes of the  
 sayd book, after the mater in the same conteyned.  
 12 And yf in al thys book I haue mesprysed or spoken  
 otherwyse than good langage, substancyally ful of good  
 vnderstandyng to al makers & clerkes, I demaunde  
 correxyon and amendement, and of the defaultes par-  
 16 don. For yf the penne hath wryton euyl, the hert  
 thought it neuer, but entended to say wel; & also my  
 wytte & vnderstandyng, whyche is ryght lytel, can not  
 vttre ne wryte thys matere withoute errour. Neuer-  
 20 theles, who so vnderstondeth wel the lettre shal wel  
 compryse myn entencyon, by which he shal fynde  
 nothyng but moyen for to come to saluacyon. To the  
 whyche may fynably come alle they that wyllingly  
 24 rede, or here, or do thys book to be redde. Amen.

of Master Bolo-  
myer,  
Canon of Lau-  
sanne.

The first and third  
book I have trans-  
lated from the  
*Speculum His-  
toriale*, and the  
second from an  
old French  
romance.

I pray all who  
may find a fault  
in it to pardon it,

and attribute to  
my want of learn-  
ing, not my good-  
will.

And I, William  
Caxton, have, at

the instance of  
Sir W. Daubeney,

translated this  
book into English

And I pray all to

<sup>1</sup> m vij, back.

<sup>2</sup> m vij, back, col. 2.

excuse my rude  
translation, and  
forgive the faults  
they may find.

And this work I  
finished on the  
18th June, in the  
year of our Lord,  
1483.

pardon me of thys symple & rude trans[l]acyon and  
reducyng<sup>t</sup>, bysechyng<sup>t</sup> theym that shal fynde faute to  
correcte it, & in so doying they shal deserue thankynges,  
& I shal praye god<sup>t</sup> for them, who brynge them and me, 4  
after this short and transytorye lyf, to euerlastyng<sup>t</sup>  
blysse. Amen. the whyche werke was fynysshed<sup>t</sup> in  
the reducyng of hit in to englysshe, the xviiij day of  
Iuyn, the second<sup>t</sup> yere of kyng<sup>t</sup> Rychard<sup>t</sup> the thyrd<sup>t</sup>, 8  
And<sup>t</sup> the yere of our lord<sup>t</sup> MCCCC lxxxv, And<sup>t</sup> enprynted<sup>t</sup>  
the fyrst day of decembre, the same of our lord<sup>t</sup>, & the  
fyrst yere of kyng Harry the seuenth.

¶ Explicit per William Caxton.

## NOTES.

- Page 1, line 12. "hye hystories:" Fr. *histoires haultaines*.
- p. 1, l. 13. Fr. *lentement comun est mieulx content a retenir pour la ymaginacion locale, a la quelle il est subzmis*.
- p. 1, l. 15. "gladly:" Fr. *volontiers*.
- p. 2, l. 9. Fr. *peult estre que je ieusse bien este informe*.
- p. 2, l. 11. See *Introduction*.
- p. 2, l. 27. The "*Book of the noble Hystories of Kynge Arthur and of certeyn of his Knyghtes*, reduced into English by Syr Thomas Malory, Knyght, and by Mr. William Caxton, deuyded into xxi bookes, chapytred and emprynted in the abbey westmestre;" was printed also in 1485, folio. It is a book of the greatest rarity. There is a perfect copy in Earl Jersey's library, at Osterley Park, and an imperfect one, wanting four leaves, in the library of Earl Spencer. It was reprinted by Wynkyn de Worde in 1498, folio, and an unique copy of this reprint is also in Earl Spencer's library. "*The last Siege and Conqueste of Jherusalem*," which gives the account of Godfrey of Bullogne, appeared in 1481.
- p. 16, l. 22. "the people is boystous & furious, &c.:" Fr. *celluy peuple est austere et furieulx, et, que pis est, sans memoire de dieu*.
- p. 17, l. 16. "guarysshed and hool:" Fr. *gary*.
- p. 17, l. 33. "and wepte—sayd:" Fr. *plourer moult largement en grant pitie va dire, &c.*
- p. 18, l. 11. Fr. *Pour quoy toy comme vray dieu et seigneur ie te requiers, comme ie ne desire croire quen toy fermement: par ta haultaine puissance ie demande*.
- p. 19, l. 27. [he]: the pronoun is unnecessarily inserted here: throughout the book the subject is constantly omitted in secondary clauses, where the person or thing spoken of is the same as in the principal sentence. See *Sege off Melayne*, l. 27, and note.
- p. 19, l. 31. "autentykly:" Fr. *authentiquement*.
- p. 19, l. 32. "frentes:" clearly an error for "fontes:" the Fr. reads, *composer baptitoires couenablement*.
- p. 21, l. 23. "put hym self in relygyon:" that is, became a recluse, devoted himself to religion: Fr. *se mist en religion*.
- p. 26, l. 11. "cont[r]ye:" Fr. *pais*.
- p. 26, l. 24. "wel a poynte:" Fr. *bien a pointe*.

- p. 27, l. 4. "as touchyng the pytaunce:" as regards his share at dinner: Fr. *quant a la pitance*.
- p. 27, l. 12. "iij hors shoen:" the Fr. original adds, *venans de la forge*.
- p. 29, l. 1. "to hym:" we should here insert "he doeth," according to the reading of the French original, *on fait*.
- p. 29, l. 12. "frequented:" constantly studied: Fr. *frequentoit*.
- p. 29, l. 26. "moche ample & boystous:" Fr. *moult ample et robuste*.
- p. 29, l. 30. "he ete not for the moost parte, &c.:" Fr. *ne mengoit pour le plus que de quatre metz, si non de la venoison rostie*.
- p. 32, l. 21. "be enclosed in Iustyce:" Fr. *soies enclos en iustéce*.
- p. 33, l. 19. The original French runs: *ilz se vont trouuer en vng grant bois quon ne pouoit passer a mains de deux iours encores a grant paine, et charles le pensoit passer en vng iour*. The meaning evidently is that the wood was so extensive that they could not pass through it in two days, and even then with great difficulty.
- p. 34, l. 1. Psalm cxix. 35.
- p. 34, l. 15. "after in the same contreye, &c.:" Fr. *depuis sont veus ces oyceaulx*.
- p. 34, l. 24. In the original, *Constantynople*.
- p. 37, l. 1. "moment." The original reading is *au mouuement quon tira*. The French *mouuement* is evidently a mistake.
- p. 37, l. 30. "And it was ordeyned, &c.:" Fr. *il est ordonne que ou moys de iuing a ays la cite tous les ans on deust venir veoir, &c.*
- p. 38, l. 23. "after that I shal mowe, &c.:" Fr. *selon que ien pourray concepuoir*.
- p. 39, l. 4. "of rome:" orig. *a rome*.
- p. 39, l. 9. "adiouste:" add. Fr. *adioudre*. On the word *adjust*, as representing the two Latin forms *adjustare* and *adjustare*, see Dr. Murray's paper in the *Philological Society's Transactions*, 1880.
- p. 39, l. 10. "I haue not founde in the book competent:" this, unintelligible in itself, is explained by the original French, which reads, *ou liure competent*, the last word meaning containing.
- p. 39, l. 20. See the different lists of the douzeperes, as given in the various romances in my note to *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 259, where the list given as that found in the *Sowdane of Babyloyn* should be read as that of the original French version in the Grenville copy, 10531. The names given in the *Sowdone* will be found in Dr. Hausknecht's Introduction to his edition of that romance, p. xxvii. For the names in *Roland* and *Otuel*, see my edition, note to l. 688.
- p. 40, l. 30. Compare *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 78.
- p. 41, l. 13. "as euy l and olde:" Fr. *comme mauuais viella-t*.
- p. 41, l. 33. "that I be fugytyf:" Fr. *ie soie fugi*.
- p. 42, l. 22. "quasi hurt, &c.:" hurt almost to the death.
- p. 42, l. 27. These exploits are related in the *Sowdone of Babylone*, pp. 4 *et seq.*
- p. 46, l. 19. "cremeur:" in the original the same.



- p. 46, l. 20. "as," read [h]as[t]: Fr. *qui as*.
- p. 48, l. 14. "At nede a man knoweth hys frende." See the *Gesta Romanorum*, p. 131.
- p. 48, l. 20. See note to *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 988.
- p. 48, l. 28. "took to hym." The original adds, *qui estoit estachie a dix riches cloux de fin or*.
- p. 49, l. 22. "lodgyce:" Fr. *logis*.
- p. 50, l. 3. "oute of mesure:" so outrageous in his conduct and language. "At thys heure, &c.:" Fr. *de cette heure ie vous otroie*.
- p. 50, l. 18. "Andrewe:" Fr. *Andrieu*, does not appear again in the present or any other account of the treason at Roncesvalles, so far as I am aware.
- p. 50, l. 21. Compare the corresponding passages in *Sir Ferumbras*, ll. 310 *et seq.*, and the notes.
- p. 50, l. 33. "secretly:" Fr. *comme entre ses dens*. Cf. *Sir Ferumbras*, 322.
- p. 51, l. 24. "the kyng had gyuen to hym hys gloue in sygne of lycence." The usual mode of giving permission to undertake a duel: compare *Roland and Otuel*, l. 1366, and the *Song of Roland*, l. 482, and notes.
- p. 51, l. 31. "where shal I become:" what will become of me? See Prof. Skeat's note to *P. Plowman*, B. v. 651.
- p. 52, l. 22. "he setted nought by hym:" took no thought or heed of him.
- p. 53, l. 9. "or:" I have corrected the reading in accordance with the original, which has *ou*.
- p. 54, l. 18. Compare *Chanson de Roland*, 376. "*Jamais n'iert hum qui encuntre lui vaillet*."
- p. 55, l. 26. "thou art departed of a lowe hous:" Fr. *tu es bien de basse main party*.
- p. 56, l. 12. "of the ronnde table." An addition of the translator.
- p. 56, l. 20. "I trowe thou be hurte." Not in the original.
- p. 56, l. 27. "flagons:" *barilz*: "botelles" in the *Sowdan*, l. 1185: "costrel" in *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 510, on which see note and *Introd.*, p. xii; at p. 60, l. 6, below, they are called "barylles."
- p. 57, l. 21. "Termagaunt:" Fr. *Talugaunt*.
- p. 57, l. 30. "goddes:" the reading has been corrected on the authority of the original, which has *dieulz*.
- p. 58, l. 28. "lether of arabye:" Fr. *cuir de capadoce*.
- p. 59, l. 3. "to the regarde of hys persone:" *i. e.* in comparison with himself.
- p. 59, l. 11. "I suppose:" *i. e.* I am sure.
- p. 59, l. 18. "grabam." The names of *Ferumbras'* swords are not given in *Sir Ferumbras* or the *Sowdan*, but in the verse *Fierabras* are said to have been *Plorance*, *Baptism*, and *Garbain*.
- p. 59, l. 23. ["I wyl saye:"] omitted also in the original, but plainly needed.

- p. 59, l. 25. In the verse *Fierabras* the names appear as *Galans*, *Munificans*, and *Aurisas*.
- p. 59, l. 33. The verse *Fierabras* gives the names of the swords made by Munificans as *Durendal*, *Musaguine*, and *Courtain*.
- p. 60, l. 6. "barylles." See p. 56, l. 27, and note.
- p. 60, l. 8. "bended:" bound, banded: Fr. *bende*.
- p. 61, l. 12. "seen:" *i. e.* seeing, considering.
- p. 61, l. 35. "thou remembrest:" Fr. *tu tauises*, *i. e.* thou thinkest of.
- p. 62, l. 18. "vtterance:" Fr. *a oultrance*.
- p. 62, l. 23. "at this stroke:" Fr. *a cestuy cop*.
- p. 62, l. 34. "bowed and entred:" Fr. *ploiez et entrez*.
- p. 63, l. 1. "tronchonneð:" Fr. *tronconne*, *i. e.* broken to pieces.
- p. 63, l. 5. "in a grete whyle:" Fr. *dune grant peece*, *i. e.* for a great while.
- p. 63, l. 12. "made:" an instance of the omission of the subject pronoun *he* before the verb. See p. 19, l. 27, and note.
- p. 64, l. 4. "he was bowed afterward:" Fr. *par derriere*.
- p. 64, l. 14. "playe:" the regular technical term for fencing or fighting with swords. Thus the *Catholicon Anglicum* has: "a Bucler plaer, *gladiator*; a Bucler playnge, *gladiatura*. þ<sup>e</sup> Swerde & y<sup>e</sup> bucler (bukiller A.) playnge, *gladiatura*." In the *Ancren Riwele*, p. 212, we have the expression "*pleieð mid sweordes*." See further in my notes in the *Catholicon*.
- p. 64, l. 32. "reioye:" Fr. *resioyr*.
- p. 66, ll. 7-32. Caxton carefully distinguishes between *you* and *ye*: the former never being used for the nominative.
- p. 68, l. 21. "made a lytel course:" ran away a little distance.
- p. 68, l. 24. There is no mention of Oliver's drinking any of the balm in *Sir Ferumbras* or the *Sowdan*. See Dr. Hausknecht's note to the latter, l. 1191.
- p. 68, l. 29. "beyngt nyghe vnto a grete ryuer, &c." See note 1 in Introduction to *Sir Ferumbras*, p. xii.
- p. 69, l. 12. ["he:"] the omission of the subject pronoun frequently causes ambiguity when two persons are spoken of: the [he] here, of course, refers to Oliver's horse.
- p. 69, l. 16. "aboue:" Fr. *oultre*, *i. e.* out of, away from.
- p. 69, l. 20. For number of chapter given as "viij" read "xijj."
- p. 71, l. 11. "tenestre:" read "terrestre."
- p. 71, l. 21. "Longyus." On the *legend of Longinus*, see Prof. Skeat's notes to *P. Plowman*, C. xxi. 82—90.
- p. 71, l. 31. "thou." Here the singular pronoun is used rightly as in a prayer addressed directly to our Lord: in the previous lines *you* and *ye* were used, as they were not of the character of a prayer.
- p. 72, l. 6. "for hys glorious medytacyon." In the original French, *par glorieux meditacion*. "Neuertheles:" Fr. *touttefois*.
- p. 72, l. 16. "soo coneytous in smytyng:" Fr. *conuoiteuls et affoibly*.
- p. 72, l. 17. "a-slepe:" *i. e.* numbed. Fr. *endormie*.

- p. 72, l. 19. "at vtterauce:" a *oultrance*: comp. p. 62, l. 18.  
 p. 73, l. 8. "for to apoynte wyth the:" Fr. *te faire vne pache*.  
 p. 74, l. 5. "vylete:" Fr. *ville*.  
 p. 74, l. 12. "matte." In the original the same. See *Sir Ferumbras*, ll. 2506, 2590, and Glossary.  
 p. 75, l. 20. "whyche he brake and al to-frusshed euyl:" Fr. *cassa et rompi mallement*.  
 p. 76, l. 5. "and ranne vpon hym:" Fr. *et se coururent*. The succeeding passage is awkwardly expressed in the translation. The original reads: *et fut premierement frappe Oliuer sur son escu par telle fierte, qu'au prez le poinz de Oliuer a mis en pieces son escu*, which is not much better. The *he*, of course, is *Ferumbras*.  
 p. 78, l. 16. "enforced:" exerted. Compare *Sir Ferumbras*, 782—  
 "pan Firumbras *enforcede* hym þer to arise vp-on ys fete."  
 p. 79, l. 18. "a faus dart:" Fr. *ung faulx dart*. Properly a hand-bill. See *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 966, and note—

"*falsarz an feperd dart*."

The expression occurs again, p. 81, l. 28, below.

- p. 79, l. 20. "crapauld:" Fr. *crapaulx*, a toad.  
 p. 80, l. 72. "a pynapple tree:" a pine or fir-tree. The *Catholicon Anglicum* gives: "a Pyne tre (A Pyne Appyltre A.); *pinus* (*pinum fructus eius* A.)." Apple was the ordinary word for the cones of the pine or fir. Lyte, Dodoens, p. 769, speaking of the pine, says: "his fruite is great Boulleans or bawles of a browne chesnut colour, and are called *pine-apples*." See other instances in my note in the *Catholicon*.  
 p. 81, l. 12. "by force of shotte and of strokes." Altered on the authority of the original, which reads: "*a force de coup et de trais*."  
 p. 81, l. 28. "faus dartes." See p. 79, l. 18, and note.  
 p. 82, l. 6. "it is good to vete:" this does not at all convey the meaning of the original, which runs: *sans le dire se peult entendre*.  
 p. 82, l. 15. The omission of the pronoun before *makyng* makes the sentence rather awkward.  
 p. 82, l. 27. "Amancdys:" Fr. *Amandis*.  
 p. 82, l. 35. In the *Sowdone* it is Roland and Oliver that are captured: see Dr. Hausknecht's note to l. 1433.  
 p. 83, l. 9. "wente doun of a mountayn." In *Sir Ferumbras*, 984:  
 "at aualyng of an hulle."  
 p. 83, l. 20. "morfounded:" Fr. *morfondus*, lit. chilled, affected by cold.  
 p. 84, l. 31. "ones:" at some time or other.  
 p. 85, l. 10. "Turpyn." For an account of this celebrated Knight-Bishop, see Dr. Hausknecht's note to the *Sowdone*, l. 1711.  
 p. 85, l. 19. "sercheden:" compare *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 1093-4.

"is wounde to *enserche* and saye.

At is heste þey wente þer-to & softe gunne *taste* is wounde."

- p. 86, l. 3. "ballant thadmyral." Laban in the *Sowdone* throughout.

- p. 86, l. 32. "sythe." By using this word to render the original *puis*, Caxton has made the whole sentence almost unintelligible. It should run: "O brullant of mommyere, what is betyd of the noble kyng of Cordube and of my neuewe bruchart, and also of my sone fyerabras, the ledar and captayn of all?"
- p. 87, l. 6. "knyght:" Fr. *damoiseau*.
- p. 87, l. 15. In the *Sowdone* the French knights tell their true names.
- p. 87, l. 30. "yeman:" Fr. *vassal*.
- p. 88, l. 10. "brullant:" in the *Sowdone*, 1512, it is Floripas who advises her father to imprison the Frenchmen, not to slay them.
- p. 89, l. 3. "strayt:" Fr. *estroite*.
- p. 89, l. 6. See note to p. 79, l. 20.
- p. 89, l. 29. "put vnder by fals fortune:" Fr. *soumis a faulx fortune*.
- p. 89, l. 31. "what I make": Fr. *que ie fays*, i. e. what I am doing, how I fare.
- p. 90, l. 11. Compare the description of Floripas as given in *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 5789, *et seq.*
- p. 90, l. 28. "whyche was made of one of the fayrre:" Fr. *faicte dune fae*.
- p. 91, l. 1. Caxton's translation of Raoul Lefevre's *Jason* was printed in 1477 (Blades). Several copies are still in existence.
- p. 91, l. 11. "doughter:" Fr. *la fille*.
- p. 91, l. 26. "Anone florypes had enuye to here hym speke:" Fr. *eult enue les oyr parler*, i. e. had a great desire to hear them speak.
- p. 91, l. 31. "dyschoneste:" Fr. *inhonestete*.
- p. 91, l. 32. "on that other syde:" i. e. on the other hand, again.
- p. 92, l. 21. "charlemayns:" evidently a misprint for "charlemayne," and not a genitive case.
- p. 92, l. 35. "for to meddle wyth:" Fr. *pour vous mesler* = to engage.
- p. 93, l. 3. "wel ferre for to be oute:" i. e. very far from being out. Perhaps we should read "wel ferre fro to be oute."
- p. 93, l. 18. "ye can wel playe with maydens, &c." Compare the corresponding passage in *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 1303, and Dr. Hausknecht's note to the *Sowdone*, l. 1723.
- p. 93, l. 29. "a corde & a staffe." In *Sir Ferumbras*, 1308, Floripas sends for "anuylt, tange, & slegge." The *Sowdan* agrees with Caxton, for in l. 1647 we are told that she  
     "a rope to hem lete down gooñ  
     That aboveñ was teyde faste."
- p. 94, l. 13. "a gardyn pretoyre:" Fr. *avoit ung pretoire*, i. e. an enclosed yard or space.
- p. 94, l. 27. "camuse:" flat-nosed. See note to *Sir Ferumbras*, 4437, and Glossary.
- p. 94, l. 35. "varlet:" a repetition of the original French word.
- p. 95, l. 27. "ye be here in surete as ferre as no man hath herde vs." This hardly conveys the meaning of the original, which runs: *se*



*daurenture quelque*, i. e. so long as, or, provided that no man hath heard us.

- p. 95, l. 28. "I am not in doubte:" Fr. *en aultre doubte*, i. e. fear.
- p. 96, l. 5. "when my fader the admyral destroyed Rome." See my Introduction to *Sir Ferumbras*, p. xii, and Dr. Hausknecht's edition of the *Sowdan*, Introd.
- p. 96, l. 6. "lucafar:" in the French versions of the romance *Lucifer* throughout.
- p. 97, l. 1. "damage:" Fr. *dommaige*.
- p. 97, l. 4. The French reads: *et plusieurs aultres terriennes victoires*.
- p. 97, l. 6. "deteyned:" Fr. *detenu*.
- p. 97, l. 30. "Rolland." In the *Sowdone*, l. 1668, it is Guy whom Charles orders first to go on the message to Balan. See Introduction, and Dr. Hausknecht's note to l. 1665.
- p. 98, l. 33. "cosyn." Guy was Charles's nephew: see *Sir Ferumbras*, 1922, 2091, &c., and see Dr. Hausknecht's note to the *Sowdone*, l. 1888.
- p. 99, l. 7. "lese:" destroy. Fr. *perdre*.
- p. 101, l. 15. "and:" if.
- p. 102, l. 5. Comparing p. 183, l. 32, it is clear that we should read "he behelde." On Durandal, see note to *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 988, and the *Sowdone*, l. 875.
- p. 102, l. 7. "descerkled:" cut off the circle or band of gold worn round the helmet. Compare *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 622, and note, and the corresponding passage in the *Sowdone*, l. 1182, and Dr. Hausknecht's note.
- p. 103, l. 29. "Ogyer:" in *Sir Ferumbras* it is Richard of Normandy who gives the account of Mantrible, which he was able to do, because, as we learn, "he knew all the cost."
- p. 105, l. 7. "he hath quytte his contreye of fals peple." There can be little doubt that we should read "he hath not quytte."
- p. 107, l. 14. "Naymes": in *Sir Ferumbras*, Roland: the *Sowdone* agrees with our text, see l. 1821.
- p. 108, l. 23. "with his berde florysshed." Compare *Roland and Otuel*, 82; where Naymes, describing Charles, says:
- "He sittes his duspers Imange,  
With white berde large and lange  
Faire of flesche & felle.  
With a floreschede thonwange,  
Oure noble kynge pat es so strange,  
His doghety men imelle."
- p. 113, l. 25. "enterbraced eche other & kyssed:" Fr. *se font baisser et accoller*.
- p. 116, l. 27. "gloutons." Cf. *Sir Ferumbras*, 1634, 3841, &c.
- p. 118, l. 26. Compare the account of the game "at the coal," given in the *Sowdone*, ll. 1999—2003. In it Lucifer burns the beard of Naymes, who at once kills him.

- p. 119, l. 8. "thou wendest to haue made me to muse in thy folyes:" Fr. *tu me cuidas il na pas gaires bon faite musier en tes folies.*
- p. 119, l. 17. "no more charge to playe:" Fr. *na plus cure de ioeur.*
- p. 120, l. 7. "put you in poynte:" Fr. *mis en point* = arm yourselves completely.
- p. 120, l. 28. "whyche was wel appoynted, &c.:" Fr. *trestien appareille tantost fut par terre verse.*
- p. 121, p. 18. Fr. *tousiours a la cue dung viel chien vous tenez.*
- p. 122, l. 23. "Marpyn:" in the *Sowdone*, Mapyne; in *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 2387, Manbyn.
- p. 123, l. 23. "he came so wel to poynte, &c.:" slightly different in the French, *il vient la bien a point, car le larron.*
- p. 124, l. 29. "hyr spouse that shold be:" Fr. *son espoux aduenir.* Compare p. 134, l. 27.
- p. 128, l. 11. "doubted:" feared. Fr. *redoubte.*
- p. 129, l. 13. "wente in theyr repayre:" went on their way back. Fr. *alloient en leur repaire.*
- p. 130, l. 18. "leste not for to be forthwith quartred, &c.:" he did not hesitate, though he should be at once cut to pieces. In the French, *et pour estre esquartelle presentement il ne se fust tenu quil ne prist celluy sarrazin.*
- p. 130, l. 29. "whyche wyth theyr feet and handes al to-bete hym in suche wyse, &c.:" Fr. *que des pies que des mains ilz le vont tant battre* = both with hands and feet they beat him, &c. Compare the corresponding passage in *Syr Ferumbras*, p. 90, l. 2790, and note.
- p. 133, l. 19. "so hardy and oute of mesure:" Fr. *si hardis et desmesurez.*
- p. 134, l. 27. "hir loue and tocomyng husbond:" Fr. *son espouse aduenir.* Compare p. 124, l. 29.
- p. 134, l. 31. "Truste ye none other, &c.:" be sure of this only, that if he die I shall leap out of the wyndowe, &c. Fr. *ne vous fies point que sil meurt.*
- p. 136, l. 11. "a morel of grete facyon:" Fr. *moreau de grant fasson.*
- p. 136, l. 19. "after that he was recoured:" as soon as he had recovered himself. Fr. *aprez quil se fut recoure.*
- p. 136, l. 32. "Inconuenyents:" Fr. *inconueniens* = damage.
- p. 137, l. 31. "cryed to hym wyth an hye voys, &c.:" Fr. *luy cria a haulte voix quil luy pleust de la venir baisier, en disant que selle viuoit pour la prouesse des barons que son pere ladmiral seroit vne ffoys en son dangier.* The whole passage is very obscure, nor does the corresponding line in *Sir Ferumbras* help much to make it any clearer.
- p. 142, l. 3. "at vtterance:" Fr. *a oultrance* = exceedingly.
- p. 142, l. 7. "esmaye you nothyng yet:" Fr. *ne vous esmaies eneore.*
- p. 142, l. 12. "beurage:" Fr. *beuraige*, a draught.
- p. 142, l. 30. "For they sawe parte of the walles, &c.:" Fr. *car ilz veoient a terre ruer les murailles principales du chasteau.*

- p. 143, l. 25. "be ye . . ne wroth ayenst Mahon:" in the *Sowdone* Balan smashes Mahound.
- p. 144, l. 15. "the frenshe men purpose to dystrouble vs at our souper:" Fr. *les francoys nous veulent faire refrodier notre soupper* = wish to make our supper cold.
- p. 145, l. 1. "wherfor of veray force the other paynymys must re-  
torne:" Fr. *pourquoy force fut aux aultres*, &c.
- p. 145, l. 25. "sythe he is a man of auctoryte:" Fr. *puis quil est homme de audience*.
- p. 147, l. 5. "abandonned hym self to goo:" offered himself, volunteered.
- p. 147, l. 26. "greued in hys persone:" wounded. Fr. *greue de sa personne*.
- p. 149, l. 5. "on a day emonge al other:" Fr. *ung iour entre les aultres*.
- p. 149, l. 17. "at al aduenture:" Fr. *a son aduenture*.
- p. 149, l. 28. "he doubted entyerly:" Fr. *il doubta entierement* = feared greatly, or in his heart. See *Glossary*.
- p. 151, l. 6. "dropped:" Fr. *platz* = broad.
- p. 152, l. 6. "attayned ouerthwart the necke:" Fr. *l'attaint du trauers du col*.
- p. 154, l. 4. "of thy partye:" = so far as thou art concerned. Fr. *de ta part*.
- p. 154, l. 13. Fr. *Et quant l'admiral les vit venir tout ethroclite en son entendement*. I can make nothing of "the ethroclites."
- p. 155, l. 8. "Orages:" in *Sir Ferumbras*, 3823, Malyngbras; in the *Sowdone*, 2145, Espyard.
- p. 155, l. 29. "To whom there is none like or equal in goodness in the world:" Fr. *quil non y a point de pareil*.
- p. 158, l. 2. "in comyng, &c.:" as we should now see, *en passant*, or by the way. Fr. *en venant vous debuez scauoir*.
- p. 158, l. 5. The miracle of the water rising to a level with the banks, and afterwards subsiding, is not given in the English metrical versions of the romance. See Dr. Hausknecht's note to the *Sowdone*, l. 2810.
- p. 159, l. 10. "dantesuyle." In the original French, *dautefeuille*, evidently misread by Caxton.
- p. 161, l. 1. "how am I determyned:" Fr. *comme suis ie déterminé*.
- p. 161, l. 29. "as a thief attaynt:" Fr. *comme larron prouue*.
- p. 163, l. 12. "deffende:" forbid. Fr. *ne plaise pas a dieu que iamais*.
- p. 165, l. 31. "wyth motye:" Fr. *a ce mouuement vous viendrez*.
- p. 167, l. 14. "reclame me recreaunte, &c.:" Fr. *reclame recreant et tenu reboute*.
- p. 169, l. 3. "bowed his hede:" Fr. *baissa le menton*.
- p. 169, l. 28. "of an olde Serpente, &c.:" Fr. *dung viel serpent crote et moult endurecy*.
- p. 170, l. 27. "confanon:" so in the original French.

- p. 171, l. 27. "she was departed fro her gesyne, &c.:" Fr. *qui auoit faicte sa gessine de deux filz*, that is, who had given birth to two sons.
- p. 172, l. 11. "facyon:" = state of affairs.
- p. 175, l. 24. "Thus doynge:" = while this was happening.
- p. 175, l. 32. "Amyotte." Amyote, *Sir Ferumbras*, 4663; Barrok, in the *Sowdone*, 2939.
- p. 177, l. 10. In the *Sowdone*, 3043, Richard is left as governor of Mantrible.
- p. 177, l. 35. "he swowned, &c.:" Fr. *il pasma de dueil et cria comme tout hors du sens*.
- p. 178, l. 11. "wel abused:" Fr. *bien abusez* = greatly deceived or mistaken. This is almost the oldest use of the word. "*Abuser*. To abuse, misuse . . . deceive, disappoint, gull, cozen, beguile. *S'abuser*. To mistake, to be in error; to wronge himselfe, &c." Cotgrave.
- p. 179, l. 7. "the olde kyng' Coldroe tempested hym." Here Caxton has made a most curious mistake. The original runs: *et avec luy le viel roy Coldroe, tempeste, et brillant de mommiere: tempeste* being really the name of one of the Saracen kings, and not a verb.
- p. 183, l. 5. "better aduysed:" Fr. *quil soit desensle(?)*.
- p. 183, l. 32. "byhelde:" Fr. *regarderent*. See note to p. 102, l. 6.
- p. 184, l. 13. "Duc Naymes." In the *Sowdone* Floripas first sees the French army advancing.
- p. 187, l. 1. "in the tree of the crosse:" Fr. *en larbre*.
- p. 187, l. 14. "he was almoost in a rage of hys wordes:" Fr. *a peu de fait quil ne fut enraige de ses parolles*.
- p. 187, l. 33. "by presumyng:" Fr. *par presumacion* = by supposition.
- p. 190, l. 2. "wythoute faulte:" Fr. *sans faulte* = without fail.
- p. 193, l. 29. "helde them soo short, &c.:" Fr. *et les tindrent si de prez quelz ne sceurent que faire*.
- p. 195, l. 11. "a grete abusyon:" Fr. *grant abusyon*.
- p. 201, l. 7. "that there was non abusyon, &c.:" Fr. *quil ny auoit point dabusyon en croire et adorer les distes reliques*.
- p. 202, l. 22. "al rauysshed:" Fr. *tout rauy*.
- p. 204, l. 7. "ouerthrew to the erthe:" Fr. *vont tomber par terre*.
- p. 208, l. 18. "he founded, rented, and releued many and dyuers chyrches:" Fr. *il fonda, renta, et releua plusieurs et diuerses eglises*.
- p. 209, l. 4. See Dr. Hausknecht's note to the *Sowdon*, l. 1888.
- p. 209, l. 23. "he wold not leue herby:" would not stop at this. Fr. *ne se vouldt tenir a cecy*.
- p. 209, l. 27. "maad certeyn experyences:" Fr. *fist aulcunes experientacions*.
- p. 213, l. 5. "took hede:" Fr. *sen prist garde* = took notice.
- p. 214, l. 31. Fr. *eulx qui estoient presens et leurs successeurs fussent francs et liberez, les taillables fussent a leurs drois comme quilz fussent condicionez*.



- p. 215, l. 35. "felow:" Fr. *compaignon de escoc*.
- p. 217, l. 13. "wythoute makynge grete rebellyon:" without showing any great fight. Fr. *sans faire grandes rebellions*.
- p. 221, l. 17. "demaunded synguler persone ayenst a persone:" Fr. *demanda a Charles bataille singuliere de personne a personne*.
- p. 222, l. 17. "soo vylaynsly:" Fr. *si villement*.
- p. 231, l. 1. "surprysed:" overcome, taken. Fr. *surpris*.
- p. 237, l. 1. "dystourneð:" turned him away, dissuaded him. Fr. *le destourba*.
- p. 237, l. 21. "lepte:" corrected on the authority of the original French, which reads *monta*.
- p. 242, l. 6. "to-faissheð and broken:" Fr. *il estoit naure, casse, et tout rompu*.
- p. 251, l. 27. "daubeny." See *Introduction*, p. 7.



## G L O S S A R Y.

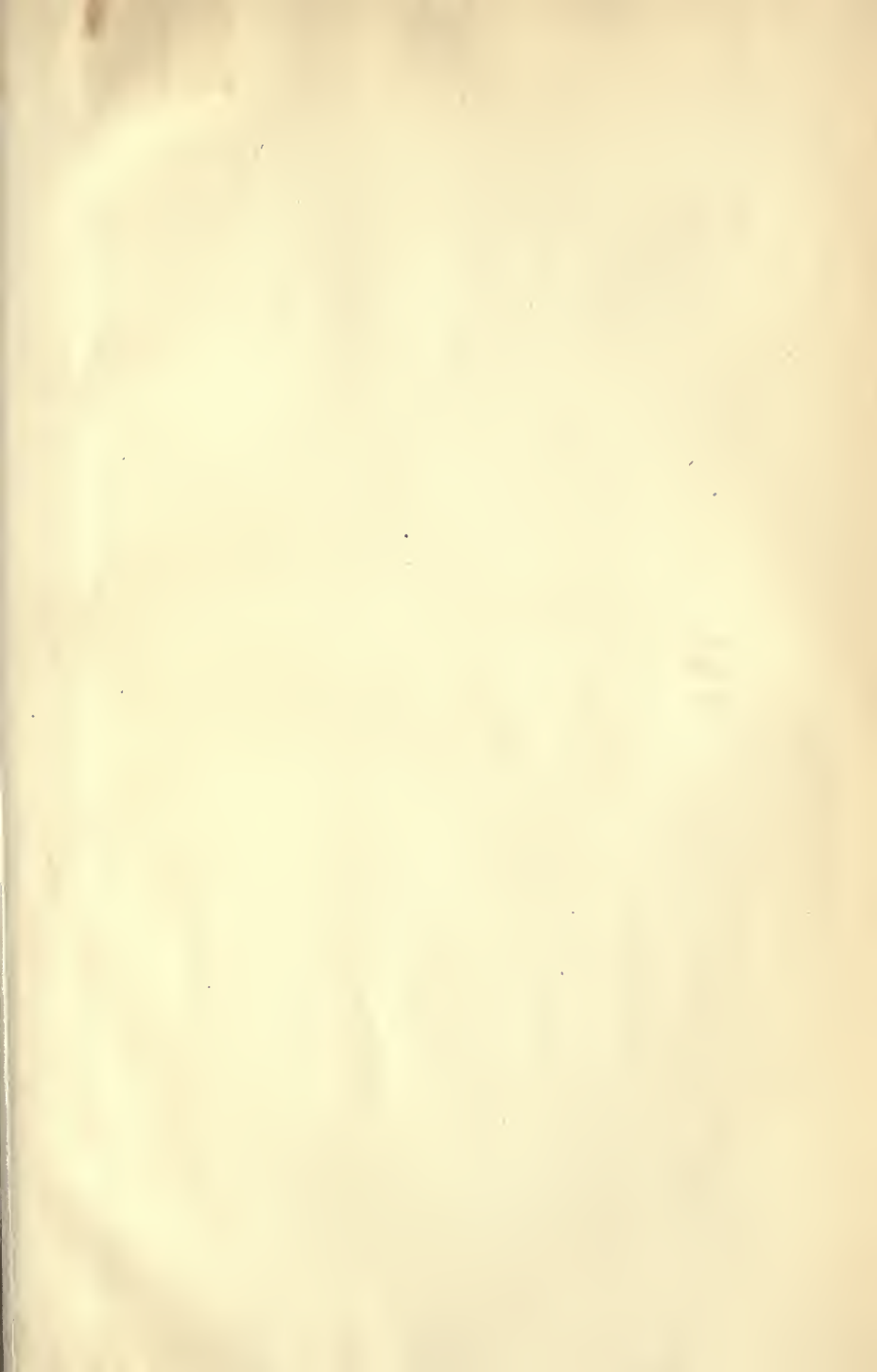
- Abuse, *s.* 60/30, deceit, error.  
 Abuse, *v.* 206/19, deceive.  
 Abylled, *pt. s.* 80/11, dressed, prepared.  
 Accomplysshe, *v.* 125/34, complete, finish.  
 Accumyled, *pa. par.* 198/167, accumulated, grown long and thick.  
 Acoward, *v.* 173/15, show to be a coward, prove oneself a coward.  
 Adiouste, *v.* 39/9, to add, append.  
 Adoubed, *pa. par.* 95/22, arrayed, dressed; 55/5, dubbed.  
 Affectuously, *adv.* 13/12, affectionately, with affection.  
 Alowed, *pa. par.* 49/20, praised.  
 Ampull, *s.* 20/31, a flask, a bottle, a jar.  
 And, *conj.* 101/15, if.  
 Anenst, *prep.* 246/29, towards, as regards.  
 Appeled, *pt. s.* 242/26, accused, challenged, charged with.  
 Arought, *pt. s.* 76/28, reached to, touched.  
 Arbalastre, *s.* 104/12, a cross-bow.  
 Aresonned, *pa. par.* 52/20, questioned.  
 Attayned, *pt. s.* 190/19, reached, struck.  
 Attones, *adv.* 56/14, at once, at the same time.  
 Aualed, *pt. s.* 158/16, sank down, was lowered; 104/34, let down, lowered.  
 Bacynet, *s.* 32/15, a small helmet.  
 Barat, *s.* 231/35, fraud, deceit.  
 Baston, *s.* 182/4, a staff.  
 Batayl, *s.* 232/35, a battalion, a division of an army.  
 Bayned, *pa. par.* 89/20, bathed, plunged.  
 Baynes, *s. pl.* 95/20, baths.  
 Becke, *s.* 20/30, a beak, bill.  
 Behoeful, *v.* 145/25, advisable, advantageous.  
 Belfraye, *s.* 175/7, a tower. See *Cath. Anglicum*, *s. v.* Barsepay.  
 Blynfelde, *pt. pl.* 82/1, blindfolded. See *Cath. Anglicum*, *s. v.* Blyndfeyld.  
 Bowedrautz, *s.* 189/31, a bowshot.  
 Boystous, *a.* 29/26, large, big; 16/22, rough, violent.  
 Broched, *pt. s.* 101/35, spurred.  
 Buscage, *s.* 33/19, a wood. O.Fr. *boscage*.  
 Camuse, *a.* 94/27, short, thick-nosed.  
 Chauffed, *pa. par.* 95/20, warmed, heated.  
 Complyces, *s. pl.* 164/33, accomplices.  
 Confanon, *s.* 170/27. For gonfanon = a standard.  
 Confysked, *pa. par.* 24/34, confiscated.  
 Conuenably, *adv.* 19/32, suitably, fittingly.  
 Corobere, *v.* 24/9, to strengthen.  
 Crapauld, *s.* 79/20, a toad.

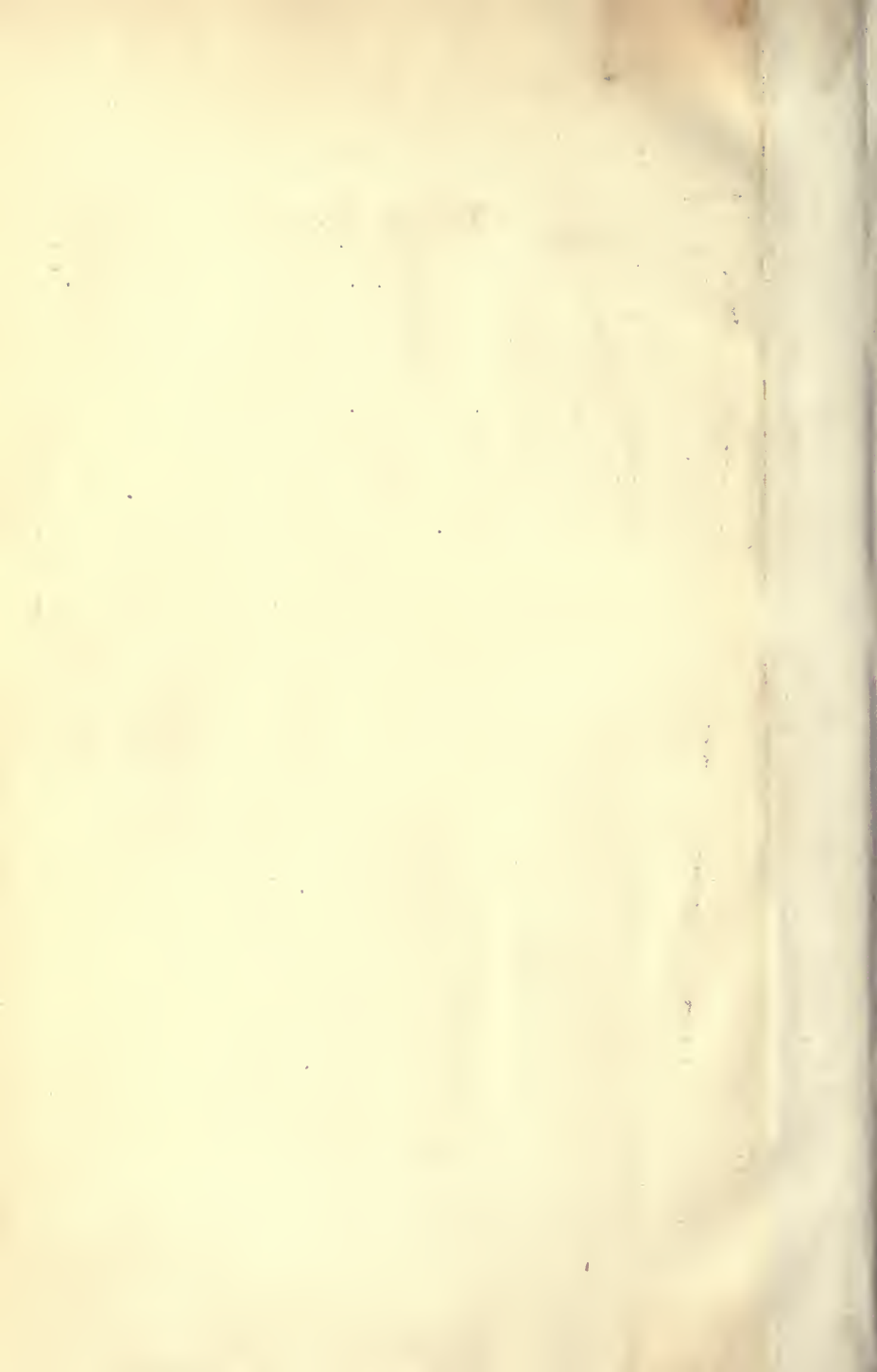
- Cremeur, *s.* 46/19, dread.  
 "Cremeur, feare, dread." —  
 Cotgrave.  
 Cresme, *s.* 20/32. The chrism or  
 holy oil with which kings were  
 anointed at their consecration.  
 See *Cath. Anglicum*, *s.* v. Creme.  
 Dedyek, *pa. par.* 16/35, dedicated.  
 Delyuer, *a.* 80/33, active, nimble.  
 Hence the modern *clever*.  
 Depesshe, *v. imp.* 53/9, hasten,  
 hurry.  
 Derked, *pt. s.* 211/12, was eclipsed.  
 Descerklek, *pt. s.* 102/7, cut off the  
 circle or ring round the helmet.  
 Descouuerd, *pa. par.* 75/26, un-  
 covered, deprived.  
 Desmaylled, *pa. par.* 69/10, de-  
 prived of the mails or plates.  
 Disrenge, *v.* 226/19, to be thrown  
 in disorder.  
 Dyshoneste, *s.* 91/31, filth, nasti-  
 ness.  
 Dyssymylek, *pa. par.* 13/22, dis-  
 guised.  
 Dystournd, *pt. s.* 237/1, turned  
 aside.  
 Dystrouble, *v.* 151/27, trouble, dis-  
 turb, interfere with.  
 Egal, *s.* 59/2, equal, match.  
 Empesshek, *pa. par.* 219/14, hin-  
 dered, obstructed.  
 Enforced, *pt. s.* 78/16, exerted.  
 Engyne, *s.* 165/21, craft, art, skill.  
 Enhardyek, *pt. pl.* 192/22, encour-  
 aged, took courage.  
 Ensywyng, *v.* 250/24, following.  
 Enterbracek, *pt. pl.* 113/25, em-  
 braced.  
 Enterprenour, *s.* 166/10, enterpriser,  
 actor.  
 Entretene, *v.* 46/32, to treat, behave  
 towards.  
 Entyer, *a.* 237/32, earnest, hearty.  
 Entyereck, *pa. par.* 244/27, interred.  
 Entyerly, *adv.* 149/28, earnestly,  
 very greatly. "Entyrly: *in-*  
*time*."—*Cathol. Anglicum*.  
 Escrye, *v.* 77/27, to call upon,  
 invoke.  
 Faus, *a.* 79/18. See note.  
 Faysyble, *a.* 49/34, possible to be  
 done, feasible.  
 Felounye, *s.* 109/30, daring, reck-  
 lessness.  
 Fere, *v.* 140/5, to frighten.  
 Ferfully, *adv.* 193/32, in fear,  
 timidly.  
 Fette, *pt. s.* 223/26, fetched.  
 Fliese, *s.* 91/1, a fleece.  
 Florysshe, *v.* 36/3, to bud, flower.  
 Florysshed, *pa. par.* 108/23, flow-  
 ing, long and wide.  
 Formosyte, *s.* 198/10, beauty.  
 Frequentek, *pt. s.* 29/12, made  
 frequent use of.  
 Geayler, *s.* 89/1, jailer.  
 Glaues, *sb. pl.* 81/27, glaives:  
 weapons made of a cutting blade  
 fixed at the end of a staff.  
 Gree, *s.* 96/10, pleasure, delight.  
 Greued, *pa. par.* 147/26, hurt, in-  
 jured.  
 Guarysshek, *pa. par.* 17/16, cured,  
 healed.  
 Habyll, *a.* 169/32, active, nimble.  
 Harnoy, *s.* 105/34, equipments,  
 outfit.  
 Houyng, *pr. par.* 36/16, hovering.  
 Iape, *v.* 60/22, play, mock.  
 Ionques, *s. pl.* 200/1, rushes. See  
*Cath. Anglicum*, *s.* v. Ionkett.  
 Iourneye, *s.* 216/9, a day's journey.  
 Lawhe, *v.* 53/12, to laugh.  
 Lawhyng, *a.* 90/15, laughing.  
 Lesynges, *s. pl.* 106/8, lies.  
 Leteth, *pr. s.* 212/24, causes.  
*Leteth the wete* = tells you, sends  
 notice to you.  
 Lette, *pa. par.* 219/14, obstructed,  
 hindered.



- Loange, *s.* 25/32, praise, worship, reverence. O.Fr. *louange*.
- Lodgyce, *s.* 49/22, lodgings, tent. Fr. *logis*.
- Loos, *s.* 85/5, glory, praise.
- Lyces, *s. pl.* 40/25. Lists or a tilt-yard (*Cotgrave*) here used for the lines of the camp.
- Lygnage, *s.* 192/33, clan, party.
- Maistresse, *s.* 94/19, governess.
- Matte, *a.* 74/12, conquered, thoroughly beaten. See glossary to *Sir Ferumbras*.
- Maulgre, *prep.* 234/26, in spite of.
- Meddle, *v.* 92/35, engage, contend.
- Medled, *pa. par.* 198/14, mixed, intermingled.
- Mesprysed, *pa. par.* 251/12, made a mistake, erred; 52/6, done wrong, injured.
- Mosel, *s.* 151/10, a muzzle.
- Moyen, *s.* 213/33, a means, a plan.
- Murayl, *s.* 203/25, walls, fortifications.
- Muse, *v.* 119/9, to be confounded.
- Ouerall, *adv.* 30/12, everywhere.  
"Ouer alle; *passim*, *vbicunque*, *genus loquendi est vbique*."—*Cath. Anglicum*.
- Ouerthrewe, *pt. s.* 141/18, fell over.
- Parents, *s. pl.* 160/3, relations.
- Pourchace, *v.* 32/6, provide, contrive. See note to *Sir Ferumbras*, 2603.
- Prestly, *adv.* 94/35, readily, quickly.
- Pried, *pa. par.* 215/14, withdrawn, estranged.
- Purchased, *pa. par.* 131/8, obtained, procured.
- Putayne, *s.* 180/1, a harlot.
- Puterye, *s.* 181/35, harlotry. Fr. *puterie*.
- Pynapple, *s.* 80/22, a fir. See note.
- Raught, *pt. s.* 81/18, reached to, touched.
- Reioye, *v.* 64/32, renew.
- Releued, *pt. s.* 130/24, lifted up, raised.
- Remyssed, *pt. s.* 208/28, placed again, brought back.
- Rented, *pt. s.* 206/18, endowed.
- Repayre, *s.* 129/13, retreat, return.
- Rescowed, *pa. par.* 72/35, rescued.
- Retcheth, 3 *pr. s.* 22/3, cares, recks.
- Ryuage, *s.* 158/3, shore, bank.
- Saleweð, *pt. s.* 49/23, saluted, made obeisance to.
- Setted, *pt. s.* 52/22, set, thought.
- Share, *pt. s.* 76/28, cut.
- Sommyers, *s. pl.* 105/23, pack-horses.
- Soulded, *pa. par.* 103/33, soldered, fastened, jointed.
- Sperhawke, *s.* 193/32, a sparrowhawk.
- Stratched, *pt. pl.* 236/31, were stretched or strained.
- Sudarye, *s.* 37/14, a handkerchief: commonly applied to the napkin which wrapped about our Lord's head. See *Cath. Anglicum*, *s. v.* and note.
- Surquydrous, *a.* 74/10, proud, haughty.
- Swolowe, *s.* 205/32, a whirlpool or quicksand. See *Cath. Anglicum*, *s. v.* a Swalle of y° See.
- Symylacres, *s. pl.* 206/11, images.
- Syeges, *s. pl.* 229/5, seats, places.
- Tabellyons, *s. pl.* 214/32. See note.
- Tabouryns, *s. pl.* 22/27, tabourers.
- Thwarte, *prep.* 44/6, across.
- To-frussheð, *pa. par.* 75/20, broken to pieces.
- Trauaylled, *pa. par.* 103/7, worn out with labour.
- Tronchoned, *pa. par.* 63/1, broken to pieces.
- Truffed, *pt. s.* 119/15, played, mocked.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>Tyerce, <i>s.</i> 232/23, terce, or the third of the canonical hours.</p> <p>Underset, <i>pa. par.</i> 249/7, propped up, supported.</p> <p>Vnnethe, <i>adv.</i> 31/6, scarcely, with difficulty.</p> <p>Vylaynsly, <i>adv.</i> 222/17, shamefully, disgracefully.</p> | <p>Wende, <i>pt. s.</i> 36/13, thought, intended.</p> <p>Wesshe, <i>pt. s.</i> 66/21, washed.</p> <p>Wynbrowes, <i>s. pl.</i> 26/33, eyebrows. Evidently a corruption of <i>eyenbrowes</i>.</p> <p>Ymbre, <i>s.</i> 37/35, ember.</p> |
|---|---|







PR  
1119  
E5  
no.36-37

Early English Text  
Society  
[Publications]  
Extra series

PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE  
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

---

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY

---

CIRCULATE AS MONOGRAPH

